

An English
GRAMMAR:

OR,
A plain Exposition
OF
LILIE'S GRAMMAR.
In English, with easie and profitable
Rules for parsing and making
Latine :

Very usefull for all young Scholars,
and others, that would in a short time
learn the Latine tongue.

Which may serve as a Comment for them
that learn LILIE'S Grammar.

By
R.R. Master in Arts.



L O N D O N,
Printed by Felix Kyngston for Mathew
Walbank and Laurence Chapman.

1641.

GRAMMAR:

OF THE

ENGLISH LANGUAGE

AND ITS

CONSTRUCTION

AND

SYNTAX

AND

POETRY

AND

LOGIC

AND

PHILOSOPHY

AND

SCIENCE

AND

ART

An
ADVERTISEMENT
To the
READER.



Orasmuch as the time is long, and the labour great, both of Master and Scholar, which is bestowed in Constituing and reconstituing the Grammar: for the redeeming both of the one and the other, and the more speedy and easie acquainting of Youth, with all the most necessary knowledge of Grammar; that so, their precious time and travell may the sooner be yeilded to other necessarie Studies; I have attempted the Translation thereof. The Rules which commonly are not committed to memory, are marked with this note, * The other, which are commonly learned without the Book, are printed in the English Character; excepting onely the Examples and Latine words, which are in the Roman Character. Such as are marked, as before, would notwithstanding be diligently and continually read: because the knowledge of them is also very necessary, and that even from your very first entrance. But concerning those which are to be committed to memory, you may if you will, omit the Examples and Latine words of them, or at the least their Englishes; and trouble your self onely with the bare Rules. Howbeit, by often Constituing and Parsing the words and Examples, you must grow thoroughly acquainted with them; that so you may

An Advertisement to the Reader.

rightly and soundly understand the Rules. And untill you be come to this perfection, they may serve in the stead of Lectures: for which cause, I have omitted no Examples. Having attained to this readinesse in these things, it will not be amisse, before any other Book be taken in hand, to go through *Lily* his Latine Verses, by Construing and Parsing. No Rule or part would passe without diligent examination. Wherein, the Scholars if they be many, may appose one another; or if there be but one, he may appose himself; but alwaies in the hearing, and by the direction of the Teacher, and that from the very beginning. In the Parsing of any part of Speech, let the Rules concerning that part, both minister every question, and also answer it, and that in such order as the Rules themselves do lye; omitting none, untill the Scholar be very perfect. At what time, though you do take a shorter course, yet be sure to Parse every day one part of Speech, at the least, at length. As soon as the Concords be learned, let your Scholar be accustomed to turn every day some two easie Englishes at the least, into Latine, giving him the Latine words. And before he attempt the doing of it, let him in your hearing, and by your direction, examine himself, for the finding out of the Concords and Cases of his English: and this being done according to the direction in the Concords, then to proceed to the Latine making. In his Lectures, besides the Parsing, let him even at the first also, by examination of himself, search out all the Epithets, Adjuncts, Synonyma's, Contraries, Grammaticall and Rhetoricall Figures, and Phrases, with the varying of them; and then note them in a Book for his use afterwards. Thus, even without the help of this Translation, I have

An Advertisement to the Reader.

have known divers, being not held to it scarce half the day, to have been within a twelve month and an half, though of mean capacity, brought even from *In speech*, to learn perfectly the whole Grammar to *Profodis*; and to be of themselves able, both to appose and answer in Rules or Lectures, to gather out the Phrases and the rest, as before; and to make true Latine, the words being given them, and that prettily well: so that they were very fit to be put to speaking Latine, and to other higher Scholar-like exercises. How much sooner then, or at the least more easily, by the help of this Translation, may these things be attained within the foresaid space, their study being followed the whole day? Seeing that hereby, so much time and labour, as Construing and reconstruing requireth, is gained: and besides that, the whole Grammar so to their view laid open, as that they need but at their leasures, open their eyes, and by reading behold that, which before the most part could not in 7. or 8. years at the least, see into. To say nothing, what light and liking of Grammar may hereby arise unto them, who cannot this way bestow their time: and so, what encouragement to put their children to it, to the great advantage of Learning, and to the unspeakable good both of the Church, and of the Commonwealth thereby. In the end of this Grammar, for the better opening of the course before mentioned, is added a *Praxis*, both of Construing and Parsing, and also of giving and making Vulgars; for the better help of Scholars, and such especially as want Teachers. The examining of the Rules, in learning and repeating them, needeth no opening here. For every one may easily, even almost of himself, perceive how to do it.

The

The Latine letters are thus written.

The Capitall Letters. { A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

The small Letters { a b c d e f g h i k l m n o p q r s

Letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

A Vowel is a letter which maketh a full and perfect sound of it self, and there are five in number: namely, *a, e, i, o, u*, whereunto is added the Greek Vowels.

A Consonant is a letter which must needs be sounded with a Vowel; as *b* with *e*. And all the letters, except the Vowels, are Consonants.

A syllable is the pronouncing of one letter or more with one breath: as, A-ug.

A diphthong is the sound of two vowels in one syllable; and of them there be foure in number, namely, *e, æ, au, eu*, where *u* is added to *e*, as, *seu, eau, eau, eau, eau*.

Instead of *and* we commonly de pronounce:

The Greek letters are thus written.

The Capitall letters. Σ Α Β Γ Δ Ε Ζ Η Θ Ι Κ Λ Μ Ν Ξ Ο Π Ρ
Σ Τ Υ Φ Χ Ψ Ω.

The small letters, { $\alpha \beta \gamma \delta \epsilon \zeta \eta \theta \iota \kappa \lambda \mu \nu \xi \pi \rho \sigma \tau$
 $\upsilon \phi \chi \psi \omega$.

The study of Grammar to be necessary for every one.

Grammaticæ labor est parvus, sed fructus in illa est
 Non parvus. Parva hic discito parve puer.
 Nemo est tam doctus, qui non cognovit istuc.
 Cur pudeat pueros ista labore sequi?



OF GRAMMAR;

AND

The PARTS thereof.



GRAMMAR is an art of writing and speaking rightly. Of Grammar, there be four parts: Orthographie, Etymologie, Syntaxis, and Prosodie.

OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHIE is the way of writing rightly: by which we are taught with what letters every word is to be formed: as, Læcio, reading, not Lexio: of *spē*, right, and *χρησ*, writing.

Of the LETTERS.

OF the two and twenty letters, five are vowels: a, e, i, o, u, Vowels. For *v* is a Greeke letter. Of which being diversly disposed, Diphthongs do arise five Diphthongs:

a	as	Musa, a sweet song.	The rest of the letters are called consonants: of which nine are Dutes, b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t; and seven semivowels, l, m, n, r, s, x, z: of which also four are called Liquids: l, r, n, z.	Consonants. Mutes. Semivowels. Liquids.
au		Audio, I hear.		
ce		Cœlum, Heaven.		
ci		Hci, Hoide.		
eu		Euge, Well done.		

But *c* is a letter as it were of his owne power, which sometimes also is silent. X and Z are double consonants: and *i* also betwene two vowels.

Unto the consonants are added *i*, and *v*, when they are set before themselves, or other vowels in the same syllable: as *luno*, the Goddesse, sister and wife of Jupiter. *iovis*, Jupiter, sonne to Saturne and Ops. borne at the same birth with *luno*, volumas, will, values the countenance.

K, y, and x, are never used in Latine words.

H, is properly no letter, but a note of aspiration. But with the *I* letters it hath sometimes the force of a consonant. And it is set before all vowels: as, *Harnus* a hook. *Hebenus* the Ebene tree. *Hiarus* a yawning, *humus* the ground, *hymnus* a song in the praise of one: but never before any consonant. We doe rightly therefore pronounce *Haleus*, saying as the ground in drought: and *Hicæchus* a name of Bacchus, with three syllables: and *Hieronymus*, *Jerome*, and *Hieremias* *Jeremy*, with four syllables.

But in Latine words, *b*, is sometimes put after *c*: as, *charus*, deare: *charitas*, charitie: *pulcher*, faire: *pulchritudo*, beaultie.

Letters are written two waies, with greater characters, and with smaller. With the bigger, sentences are begun: as, *Deum*, Fearr God. *Regem* honors: *Vonour* the King, And mayes names:

ORTHOGRAPHY.

The bigger Letters.

names : as, Henricus, Henry, Anglia, England.
It is diligently to be marked, what words are written with
Diphthongs. For the Diphthongs must either be written down,
or noted : as, Mula praesunt : or Muls praesunt. The Rules do rule.
When the bigger letters do stand alone, and but few together,
they signifie sometimes the first, or as now wee call it, the Chri-
stian name : and sometimes number :

A. Aulus.	These, as also	A. P. Respublica, the common
C. Caius.	Quintus, Spari-	wealth.
D. Decius.	us, and Icius,	Sp. Sparius.
G. Gaius.	following, are	SEX. Sextus, Tutor to M. Anth.
L. Lucius.	the surnames	the Emperour.
M. Marcus.	of divers Ro-	S.P.Q.R. Senatus, populusc; Ro-
P. Publius	manes.	manus, the senate, and peo-
P.R. Populus Romanus,		ple of Rome.
The people of Rome.		T. Titus.
P.C. Patres conscripti, the Se-		T.C. Tua Clemencia, thy cle-
nators, or Senate of Rome.		mencie.
Q. Quincus, Quaestor, the treasu-		And an infinite number of
rer; Quintus, people of Rome		the like.

But in number,	I.	1.	One.
	V.	5.	Five.
	IX.	9.	Nine.
	X.	10.	Ten.
	XL.	40.	Forty.
	L.	50.	Fifty.
	XC.	90.	Ninety.
	C.	100.	An hundred.
	D.	500.	Five hundred.
	M.	1000.	A thousand.

Of the distinctions of Syllables.

HE that will write rightly, must learn first of all, in writing,
haptly to distinguish and ioyn together syllables. In simple
words be, do cleave unto the vowell following : as, A-bdomen,
the outward part of the belly, from the navel downeward. A-
bdera, a towne in Thrace, another in Spaine, now called Alme-
ria, also an Isle neere to Samothrace.

Which also is to be observed in these following : as,

Do-ctus, learned.	2m	A-gmen, an army of foot-
San-ctus, holy.		men marching, an as-
Scri-psi, I have written.	2m	sembly.
Sum-psi, I have taken.		I-gnis, fire.
Pi-scis, a fish.	2m	Ve-ster, your.
Di-sco, I learne.	st	Magi-ster, a Master.
A-na, a hill in Sicilie.		An-xius, sad.
And a citie by it.	xi	Di-xi, I have said : and
		the like.

Betweene m and n, we neuer write p. It is ill therefore to write
Sompnus for somnus sleepe. Columna for columna, a pillar. S is ne-
uer put after x : as, excubito, to write out of a coyle, ex vivo, to pay
all clearly : not exscribo, extolen. In words compounded with a
preposition, regard is to be had to the rate, and good sound : as,

Occurto,

ORTHOEPY.

3

Occurro, I meet with
 Officio, I hurt.
 Ausero, I take away.
 Abstineo, I abstain.
 Obineo, I obtain.
 Obrepro, I come profusely.
 And for this cause also, consonants are in composition some-
 times put between: as, Redamo, I love again. Redeo, I return.
 Ambigo, I am in doubt. Ambio, I environ.

Rather
 then

Occurro,
 Officio,
 Ausero,
 Abstineo,
 Obineo,
 Obrepro.

And contrari-
 wise,

And not

OF ORTHOEPY.

There is some affinity between Orthography, and Orthoepy: Orthoepy.
 that is, the way of speaking purely and rightly; of words,
 right, and in words.

Hence, Teachers ought to have a speciall care, so to frame and
 fashion the tender and hammering tongues of children, that they
 do not with a continuall volubility of the tongue, either so hastily
 utter their speech, as that they never cease untill their breath fail:
 or contrariwise, at every word make a long pause, foolishly break-
 ing off the tenour of their talk, by belching, laughter, hicck,
 spitting, cough, or such like.

But before all things, children are to be kept from those vices,
 which do seem almost proper to our common people: as, Iota-
 cisme, Lamdacisme, Ichnocesis, Traulisme, Placisme, and the like.

Iotacisme, is, when the letter I is pronounced with too full and
 an undecent sound: a fault of our English Northern people
 especially.

Lamdacisme, is, when as any pronounce L too violently; as,
 Ellucer for elucer, it shineth: Saulus for salvus, safe. Our common
 people offend diversely, in pronouncing this letter, more grossly
 than is meet: as for

Mulus, much,
 Mollis, soft,
 Falsus, false,

} pronouncing

Moulus,
 Moolis,
 Faulsus,

Ichnocesis, is, a certain slenderesse of speaking: so often as we
 do pronounce certain syllables, more slenderly and finally then
 is fit: as, for

Nunc, now,
 Tunc, then,
 A quis, some body,
 Alius, another,

} pronouncing

Nync,
 Tync,
 Eliquis,
 Elius.

Traulismus, is a certain hammering or stutting, when the same
 syllable is often repeated: as, Cacacame for canit, he singeth:
 Turnllius for Tullius, Tully.

This most foul and dangerous fault, Fabius thinketh, is thus
 to be helped: that children be betimes put to the quick and
 round pronouncing of words and verses of affectate difficulty,
 and consisting of many and hard syllables, sounding roughly to-
 gether: as, Arx, mides, rostris, sphynx, praeter, torrida, seps, strix,
 —postquam discordia tetra: After that horrible discord,
 Belli ferratos postes portisque refregit: hath broken open the iron
 posts and gates of war. The words are thus englished: Arx,

ORTHOGRAPHY.

4

Placafine.

a tomer; triden, any instrument of three teeth; rostris, the bills of birds; sphynx, a monkey; praeter, a venomous worm; vorrida, a; 73
seps, a hedge; thrix, a scritch-owl.

Placafine, is, when we endeavour to speak more thickly or
bigly, and with more than a mans voice: as, when for

Montes, hills,	we pronounce	Mountes,	as also, for
Fonces, fontaines,		Fountes,	
Pontes, bridges,		Pountes,	
Ergo, therefore,	we pronounce	Argo,	
Sperma, seed of genera.		Sparma,	
Perago, I finish, (tion.)		Parago.	

In some places also amongst us, there are, which for v, a conso-
nant, do sound f: and contrariwise for f, do pronounce v: as,

Folo,	for	Volo, I will,	And again,
Fis,		Vis, thou wilt.	
Folui,		Volui, I have willich,	
Felle,	for	Velle, to will.	
Vero,		Fero, I bear or suffer.	
Vers,		Fers, thou bearest or sufferest.	
Verre,		Ferre, to bear or suffer.	

And many do corruptly sound f between two vowels:

as, for	Læsus, hurt,	pronouncing	Læsus,
	Vifus, seen,		Vizus,
	Rifus, laughter,		Rzus.

H.

They will have h in the beginning of a word, to be pronounced
softly: we do ill therefore pronounce,

Omo,	for	Homo, a man or a woman,	(round.
Amus,		Hamus, an hook,	
Umus,		Humus, the ground,	
Criflus,		Chriftus, Christ,	
Criſina,		Chriſina, ointment or anointing,	
Cremes,		Chremes, a man ſo called,	
Tus,		Thus frankincenſe incenſe,	
Diptongus,		Diphthongus, a Diphthong,	
Spera,		Sphæra, a ſphæar, circle, or any thing	

Our people do ſoftly erre alſo, in pronouncing d and c, with
an aſpiration: as, Amath, Caputh, Aputh; for, Amat, be loveth;
Caput, a head; Apud, &c.

But the vices of this kinde are innumerable, which we leave
to good ſtudents, and diligent teachers, to be reformed.

Of the POINTS of Sentences.

NEither both a ſmall part of Orthography ſeem to conſiſt in
the diſtinguiſhing of writing. It ſhall not be in vain there-
fore, to note ſome few things, concerning the diſtinction of
Claules.

What Points
there be.

Points therefore, or notes, uſed of the learned in writing, are
of the Latines called, Subdiſtinctio, i. a Subdiſtinction: Media di-
ſtinctio, i. a middle diſtinction: and, Piena ac perfecta diſtinctio, i. a
full and perfect diſtinction: with the Greeks, Comma, Colon,
Periodus.

A Comma.

A ſubdiſtinction or Comma, is a note of ſilence, or rather a place
of

ETYMOLOGY.

5

of breathing; as whereby the term of pronunciation, the sense, still remaining, is so suspended: as that that which followeth, ought presently to succeed. And it is marked with a point called, *dotum* or *dotum*, thus, *Quid: Utendum est atque, cito pede labitur atque: Nec donata tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit.* This must make benefit of our time, - age cometh quickly: neither is the latter age so good as the former. With this note also, the several parts of a speech are distinguished: as, *Lucretius:*

Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes,

Graculus esurimus, in celum, iusseris, ibit.

The grammarian, rhetorician, geometer, painter, chyrurgian, Grecian hanging into heaven, thou hast commanded, shall go.

The middle distinction of Colon, is, when so much almost of the sentence remaineth, as is already uttered: and it is a perfect part of the Period, and is noted with two points, thus: *Quemadmodum horologii umbram progressam sentimus, progredientem non cernimus: & fructum aut herbam crevisse apparet, crescere autem nulli videtur: ita & ingeniorum profectus, quoniam minoris constat ausibus, ex intervallo sentitur.* Even as we perceive the shadow of a diall to have gone, but discern it not going: and fruit or grasse appeareth to have increased, but is not seen of any to increase: so also the growth of toles, seeing it consisteth of small increases, is perceived by distance of time.

The full distinction, called also a Period, is put after a perfect sentence, and is noted with a plain point, thus:

Dixit mihi Musa upsum, capta post tempora Troja,

Quis mores hominum multorum vidit, & urbes.

She to me my Muse, a man after the taking of Troy, who hath seen the manners of many men, and cities.

Whereunto belongeth a Parenthesis, and an Interrogation.

A Parenthesis is a sentence included within two half-moons, which being removed, the speech notwithstanding, remaineth whole: as, — *princeps (quia bellaminiatur Hostes) militibus urbes premanit, & armis.* The Prince (because the enemies do threaten wars) both fortifie the cities with soldiers and weapons.

An Interrogation is signed with two points, the higher being called upward, thus: as, *Et que tanta fuit Roma ab causa videndi: And what moved thee so much to see Rome?*

OF ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY is occupied especially in searching out the original of words: as, whereby an unmarried man be called *Celebs*, single, of *celstis*, heavenly; as leading *caelestem vitam*, an heavenly life. Wherby an hare be called *Lepus*, as it were *levis*, light foot. But Etymology (so far forth as in this place we do speak of it) is the way of learning the differences of cases: as, *fortis*, strong; *fortiter*, strongly; *lego*, I read; *legit*, he readeth; and comprehendeth all parts of speech. Cicero calleth it *Notationem*, *Flotationem*, or *veriloquium*, true speech. And it is compounded of *tempos*, true, and *lectis*, speech.

OF

Of the Eight Parts of SPEECH.

There be eight parts of speech: { Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, } decl. { Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, } undecl. {

Of a NOUN.

A Noun.

A NOUN is a part of speech, which signifieth a thing, without any difference of time or person. *Q.*

A Noun is the name of a thing that may be seen, felt, heard, or understood: as, the name of my hand in latine is *Manus*, the name of an house is *Domus*, the name of goodness is *Bonitas*.

Of Nouns, some be Substantives, and some be Adjectives.

Two kinds of Nouns: Substantive, and Adjective.

A Noun Substantive.

Two kinds of Nouns Substantives: Appellative or common; and Proper.

A Noun Substantive, is that which standeth by himself, and requireth not another word to be joyued with him, to declare his signification: as, *Homo*, a man. And it is declined with one article: as, *hic* Magister, a master: or else with two at the most: as, *hic* & *hec* Patens, a father or mother.

A Noun Substantive, is either proper to the thing that it becometh; as, *Eduardus* is my proper name: or else, is common to moe: as, *Homo* is a common name to all men.

A Noun Substantive Appellative or Common, is that which signifieth a thing common to many: as, *Lapis*, a stone: *Iustitia*, justice: *Bonitas*, goodness. A Noun Substantive Proper, is that which signifieth a thing proper to some one onely: as, *Iesus*, *Iesus*: *Maria*, *Mary*: *London*, *London*: *Thamesis*, the *Tems*.

The first, or Christian name.

Of a Noun Substantive Proper, there be three kinds. *Prænomina*, or the first name, now called the Christian name; given for difference sake, or of some old custome: as, *Lucius*, *Publius*, *Aulus*, *Marcus*: the names of divers Romans.

Name.

Nomen, or name, which to every one is his own: as, *Petrus*, *Peter*: *Paulus*, *Paul*: *Carus*, *Tullius*, *Tully*.

Surname.

Cognomen, or surname, given either of affinity: as, *Gracchus*, *Fabius*, *Scipio*, *Cicero*, the surnames of divers Romans: or of some event: as, *Africanus*, *Macedonicus*, *Germanicus*, the names also of certain Romans.

A Noun Adjective.

An Adjective is that, which in speech needeth a Substantive to cleave unto: as, *Piger*, sloathfull: *alacris*, merry: *candidus*, white: *clemens*, gentle. *Q.*

Common.

A Noun Adjective is that which cannot stand by himself, in reason or signification, but requireth to be joyued with another word: as, *Bonus*, good: *pulcher*, fair. And it is declined either with three terminations; as, *Bonus*, *honor*, *bonum*: or else with three articles: as, *Hic*, *hec*, & *hoc* *felix*, happy: *Hic* & *hec* *levis*, & *hoc* *levis*, light.

Proper.

Of Nouns Adjectives, there be two kinds: Common, and Proper. Common, which signifieth an affection, common to many: as, *Bonus*, good: *malus*, evil: *solers*, witty: *laxus*, gluttonous. Proper, which signifieth an affection peculiar to some one onely: as, *Gradivus* to *Mars*, *Quirinus* to *Romulus*.

A NOUN.

7

Of the Accidents, or things belonging
to a Noun.

TO a Noun there appertaineth seven things: Species of
form. Figure, Number, Case, Gender, Declension,
Comparison. Seven things
do befall unto
a Noun.

Of the SPECIES or form.

There be two forms of Nouns, Primitive and Derivative.
Primitive, which cometh not of another: Derivative, which
is formed of another. To the Primitive, do belong these things
following, and the like: that is to say. Form:
Primitive.
Derivative.

A Noun Collective, which in the singular Number, signifieth
a multitude: as, *Coeo*, an assembly: *coetus*, a congregation: *plebs*,
people: *orbis*, a company: *pecus*, cattell: *grex*, a flock. Collective.

A Noun fictitious or fained, which is fained of the sound: as, *Si-*
bilus, an hissing: *tininnabulum*, a little bell: *stridor*, a noise: *clangor*,
the sound of a trumpet. Feigned.

A Noun Interrogative: as, *Quis*, who: *uter*, which: *qualis*, what
an one: *quantus*, how much: *quot*, how many: *namque*, is there
any one: Which do sometimes become Indefinites, and some-
times Relatives. Interrogative.

A Noun Redditive, which answereth the Interrogative: as,
Talis, such an one: *tantus*, so much: *tot*, so many. Redditive.

A Noun Numerall, whereof there are these specieses or kinds
following. Cardinall: from whence, as from the fount ain, other
Numbers do flow: as, *Unus*, one: *duo*, two: *tres*, three: *qua-*
tuor, four. Numerall.
Cardinall.

Ordinall: as, *Primus*, the first: *secundus*, the second: *tertius*, the
third: *quartus*, the fourth. Ordinall.

Distributive: as, *Singuli*, every each: *bini*, every two: *terni*,
three: *quaterni*, four. Distributive.

Partitive: which signifieth, either many a part: as, *Quisque*,
every one: *unusquisque*, every one: *uterque*, both: *neuter*, neither:
or, one of many: as, *Alter*, one of the two: *aliquis*, some one: *ce-*
tera, the residue: *reliquus*, the other. Partitive.

Universall: as, *Omnis*, all: *cunctus*, all: *nullus*, none: *nemo*,
no body. Universall.

Particular: as, *Aliquis*, some body: *quisquam*, any body: *ullus*,
any: *quidam*, a certain man. Particular.

And Derivatives have under them, these specieses: that is to
say, **A Noun Verball**: as, *Lectio*, reading: *litura*, a blot: *auditus*,
hearing: *aratum*, a plow. Derivative.
Verball.

Patriall: or of ones country: as, *Eboracensis*, an inhabitant of
York: *Londinensis*, a Londoner: *Oxonienfis*, an Oxonian: *Aeo-*
nenfis, one of Aeon. Patriall.

Gentile: as, *Graecus*, a Greek: *Latius*, a Latine: *Hebreus*,
an Hebrew: *Anglus*, an English man. Gentile.

Patronymicall: which is derived from the father, or from some
other person of the family: as, *Æacides*, the son or nephew of *Æa-*
cus: *Neirine*, the daughter or neece of *Neireus*: *Laoides*, the son of *La-*
ona: *Menelaus*, the wife of *Menelaus*. Patronymicall.

Diminutive:

- Diminutive.** *Diminutive:* as, *Regulus*, an *Eagle*: *popellus*, a small people: *Majusculus*, somewhat greater: *Minusculus*, little.
- Possessive.** *Possessive:* as, *Herilis*, pertaining to the master: *Servilis*, pertaining to the servant: *Regius*, belonging to the King: *paternus*, that pertaineth to a father.
- Materiall.** *Materiall:* as, *Faginus*, of the beech tree: *lapidus*, of stone: *gemmeus*, of a precious stone: *aureus*, of gold.
- Locall.** *Locall:* as, *Hortensis*, pertaining to a garden: *agrestis*, pertaining to the field: *Marius*, belonging to the sea: *Montanus*, of the hills.
- Adverbiall.** *Adverbiall:* as, *Hodiernus*, of to day: *hesternus*, of yesterday: *craftinus*, of to morrow: *clandestinus*, secret.
- Participiall.** *Participiall:* as, *Amandus*, worthy to be loved: *docendus*, that is to be taught: *videndus*, that is to be seen: *scribendus*, worthy to be written. And such as end in *is*, coming of *Nerds:* as, *Fidilis*, earthen: *coctilis*, sodden: *flexilis*, easie to be bowed: *pendilis*, hanging down.

OF FIGURE.

Figures of
Nouns.

The Figure of a Noun, is either simple: as, *Iustus*, just: or compound, as, *injustus*, unjust. There are, which do adde therunto also, *Decompondes:* as, *irreparabilis*, that cannot be repaired.

OF NUMBER.

Number.

In Nouns be two Numbers; the Singular, and the Plurall: the Singular Number speaketh but of one: as, *Lapis*, a stone: *pater*, a father. The Plurall Number speaketh of more then one: as, *Lapides*, stones: *patres*, fathers.

OF CASE.

Cases of Nouns.

Nouns be declined with six Cases, singularly, and plurall: the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Locative, and the Ablative.

The Nominative.

The Nominative, called also, *Rectus*, right; is the first voice, by which we call any thing.

The Genitive.

The Genitive case cometh before the Verb, and answereth to this question, Who, or what? as, *Magister docet*, the master teacheth.

The Dative.

The Genitive case is that which signifieth whose any thing is, commonly called *Patrius*, patriall; or the case *Gignendi*, of begetting; or *Interrogandi*, of asking.

The Genitive case is known by this token, *Of*, and answereth to this question, Whose, or whereof? as, *Doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master.

The Octave case.

The Dative case, called also the case *Dandi*, of giving, is that, by which we attribute any thing to any body. Under this voice, they have comprehended also the Octave case: as, *Te clamor caelo*, that is, in cōlum, the clamour goeth to heaven, that is, into heaven.

The Dative case is known by this token, To, and unto, whereby to this question, To whom, or to what? as, Do librum magistro, I give a book to the master.

The Accusative case, called also Indicative, attending; or causative, excusing: is that which followeth the Verb, as whereinto the action of the Verb both immediately passeth: as, Amo patrem, I love the father.

The Accusative case followeth the Verb, and answereth to this question, Whom or what? as, Amo magistrum, I love the master.

The Vocative case, called also Salutatorius, Salutatory; is that which is used in calling, or speaking to persons.

The Vocative case is known by calling, or speaking to: as, O magister, O master.

The Ablative case is that, by which we signify any thing to be taken from any body. This is called the six, and Latine case, because it is proper to the Latines.

The Ablative case is commonly joined with Prepositions, serving to the Ablative case: as, De magistro, of the master: Coram magistro, before the master.

Also, In, With, Through, For, From, By, and Then, after the Comparative degree, be signes of the Ablative case.

O F G E N D E R.

Articles, which are the notes of Genders, are borrowed of the Pronoun, and be thus declined:

Singulariter.	{	Nominativo hic, hac, hoc, this.	{	Nominativo hi, ha, hac.
		Genitivo huius.		Genitivo horum, harum, huius.
		Dativo huic.		Dativo hi.
		Accusativo hunc, hanc, hoc.		Accusativo hos, has, hac.
		Vocativo aures. i. it wants.		Vocativo aures. i. it wants.
		Ablativo hoc, hac, hoc.		Ablativo his.

Genus, or Gender, is a distinction of the sex.

Genders of Nouns be seven: the Masculine, the Feminine, the Neuter, the Commune of two, the Commune of three, the Doubtfull, and the Epicene.

The Masculine Gender is declined with this Article. Hic: as, hic vir, a man.

The Feminine Gender is declined with this Article, Hac: as, hac mulier, a woman.

The Neuter Gender is declined with this Article. Hoc: as, hoc saxum, a stone.

The Commune of two is declined with Hic and hac: as, hic & hac pater, a father or mother.

The Commune of three is declined with Hic, hac and hoc: as, hic, hac & hoc felix, happy.

The Doubtfull Gender is declined with Hic or hac: as, hic vel hac dies, a day.

The Epicene or Promiscuall Gender, is declined with one Article, under which one Article, both kinds are signified: as,

E

Hic

The Accusative

The Vocative

The Ablative

Genders.
Articles.

Genders seven.

hic passer, a sparrow; hac aquila, an eagle, both he and she: hic anser, a goose of gender.

Though indeed, this Gender doth not so properly belong to this present matter, seeing that in this place we do not treat of the nature of things, but of the quality of words.

The difference between the Commune of two Genders, and the Doubtfull

Furthermore, there is this difference between the Commune of two Genders, and the Doubtfull; that when as once thou hast coupled an Adjective to a Noun of the Commune Gender, it is not now at thy choice, speaking of the same thing, to change the Gender of the Adjective: as if thou hast said, Durum parem, an hard father: or canis fera, a bitch with whelp: as long as thou speakest still of the very same things, it shall not be lawful for thee, changing the Gender, to say, Parem inquam, an still mother; or canem ferum, a dog with whelp. But a Doubtfull of the Doubtfull Gender being put, though thou addest unto it an Adjective of the Masculine Gender; yet notwithstanding, continuing thy speech of the same thing, it shall be lawful for thee, at thy discretion, to alter the Gender of the Adjective: as if thou hast said, Durum corticem, an hard bark: thou maist also, proceeding to speak of the same, say, Blandem corticem esse & amaram, the same bark to be also bitter.

And that thou maist exactly know the Genders of Nouns, these Rules following are with all diligence to be learned: which thou oughtest to acknowledge, to have been received from William Lily an English man.

The generall Rules of WILLIAM LILY, for Proper Names.

The Names of the male kinde, are the Masculine Gender: as,

1. Of Gods: as, Mars, Bacchus, Apollo.

2. Of Men: as, Cato, Virgilius.

3. Of Floods or Rivers: as, Tiberis, Orontes.

4. Of Months: as, October.

The Names of the female kinde, are the Feminine Gender: as,

1. Of Goddesses:

as, Iuno, Venus.

2. Of Women: as, Anna, Philota.

The proper Names of the male kinde, are of the Masculine Gender: as first of Gods: as, Mars, Martis, the God of battell: Bacchus, Bacchi, the God of wine: Apollo, Apollinis, the God of wisdom. Secondly, of Men: as, Cato, Catonis, Cato: Virgilius, Virgilii, Virgil. Thirdly, of Floods: as, Tiberis, Tiberis, a flood or river running through Rome: Orontes, Orontis, a river parting Antiochia from Syria, now called Tarsarus; also an hill by Antiochia, and the name of a Trojan that came with Aeneas into Italy. Fourthly, of Months: as, October, Octobris, the month of October. And fifthly, of Windes: as, Lybs, Lybis, the south west winde by west: Notus, Noti, the south winde: Ausler, austri, the south winde, south part, or the winde in generall.

5. And of Windes: as, Lybi, Notus, Ausler.

The proper Names of the female kinde, are of the Feminine Gender: as first of Goddesses: as, Iuno, Junonis, the Goddess Iuno, Jupiters wife: Venus, veneris, the Goddess of love and beauty. Secondly, of Women: as, Anna, Annæ, Ann: Philota, Philotis, Philotæ. Thirdly, of Cities: as, Elis, Elis, a City in Arcadia, or country in Peloponnesus: Opus, Opuntis, a City of Locris. Fourthly, of Regions: as, Græcia, Græciæ, Græcæ: Persis, Persidis, a country in the east part of Asia, having on the north, Media, on the west,

west, *Sufiana*; on the east, *Carmannia*; and on the south, the *Per-
sian* sea. And fifty, of *Iles*: as, *Creta*, *Cretæ*. *Cretæ* now called
Candia: *Briannia*, *Britannia*, *Britany*, of the *Ile* of *England* and
Scotland: and *Cyprus*, *Cypri*, an *Ile* in the sea *Carpantium*, between
Cilicia and *Syria*.

But the names of certain *Cities* are to be excepted: as first,
Sulmo, *Sulmonis*, a town of the *Peligni*, a people in *Italy*, next to the
people called *Marsi*; as amongst the *Britanni*, in the uttermost
borders of *Italy*, about the *Lucani*; as amongst the *Bantians* in
Naples by *Sicily*: *Agragas*, *agragantis*, a town in the *Ile* of *Sicily*,
now called *Gergenti*; of a hill there, upon the which standeth the
town *Agricorum*: which two are the *Masculine* Gender. Se-
condly, *Argos*, *argos*, *argæo*, which in the *Sturall* Number is the
Masculine Gender: as, *Argi*, *argorum*, a town in the half *Ile* of
Greece, called *Æloponnesus*, not far from the *City* *Mycenæ*: *Tybur*,
tyburis, a *City* of *Italy* near *Rome*, now called *Triveli*: *Præneste*, *præ-
nestis*, the *City* *Palestrina* of *Lacium* in *Italy*: which three are the
Neuter Gender. And thirdly, *Anxur*, *anxuris*, the *City* now cal-
led *Tarentine*, of *Tarasin* in *Italy*: which is the *Masculine* and
Neuter Gender both.

Generall Rules for Nouns APPELLATIVES, or Noun Substantives common.

Nouns Appellatives of Trees, are of the *Feminine* Gender:
as, *Alnus*, *alni*, an *Alber* tree: *Cupressus*, *cupressi*, of *capressus*,
a *Cypresse* tree: *Cedrus*, a *Cedar* tree, *cedri*. Except first, *Pinus*,
pini, and *pinus*, a *Pine* tree, bearing the greatest *Alns* that be:
and *Oleaster*, *oleastri*, a certain shrub like the *Olive* tree; the
Greeks call it the *wilde Olive* tree, or the *ground Olive*, for
the *lowness*: both which are the *Masculine* Gender. And se-
condly, *Siler*, *sileris*, an *hill* *Oiler*, or a *simple* used of the *Apothe-
caries*, called in *Latine*, *Seceli* *Massiliensæ*: *Suber*, *suberis*, a *Cork*
tree: *Tus*, *thuris*, *Frankincense*, and the tree *Juncus*: *Robur*, *ro-
boris*, an *Oak*: and *Acer*, *aceris*, a *Maple* tree: which five are
the *Neuter* Gender.

The names of *fleeing* things: as, *Passer*, *passeris*, a *Sparrow*:
Hirundo, *hirundinis*, a *Swallow*. Secondly, of *wilde* Beasts: as,
Tigris, *tigridis*, a *Tyger*: *Vulpes*, *vulpis*, a *Fox*: or a *Figen*. And
thirdly, of *Fishes*: as, *Ostreæ*, *ostreæ*, a *shell* fish, as an *Oyster*, and
such like: *Cætus*, *cætus*, a *Whale*: under which both kinds be si-
gnified, are the *Epicene* Gender.

3. *Fishes*: as, *hæc Ostrea*, *hæc Cætus*: under which both kinds be signified, are the *Epi-
cene* Gender.

But here is to be noted, that of all the *Nouns* before mention-
ed, every *Noun*, whether *Greek* or *Latine*, ending in *um*, or being
undeclined, is of the *Neuter* Gender.

Now I will speak in order of all other *Nouns* Appellatives,
or which are as Appellatives, whose Gender is alwayes known
by the *Genitive* case: as the three-fold speciall Rule following
doth shew.

3. Of *Cities*: as,
Elys, *Ope*.

4. Of *Regions*: as,
Græciæ, *Perfis*.

5. And of *Iles*: as,
Creta, *Britannia*,
Cyprus.

3. Exceptions: as,

1. *Sulmo*, *Agra-
gas*, *Masculine*.

2. *Argos*, *Tybur*,
Præneste, *Neuter*.

And 3. *Anxur*,
Masculine and
Neuter.

The names of
Trees, are the *Fem-
inine*: as, *Al-
nus*, *Cupressus*, *Ce-
drus*.

3. Exceptions.

1. *Pinus*, and *Ole-
aster*, *Masculine*.

And 2. *Siler*, *Sub-
er*, *Tus*, *Robur*,
& *Acer*, *Neu-
ter*.

1. The names of
fleeing things: as,
hæc Passer, *hæc*
Hirundo.

2. Of *wilde* Beasts:
as, *hæc Tigris*, *hæc*
Vulpes. And of

A generall excep-
tion, of all in
um, or undeclined,
to be *Neuter*.
The use of the
three speciall
Rules following.

The First special RULE.

A special Rule.
Nouns not increasing, in the Genitive Case, are Feminine: as, *Caro*, *carum*, *capra*, *caprae*, *nubes*, *nubis*.

A Noun not increasing in the Genitive case, is the Feminine Gender: as, *Caro*, in the Genitive case, *carnis*, flesh: *Capra*, in the Genitive case, *caprae*, a goat: *Nubes*, in the Genitive case, *nubis*, a cloud.

Because our Lily both teach, that the Gender of Nouns Appellatives, is to be known by the Genitive case: children are to be admonished, that this first Rule is of all Nouns Appellatives, not increasing in the Genitive case: of which sort are all Nouns of the first and fourth Declension, and of the second also, except a very few, noted afterwards in the third Rule.

The most Nouns also of the third Declension, do appertain to this Rule: as, *Labe*, *labis*, a spot, dishonest, reproach, a great chap: *Pestis*, *pestis*, a plague or poison: *Vis*, in the Genitive case, *vis*, strength, power, nature, violence: *Mater*, *matris*, a mother: *Caro*, *carnis*, the meat of any thing, but most commonly flesh.

The first Exception.

The first Exception of Nouns not increasing, being the Masculine Gender.

Which is first, of Nouns ending in *a*, to be Masculine: as, *Scriba*, *afflicta*, *scarra*, *fabula*, *lixa*, *lanista*.

2. Greek Nouns of the first Declension, in *as*: as, *Satrapas*, *Verres*, *natalis*, *Athletas*.

4. Latine Nouns derived of them, and ending in *a*: as, *Satrapas*, *Athletas*.

5. *Verres*, *natalis*, *Athletas*.

6. The Compounds of *As*, *afflu*, or *afflu*, *afflu*: as, *Centussum*.

7. *Lienis*, *orbis*, *callis*, *caulis*, *foliis*, *collis*, *mensis*, *causis*, *futis*, *funis*, *panis*, *penis*, *crinis*, *ignis*, *causis*, *futis*, *funis*, *panis*, *penis*, *crinis*, *ignis*, *causis*, *futis*, *funis*, *panis*, *penis*, *crinis*, *ignis*.

8. *Lienis*, *orbis*, *callis*, *caulis*, *foliis*, *collis*, *mensis*, *causis*, *futis*, *funis*, *panis*, *penis*, *crinis*, *ignis*.

Many names of men, ending in *a*, are the Masculine Gender: as *scriba*, *scribe*, a Scribe or Notary: *afflicta*, *afflicta*, a Page: *Lucky*, or *continually waiter*: *Scarra*, *scarra*, a Scoffer, Jester: or *Parasite*: *Rabula*, *rabula*, a Brawler, or Master in the Law: *Lixa*, *lixa*, the Scullian that waited on an army: *Lanista*, *lanista*, a Master of defence. Secondly, Greek Nouns of the first Declension ending in *as* Thirdly, in *es*. And fourthly, as many as coming of them, do end in *a*: as, *Satrapas*, *Satrapa*, and *Satrapa*, *Satrapa*, a Prince: *Athletas*, *athletas*, and *Athletas*, *athletas*, a Champion, or he that striveth for a game. Fifthly, *Verres*, *verris*, a Boar: *Natalis*, *natalis*, a Birth day: *Aqualis*, *aqualis*, a Laver, or an Ewer. Sixthly, the Compounds, of *Assis*, *assis*, a Pound of twelve Dunces, or the whole sum of any thing: as, *Centussum*, *centussum*, an Hundred pound. Seventhly, *Lienis*, *lienis*, the Bealt: *Orbis*, *orbis*, a Globe, bowl, or the world, because it is round like a bowl: *Callis*, *callis*, a Path way: *Caulis*, *caulis*, a Stalk: *Folliis*, *folliis*, a pair of Bellows: *Collis*, *collis*, an Hillock: *Mensis*, *mensis*, a Month: *Ensis*, *ensis*, a Sword: *Futis*, *futis*, a Club: *Funis*, *funis*, a Rope: *Panis*, *panis*, Bread: *Penis*, *penis*, a Tail, or a mans Pards: *Crinis*, *crinis*, Hair: *Ignis*, *ignis*, Fire: *Causis*, *causis*, a Pet: *Fascis*, *fascis*, a Fagot: *Torris*, *torris*, a Firebrand: *Sentis*, *sentis*, a Thorn: *Piscis*, *piscis*, a Fish: *Unguis*, *unguis*, a Nail, an hoof, a talant: *Vermis*, *vermis*, a Worm: *Vevis*, *vevis*, a Dove bar: *Folliis*, *folliis*, a Post: and *Axis*, *axis*, an Apleter, and by translation, the straight Line that may be imagined, from the one Pole to the other Pole. Eighthly, Nouns ending in *es*: as, *Venter*, *ventris*, a Belly. Ninthly, in *us*: as, *Logos*, *logi*, a Word, speech, reason. And tenthly, in *us*: as, *Annus*, *anni*, a Year.

3. Nouns ending in *er*: as, *Venter*.

And 10. In *us*: as, *Annus*.

But

But first, *Mater, matris*, a mother, is the Feminine Gender. Secondly, *Humus, huius*, the ground: *Domus, domus, domi*, an house: *Alvus, alvi*, the paitch, and sometimes the belly without: *Colus, colui, colui*, a distill: or spittle, a rook: *Ficus, ficus*, a fig or fig-tree: *Acus, acus*, a needle, or an instrument wherewith women bodder their hair: *Porticus, portici*, a gallery, walking place, or porch: *Tribus, tribus*, a kindred: *Socrus, socrus*, a mother-in-law: *Nucis, nucis*, a daughter-in-law: *Manus, manus*, an hand: *Idus, iduum, idubus*, the Ides of the months, 1 dayes dividing the month; in March, May, June and October, it is the fiftenth day; in the rest, it is the thirtenth day: *Avus, avi*, an old wife, too ripe: *Vannus, vannus*, a Van to winnow corn with. And thirdly, Greek Nouns, which becoming Latine, do men their os (into us): as, *Papyrus, papyri*, paper: *Antidotus, antidoti*, counterpoison, or a preservative against poison: *Costus, costi*, a shrub growing in Arabia, Iury and Syria, having a root of a very sweet savour, commonly called, the Herb of Mary: *Diphthongus, diphthongi*, a Diphthong, one sound of two vowels, a double sound: *Byssus, byssi*, a most fine flax or silk: *Abyssus, abyssi*, a bottomlesse depth, or pit: *Chrystallus, chrystalli*, chrystall: *Synodus, synodi*, a Synod, or generall Council gathered: *Saphyrus, saphyri*, a precious stone, called a Sapphire: *Eremus, eremi*, a wilderness, or desert place not inhabited: an hermitage: *Arctus, arcti*, a sign of the stars, called the Bear, or the Wagon, or the North Pole: with many more.

The second Exception of Nouns not increasing, being the Neuter Gender.

First, Nouns ending in e, which is in the Genitive case, are of the Neuter Gender: as, *Mare, maris*, the sea: *Reus, reus*, a net. Secondly, in ou: as, *Barbiton, barbiti*, a Lute, or any instrument that is played upon with a quill. Thirdly, in um: as, *Ovum, ovi*, an Egge. Fourthly, *Hippomanes, hippomanis*, a poison to procure love withall; or a little piece of flesh, growing in a Colts forehead, when it is first foled: *Cacothus, cacothis*, an evil custome, or a hile hard to be cured: *Virus, viri*, a poison or stinch: *Pelagus, pelagi* the sea. And fifthly, *Vulgus, vulgi*, the base and common people: which is sometimes the Masculine, and sometimes the Neuter Gender.

Neuter Gender. the Neuter Gender.

And 5. *Vulgus*, which is sometimes the Masculine, and sometimes

The third Exception of Nouns not increasing, being the Doubtfull Gender.

These Nouns following, are of the Doubtfull Gender: *Talpa, talpæ*, a Mole: *Dama, damæ*, a Buck or a Doe: *Canalis, canalis*, a chancell: *Halcyonis halcyonis*, a bird, called the kings Fisher: *Finis, finis*, an end: *Clunis, clunis*, a buttock: *Reftis, reftis*, a rope

An Exception of such as end in or, and us: wherof these are the Feminine Gender: as,

1. *Mater*.
2. *Humus, domus, alvus, colus, ficus, acus, porticus, tribus, socrus, manus, idus, avus, & vannus*. And
3. Greek Nouns, which becoming Latine, do turn their os into us: as, *Papyrus, antidotus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus, chrystallus, synodus, saphyrus, eremus, arctus*, and many more.

The second Exception, is,

1. Of Nouns in e, which is in the Genitive case, to be Neuter.

2. In ou: as, *Barbiton*.

3. In um: as, *Ovum*. And

4. *Hippomanes, cacothus, virus, and pelagus*: all which are of the

The third Exception, is, Of these Nouns of the Doubtfull Gender: *Talpa, dama, canalis halcyonis, finis, clunis, reftis*,

penus, amnis, pampinus, corbis, torquis, specus, anguis, ficus, fici, phaeolus, lecythus, atomus, grossus, pharus, & paradisus.

A rope of *Ullst*: *Penus, peni, of penus*, all manner of *Ullst*: *Amnis, amnis*, a river: *Pampinus, pampini*, a vine branch: *Corbis, corbis*, a basket, pannier, ship, or the top of a mast: *Linter, lintis*, a cock boat: *Torquis, torquis*, a collar, or chain of gold or silver, to adorn the neck: *Specus, speci, of specus*, a den to abate a pray in: *Anguis, anguis*, a hye or a water snake: *Ficus, fici*, a figge, or hard and red lare in the fundament: *Phaeolus, phaeoli*, a little swift and long ship, called a *Brigandine*: *Lecythus, lecydi*, an oyl-bor, or oil glass, a vto'l, eloquence in writing: *Atomus, atomi*, a mote in the Sun, a thing so small, that it cannot be divided, the least moment of time, in numbers, one: *Grossus, grossi*, a rather ripe fig, or a green fig not yet ripe: *Pharus, phari*, a watch-tower: *Paradisus, paradisi*, a most pleasant place; *Paradise*, a garden or orchard.

The fourth Exception, is,

The fourth Exception of Nouns not increasing, being the Commune Gender.

Of Nouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *s*, which are the Commune of two Genders: as, *Grajugens, agricola, advens, 2. Senex, auriga, vernus, sodalis, vates, extorris, patruelis, perduellis, affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hofus*.

First, Nouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *s*, are of the Commune Gender: as, *Grajugens, grajugens*, a *Oleian* boy; of *gigno*, to beget: *Agricola, agricolae*, an Husbandman; of *colo*, to till: *Advens, advens*, a stranger; of *venio*, to come. And secondly, *senex, senis*, an old man or woman; *Auriga, aurigae*, a wagoner, Carman or carter: *Vernus, vernae*, a bondman or woman; boy of a bondwoman at home: *Sodalis, sodales*, a fellows: *Vates, vatis*, a Prophet or Prophetess: *Extorris, extorris*, a banished man or woman: *Patruelis, patruelis*, a brothers child, or Cousin-german: *Perduellis, perduellis*, an enemy in wars: *Affinis, affinis*, a Kinsman by marriage: *Juvenis, juvenis*, one come to mans age, a young man: *Testis, testis*, a witness, man or woman: *Civis, civis*, a Citizen, man or woman: *Canis, canis*, a Dog, a dog-fish, or a Star, or sign in the firmament, called *Canis*: *Hofis, hofis*, an enemy.

The Second special Rule, is,

The Second special RULE.

Of Nouns, whose last syllable but one, of the Genitive case increasing, is long, to be the Feminine Gender: as, *Pietas, pietatis*; and *Virtus, virtutis*:

A Noun is the Feminine Gender, whose last syllable but one, of the Genitive case, increasing, is long: as, *Pietas, pietatis*, godliness: *Virtus, virtutis*, virtue, or great power.

- Hitherto do appertain those Nouns which do sound long in the last syllable but one, of the Genitive case increasing: as, all Nouns of the first Declension, except *Fides, fidei*, faith or truth; Feminine Gender.
- Also, all Nouns of one syllable, except *Vis, vis*, Force Gender, strength, power, nature, violence. All the rest are of the third Declension: as all ending in

C	Hæc, & hoc hæc, hæc, a Dearing.
In	Hic delphin, } a Dolphin fish, or a sign in the sea.
An	Hic Titan, } son to Cœlus and Vesta; used of the
	Hic & hæc infans, } a Babe.
Ans	Hic quadrans, } the fourth part of as, i. 3 ounces,
	Hic continens, } continent, chaste. (a quarter)
Ens	Hic triens, } a Farthing coin, the third part of
	as, i. 4 ounces of inches.
Uns	Hic decuns, decunus, ten ounces.

Also, in er long, written of the Greeks by $\epsilon\rho$: as, hic Character, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a Letter, token, mark or seal: hic Crater, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a goblet, or standing piece: hic Stater, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a coin worth two shillings four pence: hic Soter, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a Saviour.

Latine Nouns in er, belonging to the third Rule: and therefore, hæc Mulier, $\epsilon\rho$ is, is not rightly placed in this form.

Inx	Syrinx, ingis, a Pipe, flute, recorder, a squire; fem. gen.
Aux	Phalanx angis, a four-square army of 8000. footmen; fem. gender.
	Denx, } 11 ounces, or 11 parts of any thing divided into 12.
Unx	mg. } unciis.
In	as } a weight of 7. ounces, seven parts of a whole.
	Septanx, } f.g. } one that hath a face before, and another
	Bifrons, } onis, com. gen. } behind.
Ons	Effrons, } bold, impudent.
	Cohors, } a band of soldiers, a company; fem. gen.
Ors	ois. } of three.
	Confors, } a companion, yrbie to, like; Adject. com.

Furthermore, Latine Nouns in o, having $\epsilon\rho$ is, and $\epsilon\rho$ is, in the Genitive case: as, Lectio, onis, fem. gen. a reading: Ligo $\epsilon\rho$ is, male gen. a Spade, shoul. mattock or plowshare: Hic spado, $\epsilon\rho$ is, what-soever is gilded: Hæc canio, $\epsilon\rho$ is, the river Taveron in Italy. Except a few Nouns Genitives, which do appertain to the third Rule: as, hic Macedo, $\epsilon\rho$ is a Macedonian boy: hic Brito, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a Britaine hic Saxo, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a Saxon: hic Vangio, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a Cingian: hic Lingo, $\epsilon\rho$ is, one of Langres in France.

Nouns of the Nuter Gender, in Al: as, Vestigal, $\epsilon\rho$ is, tribute: Animal, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a living creature. The rest in al, are of the third Rule.

In En, having $\epsilon\rho$ is, in the Genitive case: as, Hic lyen, $\epsilon\rho$ is, the spleen or mist: hæc syren, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a Mermaid. The rest are of the third Rule.

Greek Nouns in $\epsilon\rho$, keeping $\epsilon\rho$ in the Genitive case: as, hic Damon, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a Pythagorean philosopher, so called: hæc Ladon, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a rivet of Arcadia: hic Symon, $\epsilon\rho$ is, a Philosopher, Rhetorician, Politician.

Musician, and Image-maker, so called: hic Tryon, ðis, a male
so called. Certain do vary as, hic Orion, ðis, son to Iapiter, Ne-
ptune and Mercury: hic Edon, ðis, a hill in Macedon, near
Thrace, also the country of Idames: hæc Egeon, ðis, a city between
Ætolia and Peloponnesus: and these have also ðis in the Genitive
case. The rest are of the third Rule.

Ar. Latine Nouns in Ar: as, Hoc laquear, ðis, a vaulted roof of a
parlour: Hoc exemplar, ðis, a pattern: hoc calcus, ðis, a spur: ex-
cept hoc Jubar, ðis, the Sun-beam: Hæc pedar, ðis, a prince & Wind
of honey: Hoc hepar, ðis, the Liver.

Or. Latine Nouns in Or: as Hic amor, ðis, love: hic timor, ðis, fear:
hæc uxor, ðis, a wife.

Except these following, which belong to the third Rule: as,
Hæc arbor, ðis, a tree: hoc marmor, ðis, marble: hoc equor, ðis, a
plain, the sea, the air: hoc ador, ðis, wheat: hoc robor, ðis, strength,
courage, &c. And many Greek Nouns also: as, Hic Rheror, ðis,
a Rhetorician: hic Hecor, ðis, Priams son by Hecuba: hic Nestor, ðis,
son to Neleus and Cloris: hic Sæctor, ðis, a Grecian, that with his
voice alone, could make a greater noise than fifty men toge-
ther, &c.

As. Latine Nouns in As: as, Hæc majestas, ðis, majesty: hæc leni-
tas, ðis, gentleness: hæc humilitas, ðis, lowliness: hæc humanitas,
ðis, courtesy, &c. Except, Hic vel hæc anas, anktis, a Duck or a
Dyake. And certain Greek Nouns of the Feminine Gender:
as, Lampis, ðis, fire, brightness of the Sun, or a lamp: Monas,
ðis, one alone: Trias, ðis, three: Decas, ðis, a single ten.

Es. Some Latine Nouns in Es: as, Hæc quies, ðis, rest: hic Magnes-
tis, the Load-stone: Hic & hæc locuples, ðis, rich: hæc merces, ðis,
diligence: hic & hæc hæres, ðis, an heir: hic & hæc coheres, ðis,
a joint-heir. And certain Greek Nouns also: as, hic lebes, ðis, a
Cauldron or pan: his Tapes, ðis, a carpet, or cloth of Arras: hic
Dares, ðis, a Phrygian, who wrote the wars of Troy: also a cham-
pion of Aneas friends: hic Chreton, ðis, a man so called.

Is. In Is, making icis, inis, and idis, in the Genitive case: as, Hic
Sammis, ðis, a Sammite: hic Quiris, ðis, one of Rome: hæc Salamis, ðis,
an Isle near Athens, or a City in the same: hæc Trachis, ðis, a City
of Pithiotis, at the foot of the hill Oeta: hæc Plophis, ðis, a City of
Arcadia: Crenis, ðis. The rest are of the third Rule.

Os. Latine Nouns in Os: as, Hic & hæc custos, ðis, a keeper, man or
woman: hic nepos, ðis, a nephew: except, hic & hæc Compos, ðis,
partaker of: hic hæc & hoc Impos, ðis, void of, unable. And the
Greek Nouns, which keep *o* in the last syllable have one of the
Genitive case: as, Hic Heros, ðis, half a God: hic Minos, ðis, King
of Crete, or chief Judge of Hell: hic Rhinæros, ðis, a man of that
name. hic Egoceros, ðis, a man so called.

Us. In Us, having in the Genitive case singular, ðis, ðis, ðis, ðis:
as, Hæc salus, ðis, health: hæc palus, ðis, a Fen or marsh: hæc tellus,
ðis, the earth or ground: hæc Opus, ðis, a City of Locris.
Except this one word, Hæc pecus, ðis, all kinde of cattell. Whereto
do belong the Comparatives of the Neuter Gender in *us*,
as, Hoc sanctius, ðis, more holy: hoc probius, ðis, more honest:
hoc melius, ðis, better: hic pejus, ðis, worse.

Ax. As will Latine as Greek Nouns, in Ax: as, Hic & hæc limax,
ðis.

Acis, a *Trill*; *hæc fornax*, *Acis*, a *cornick oven* of chimney; *hic thorax*, *Acis*, a *breast*, or *breastplate*; *hic hæc & hoc phœax*, *Acis*, *volutary*; *hic hæc & hoc audax*, *Acis*, *bold*; *hic hæc & hoc bibax*, *Acis*, *given to drink*, a *dunkard*. Except certain *Greek Nouns* *Appellative* and *Genitive*: as *Hic obax*, *Acis*, a *cupboard* of *cellar*; *hic notax*, *Acis*, a *sweet Intense*, or *Oran*, called *alla*, *styrax*, *Acis*, *fen- gen*, *hæc similax*, *Acis*, a *Pew tree*; *hic colax*, *Acis*, a *flatterer*; *hic corax*, *Acis*, a *Raven* of *Croto*; *hic dropax*, *Acis*, a *medicine to take away hair*; *hic Pharyax*, *Acis*, *Mithridates son*; *Candax*, *Acis*, *Antiochus standing*, *hic Syphax*, *Antioch*; *as Syphacis*, and *syphacis*, a *King of Numidia*.

A *few in Ex*: as, *Hic virax*, *Acis*, a *weather ship*; *hic vibex*, *Acis*, the *sign of a stripe*; *hic & hæc exlex*, *Acis*, a *lawless man* or *woman*; *hæc alex*, *Acis*, *Being with legs and all*. The rest in *ex*, do belong to the *third Rule*.

Latin and Greek Nouns in ix: as, *Hæc lodix*, *Acis*, a *street*, *co- berlet* or *blanchet*; *hæc radix*, *Acis*, a *root*; *hæc cornix*, *Acis*, a *crow*, the *ring*, or *Iron hammer*, *wherewith men knock at the door*; *hic hæc & hoc spadix*, *Acis*, a *Date tree branch*, *plucked from the tree*, with the *fruit thereof*, a *scarlet colour*, a *bride*; *hic hæc & hoc folix*, *Acis*, *happy*; *hic phoenix*, *Acis*, a *bird so called*; *hic & hyc perdis*, *Acis*, a *Partridge*; *hæc edornix*, *Acis*, a *Quail*, &c. And all *Gerunds in trix*: as, *hæc vitrix*, *Acis*, *she that banqueth*; *hæc nutrix*, *Acis*, a *nurse*, or *nurcery of trees*; *hæc matrix*, *Acis*, *she that mo- veth*; *hæc latrix*, *Acis*, a *Laundress*, &c. The rest do belong to the *third Rule*.

Substantives and Adjectives in Ox: as, *hæc celox*, *Acis*, a *little bark boat*; *hic hæc & hoc velox*, *Acis*, *swift*; except, *hic Cappadox*, *Acis*, a *Cappadocian*; *hic Allobrox*, *Acis*, *one of Savoy*, and *Daul- phine*.

In Ux: as, *Hic Pollux*, *pol*, *Acis*, *one of the Twins* whom *Ju- piter begate of Leda*, in the *form of a Swan*. The rest are of the *third Rule*.

In Yx: as, *Hic bombyx bombycis*, a *silkworm*, or *silk*; but *Bom- byx variis*, *hebrycis*, *mascul. gender*; an *inhabitant of Hebrycia*, or a *King of the Pyrene mountains*. The rest belong to the *third Rule*.

Greek Nouns in S, with *P* before it: as, *Hydrops*, *Acis*, the *drop- sic*; *hic Cyclops*, *Acis*, a *Giant*, or an *ancient inhabitant of Sicily*, having but *one eye*; *hæc conops*, *Acis*, a *gnat*; *hic hæc & hoc cer- eops*, *Acis*, *deceitfull*, *jealous*. The rest in *ops*, do belong to the *third Rule*.

The first Exception of Nouns increasing long, being the Masculine Gender.

1. **Certain Nouns of one syllable**, are the *Masculine Gen- der*: as, *sal*, *salia*, *salt*; *sol*, *solis*, the *Sun*; *Ren*, *renis*, the *Kidney*; *Spien*, *splenis*, the *Spleen*; *Car*, *caris*, a *man of Caria*; *Ser*, *seris*, *one of the people in Asia*, called *Seres*; *Vir*, *vir*, a *man*; *Vas*, *vadis*, a *Surety*, *bail*, *pledge*, or *hostage*; *As*, *assis*, a *pound of twelve ounces*, or the *whole lunn of any thing*; *Ma*, *maris*, a *man*; *hes*, *bellis*, *eight ounces*; *Cres*, *crecis*, a *Uctian*, or *man of Candy*;

1. Nouns of one syllable, the *mas- culine*; as, *Sal*, *sol*, *ren*, *splen*, *car*, *ser*, *vir*, *vas*, *vadis*; as, *mas*, *bes*, *creis*

pes, per, glis, gliris, mus, mus, vas, vas, mus, dens, mens, pus, suus, sept for a serpent, *grips, thrax, rex, grec, & phrix.*

2. Nouns of more than one syllable in *n* : as, *Acarman, lichen, delphin.*

3. In *e* : as, *Leo, curculio.*

4. *Senio, ternio, sermo.*

5. In *er* : as, *crater.*

6. In *or* : as, *auditor.*

7. In *us* : as, *heros.*

8. *Tortus, nefrens, orien.*

9. In *dens* : as, *bidens*, signifying an instrument.

10. *Gigas, elphas, adamus, garamus, tapes, lebes, Cures, magnus, merides.*

11. The compounds of *as* : as, *dodrans, semis.*

12. *Samus, hydrops, nycticorax, thorax, vervec, phoenix, & bombyx*, for a little worm.

An Exception, of *Syren, mulier, soror, uxor*, to be the Fem. Gender.

1. The second Exception; i. of these monosyllables, to be the neuter. *gen. Mel, fel, lac, far, ver, cur, ai, vas, vas, os, ossis, os, vis, vis, thus, jus, crux, pus.* 2. Of more than one syllable in *ai* : as, *capital.*

Pre, predis, a Surety in a money matter: *Pes, pedis*, a foot: *Glis, gliris*, a Damouse: *Mos, moris*, a Custom or manner: *Flos, floris*, a flower: *Ros, rotis*, the dew: *Troas, troici*, a Trojan: *Mos, moris*, a House: *Dens, dentis*, a tooth: *Mons, montis*, a hill: *Pons, podis*, a bridge: *Fons, fontis*, a Well: *Sept, sepi*, a Serpent, by whose biting or stinging, the flesh rotteth, a horn-worm, a hedge: *Grips, griphis*, a Giffon: *Thrax, thrax*, a Thracian: *Rex, regis*, a King: *Grex, gregis*, a flock or company: *Phryx, phrygis*, a Phrygian or Trojan.

Secondly, Nouns of more than one syllable in *n* : as, *Acarman*, *acarnanis*, one of Acarnania in Greece: *Lichen, lichenis*, Lintwoort, a leppy called a fance steam: *Delphin, delphinis*, a Dolphin fish, or sign of the heavens. Thirdly, in *o*, signifying a body: as, *Leo, leonis*, a Lion: *Curculio, curculionis*, a Fleashe. Fourthly, *Senio, senionis*, the Day: *ternio, ternionis*, the time: *Sermo, sermonis*, speech. Fifthly, in *e* : as, *Crater, crateris*, a vessel, or crater, a goblet, or standing piece. Sixthly, in *or* : as, *Conductor, oris*, a husband. Seventhly, in *os* : as, *Heros, heros*, a man, noble or excellent for manly deeds. Eighthly, *Torrens, torrentis*, a Lake without a spring, begun by rain: *Nefrens, nefrendis*, a young Pig: *Orien, orientis*, the East. Ninthly, many in *dens* : as, *bidens, bidensis*, an instrument with two teeth: in the Feminine Gender, a sheep with two teeth.

Tenthly, *Gigas, gigantis*, a Giant: *Elephas, elephantis*, an Elephant: *Adamus, adamantis*, an Adamant, or the herb called Hembane: *Garamus, garamantis*, one of Assick: *Tapes, tapetis*, a Carpet, or cloth of Arras: *Lebes, lebeis*, a Cauldron or pan: *Curus, cursum*, a Town of the Sabines: *Magnus, magnus*, the Load-stone which maketh Iron into it: *Merides, meridies*, Noon or the noon-stead. Eleventhly, Nouns compounded of this word, *As*, a pound of twelve ounces: as, *Dodrans, dodransis*, nine ounces: *Semis, semissis*, half a pound, or six ounces, or the half of any whole sum. And twelfthly, *Samus, samnitis*, a Samnite, an inhabitant of the mountains betwixt the Sabines and the Gauls in Italy: *Hydrops, hydropis*, the dropsie: *Nycticorax, nycticorax*, a night-Raven: *Thorax, thoracis*, the breast, and breastplate: *Vercus, vervecis*, a weather-sheep: *Phoenyx, phoenicis*, a bird so called: *Bombyx, bombycis*, a silk-worm, or silk. But of these, *Syren, firenis*, a Sea-maid: *Mulier, mulieris*, a woman: *Soror, sororis*, a sister: *Uxor, uxoris*, a wife: are the Feminine Gender.

The second Exception of Nouns increasing long, being the Neuter Gender.

First, these Nouns of no more than one syllable, are the Neuter Gender: *Mel, mellis*, honey: *Fel, fellis*, the Gall: *Lac, lactis*, milk: *far, farris*, bread corn: *Ver, veris*, the Spring time: *Cor, cordis*, the heart: *Es, aeris*, Copper, and sometimes money: *Vas, vasis*, a vessel: *Os, ossis*, a bone: *Os, oris*, a mouth: *Ius, juris*, the law, right, or potage: *crus, cruris*, a leg: *pus, puris*, corrupt matter, or a coze. Secondly, Nouns of more than one syllable in *al* : as, *Capital, capitalis*, an ornament of the head in sacrifice, or wayn of Auns, a lace,

lace, ribbon, or coat, to truss up the butt; or a crime punishable with death. Thirdly, in *ar*; as, *Laquear, laquearis*, a vaulted roof of a chamber or parlour; or a plain beam in a roof. And fourthly, *halce, halceis*; which is both the Fem. and Neuter Gender also.

The third Exception of Nouns increasing long, being the Doubtfull Gender.

These Nouns are of the Doubtfull Gender: Python, pythonis, a Serpent, a spirit of southsaying, or man or woman possessed with such a spirit: Scrobs, scrobis, a ditch, yet or furrow: Sarpens, serpensis, a Dragon, serpent or snake: Bubo, bubonis, a Scritch-owl; owl: Rudens, rudensis, a gadie-rope: Grus, grūs, a Crane: Perdix, perdicis, a Partridge: Linx, lincis, a spotted beast of a most sharp sight, called an Ounce: Limax, limacis, the shelled, or beetle-shall: Scirpus, stirpis, signifying the stump, stock, or body of a tree: Calx, calcis, the heel, or last end of any thing: Dies, diei, a day: but, Dies is the Masc. Gender only in the Plurall Number.

The fourth Exception of Nouns increasing long, being the Communine Gender.

First, these Nouns following, are of the Communine Gender: Parens, parentis, a father or mother, a grandfather or grandmother: Autor, autoris, an Author, the worker or doer of any thing, man or woman: Infans, infantis, an Infant, or babe: Adolescens, adolescentis, a stripling, from 12. years to 21. Dux, ducis, a Captain or guide, man or woman: Illex, illegis, a lawlesse body, man or woman: Hæres, hæredis, an heir: Exlex, exlegis, a lawlesse man or woman. Secondly, Nouns compounded of Fems, frontis, a forehead; as, Bifrons, bifrontis, he or she which hath two foreheads or faces. And thirdly, Custos, custodis, a keeper, man or woman: Bos, bovis, an Ox, bull or cow: Fur, furis, a man or woman thief: Sus, suis, a Boar, sow or hog: Sacerdos, sacerdotis, a Priest or Nun.

The Third speciall RULE.

A Noun is the Masculine Gender, whose last syllable but one of the Genitive case increasing, is short; as, Sanguis, sanguinis, blood.

Contrariwise, these Nouns are short in the last syllable but one of the Genitive case, of which sort are those few of the second Declension above mentioned: that is to say, Hic sacer, saceris, a father-in-law: Hic gener, generis, a son-in-law: Hic puer, pueris, a child, servant or son: Hic adulter, adulteri, an adulterer: hic Presbyter, presbyteri, a Presbyter or Elder; an Ecclesiasticall word.

The Compounds of Hic vir, viri, a man, husband, or male of beasts; as, Hic levir, leviri, the husbands brother: Hic triumvir, triumviri, one of the three in like authority: Hic decemvir, decemviri, one of the ten in like authority: Hic centumvir, centumviri, one of the hundred in like authority.

The Nouns also compounded of Gero, to bear; and Fero, to bear.

3. In *ar*; as, *Laquear*.

4. Of *halce*, to be both the Feminine and Neuter Gender.

The third Exception is, Of these Nouns of the Doubtfull Gender.

Python, scrobis, sarpens, bubo, rudens, grus, perdix, linx, limax, stirpis, calx, dies; which last is the Masc. only in the Plur. Num. Stirpis, for a stock or descent; and Calx, for lime, chalk or mortar; are the Fem. Gen.

These Nouns are of the Com. Gen.

1. Parens, autor, infans, adolescens, dux, illegis, hæres, exlex.

2. Nouns coming of this word, from; as, Bifrons.

3. Custos, boi, fur, sus, & sacerdos.

The third speciall Rule, is,

Of Nouns, whose last syllable but one of the Genitive case increasing, is short, to be the Masc. Gen. as, Sanguis, sanguinis.

- beat or suffer: as, hic Armiger, armigeri, an *Esquire* for the body,
or armour-beater of a Knight: hic claviger, clavigeri, a beater of
keys: hic caducifer, caduciferi, one that carrieth a white rod:
hic lucifer, luciferi, one that bringeth light. And certain ad-
jectives: as, Tener, tenera, tenerum, teneri, tender: Satur, a. um, tri, full:
Dexter, era, crum, eri, right: Prosper, a. um, eri, prosperous. *Others*
A. also do belong all Greek Nouns of the Nenter Gender in a:
as, Poema, poemans, a Poem, or Poets work, Verses: Dogma,
dogmatis, an opinion: Sophisma, sophismatis, a Sophisme or cavill:
Enigma, enigmatis, a dark question, or riddle.
- Yr. Also, Greek Nouns in Yr: as, Hic & hæc Martyr, martyris, a
Martyr, or witness: Pichyr, pichyris.
- Ur. In like manner, all Latine Nouns in Ur: as Hic & hæc augur,
auguris, a man or woman soothsayer: Hoc marmor, marmoris, a
noise of water running, or any such like thing, a roaring, un-
muring, or humming noise: Hic hæc & hoc cicur, ciculis, tame.
- Uc. Also, all Nouns in Uc: as, Hoc caput, capitis, an head: Hoc oc-
ciput, occipitis, the hinder part of the head.
- O. Furthermore, all Latine Nouns in O besides them before ex-
posed: as, hæc Imago, imaginis, an Image: Hæc sarrago, sarraginis, a
frying pan: Hic ordo, ordinis, an order: Hic vel hæc cardo, cardinis,
an hook or hinge.
- L. In L: as, hic Annibal, Annibalis, the son of Amilcar: hic Mugil, mu-
gilis, a Gullet: hic Consul, consulis, a Consul, or chief officer a-
mong the Romans, a Burdow-master: hic & hæc Præsul, præstulis,
a Prelate, superintendant, or Bishop.
- In. In an: as, Hic pedes, pedum, a coach, or travellers sleigh: Hic
tibicen, tibicinis, a player on the Flute, a trumpeter, or minstrell:
Hoc crimen, criminis, a verse or song: Hoc crimen, criminis, a fault,
or false report.
- On. Greek Nouns in On, having the little o, in the last syllable
but one of the Genitive case Singular: as, hic Canon, canonis, a
Rule: hic Dæmon, dæmonis, a Devill or spirit: hic Architecton, ar-
chitectonis, a master Mason, or Carpenter: hic Philemon, philemonis,
a comical Poet.
- Or. Latine and Greek Nouns in Or: as, Hæc arbor, arboris, a tree:
hoc æquor, æquoris, a Plain, or the sea: Hoc marmor, marmoris, a
marble: hic Pantocrator, pantocratoris, Almighty: Apator, apa-
toris.
- As. In As: as, hic vel hæc anas, anatis, a Duck or Drake. And Greek
Nouns: as, hic Archas, archadis, Jupiters son by Callisto, an Arca-
dian: Hæc chilias, chiliadis, a thousand: Hæc hebdomas, hebdo-
midis, a week: hæc Enneas, enneadis, the Nine.
- Es. Latine Nouns in Es: as, Hic fomes, fomitis, a chip, tinder,
touchwood, or any matter that is easily fired, or where with fire
is kept burning and kindled: Hic limes, lymitis, a frontier, bound,
or butting in fields, a cross way: Hic & hæc præses, præsidis, a
superintendant, man or woman: Hic hæc & hoc deses, desidis,
idle.
- Is. Latine and Greek Nouns in Is: as, Hic sanguis, sanguinis, blood:
Hæc pollis, pollinis, fine wheat flower, or fine powder: Hæc tyrannus,
tyrannidis, a tyranny in government, cruelty: Hæc paopsis, pa-
ropsidis, a Charger, platter or dish.

Latine and Greek Nouns in Ar: as, Hoc jobar, jubilaris, the Sun-beam: hic hac & hoc compar, comparis, equal: Hoc nectar, nectaris, a pleasant liquor, or honey: hac Bacchar, baccharis, an herb called of the French men, our Ladies gloves.

Latine and Greek Nouns in Ar: as, Hic socer, soceri, a wives father, a father-in-law: hic gener, generis, a daughters husband, a son-in-law: hic Aer, aeris, the Ay: hic Aether, aetheris, the Element of fire, or whatsoever is above it, the ay, sky, or brightnes of heaven.

As well Latine as Greek Nouns in S, with a Consonant before: as, hic & hac Princeps, principis, a Prince or Princess: hic hycnis, hycnis, Winter: hic hac & hoc inops, indolis, needy: hic Ethiops, ethiops, an Ethiopian: hic Arabs, arabis, an Arabian: hic Chalybs, chalybis, Steel, a sword.

Latine Nouns in Os: as, Hic & hac compos, compotis, par-taker of.

Latine and Greek Nouns in Us: as, Hoc pecus, pecoris, all cat-tell: hoc Decus, decoris, Honour, or comeliness: hoc Vellus, velloris, a fleece of wooll, a fell, leaves of trees: Hic vulnus, vulneris, a wound: Hic tripus, tripudis, anything of three feet; as, a stool, pot, or trier: hic Oedipus, oedipodis, son to Laius and Locasta.

Greek Nouns in Ax: as, Hic abax, abaxis, the square of a pillar below, serving to sit on; a counting table, or the art of counting, a chestboard, a cupboard, a case to keep plate in, a dresser, the compass of the body of the Sun, as it appearth to us: hic Scorax, scoraxis, a sweet Intense of Gum: Hic colax, colaxis, a flatterer: Hic climax, climaxis, a step of a ladder, or a ladder, a stile, a going up.

Latine Nouns in Ex: as, hic & hac Index, indicis, an appeacher, of another, a touchstone, a Table of a book, a Summary, an In-ventory, a sign, a guide: hic & hac Vindex, vindicis, a revenger, re-dresser, defender, or Proctor: Hic carnifex, carnificis, an hangman, cutter, or murderer: hic & hac Aruspex, aruspis, a Soothsayer, by looking into the bowels of beasts.

Latine and Greek Nouns in Ix: as, hic Varix, varicis, a crooked Vein, swelling with corrupt blood, in the temples, belly, or legs: hic Fornix, fornicis, an arch, a Straw: hic Calix, calicis, a cup, Chal-lice, or bottome of a boat: hic Maltix, malticis, a whip, the sweet Gum called Mastick.

Latine and Greek Nouns in Ox: as, Hic hac & hoc praenox, praenocis, too soon ripe: hic Cappadox, cappadocis, a Cappadocian: hic Allobrox, allobrogis, one of Savoy, or Dauphine: hic Polyphi-lox, polyphilogis.

Latine Nouns in Ux: as, hic & hac Conjux, conjugis, an husband or wife, a Wife, a mate: Hic hac & hoc redux, redicis, one return-ing, or bringing home again.

To conclude, Greek Nouns in Yx: as, hic vel hac Onyx, onychis, the Nail of ones finger or toe: hic & hac Sardonyx, sardonychis, a stone in the upper part, resembling the colour of ones Nail in the nether part, the colour of flesh, called a Sardonyx: hic Coryx, cerychis, a Purfuant, Beadie, or Ceyx: hic Eryx, erychis,

The first Excep-
tion.

1. Of Nouns of more than two syl-
lables, in *da*, & *di*-
mis: as, *dulcedo*,
dulcedinis.

2. In *ga*, & *gini*:
as, *compago*, *compa-*
gini.

3. *Virgo*, *granda*,
ides, *compes*, *teges*,
teges, *arbor*, *hyems*,
baechar, *syndon*,
gorgon, *icon*, & *ma-*
ma &c.

4. Greek Nouns in
as: as, *lampis*.

5. Greek Nouns in
is: as, *Lapis*, *causus*,
culpis.

6. *Pecus*, *pecudis*, &
7. *Furx*, *pellex*,
carex, *supellex*, *ap-*
pendix, *histris*, *con-*
sensio, & *filix*.

The second Excep-
tion.

1. Of Nouns, no-
ting a thing with-
out life, to be the
Neuter Gender,
ending in *a*: as,
problema.

2. In *en*: as,
omen.

3. In *ar*: as, *ju-*
bur.

4. In *ur*: as, *le-*
cur.

5. In *us*: as,
onus.

6. In *ut*: as, *ac-*
ciput. &c.

7. *Cadruer*, *ver-*
ber, *iter*, *suber*,
tuber, *uber*, *gingi-*
bur, *laser*, *cicer*,
piper, *papaver*, *sicer*, *siler*, *aquar*, *marmor*, *adar*, & *pecus*, *pecoris*.

The first Reception of Nouns increasing short, being
the Feminine Gender.

First, Nouns of more than two syllables, ending in *da*, having
inis in the Genitive case: as, of the Feminine Gender: as,
Dulcedo, *dulcedinis*, Sweetness. Secondly, in *go*, having *gini* in
the Genitive case: as, *Compago*, *compaginis*, a joint. Thirdly,
Virgo, *virginis*, a Virgin: *Granda*, *grandinis*, hail: *Fides*, *fidei*, faith
or truth: *Compes*, *compedis*, a pair of fetters: *Teges*, *tegum*, a cover-
ing, a mat: *Segetes*, *segetis*, growing corn: *Arbor*, *arboris*, a tree
Hyems, *hyemis*, Winter: *Baechar*, *baecharis*, an herb which the
Frenchmen do call, our Ladies gloves: *Syndon*, *syndonis*, sendal
a most fine veil, curtain, or sail, or linnen. as *Cambysick*, *lamben*,
Gorgon, *gorgonis*, a certain terrible woman: *Icon*, *iconis*, an Image
An *Amazon*, *amazonis*, a woman of scythia, so called for lacking a dug
Fourthly, Greek Nouns in *as*: as, *Lampas*, *lampadis*, a lamp, for
of the brightness of the Sun. Fifthly, Greek Nouns in *is*: as,
Lapis, *lapis*, a precious stone of a green colour, called a Jasper
Callis, *callidis*, an helmet: *Cuspis*, *cuspidis*, the point of a Spear
Pike, *Partisan*, or of any weapon, a sting. Sixthly, *Pecus*, *peco-*
dis, all cattell. And seventhly, *Portex*, *portis*, a pair of Scissers
Shears: *Pellex*, *pellicis*, an harlot: *Carex*, *caricis*, a Hedge: *Supellex*,
supellectilis, household stuff: *Appendix*, *appendicis*, an Appendice, or
a boot to increase a thing: *Histris*, *histricis*, a Porcupine or Hedge
hog: *Coxendix*, *coxendicis*, the Hip: *Filix*, *filicis*, Fern.

The second Exception of Nouns increasing short, being
the Neuter Gender.

A Noun signifying a thing without life, is the Neuter Gender
ending first in *a*: as, *Problema*, *problematis*, a demand. Se-
condly, in *en*: as, *Omen*, *ominis*, a fore-speaking. Thirdly, in *ar*:
as, *Jubar*, *jubaris*, the Sun, or sun-beam. Fourthly, in *ur*: as,
Jecur, *jecoris*, or *jecinoris*, the Liver. Fifthly, in *us*: as, *Onus*, *cor-*
ris, a burthen. Sixthly, in *ut*: as, *Occiput*, *occipitis*, the hinder
part of the head; of which notwithstanding, *Pecten*, *pectinis*,
comb, or a weavers sley; and *Parfur*, *furfuris*, Bran, or straw: are
of the Masculine Gender. And seventhly, *Cadaver*, *cadaveris*, a dead
body, corpse, or carrion: *Verber*, *verberis*, a rod, a whip, a stripe: *Iti-*
neris, a journey: *Suber*, *suberis*, a Cork-tree: *Tuber*, *tuberis*, a Root
stool: *Uber*, *ubris*, a Dug or Udder, a bosom, a spout, or cock of
a Conduit, fatness, or fertility of the ground, a swarm of young
Bees, hanging on the branches of a tree: *Gingiber*, *gingiberis*,
Ginger: *Laser*, *laseris*, a Juice of the Herb *Laserpitium*, or Benjamin
Cicer, *ciceris*, a certain Italian Bease: *Piper*, *piperis*, Pepper: *Papa-*
paver, *papaveris*, Poppy: *Sicer*, *siceris*, a Berliney: *Siler*, *sileris*, a
Oster: *Aquor*, *aquoris*, a Plain, the sea, or ay: *Marmor*, *ma-*
moris, a marble: *Ador*, undeclined, Wheat: And *Pecus*, *pecoris*, all cattell

The third Exception of Nouns increasing short, being the Doubtfull Gender.

The third Exception of Nouns increasing short, being the Doubtfull Gender: Cardo, cardinis, an hook or hinge: Margo, marginis, the brink of any thing, the bank of a river, or of the sea: Cinis, cineris, ashes, imbers, a Lark: Obex, obicis, a bar or bolt of a door, a stop: Pulvis, pulveris, of pulvis, dust: Adeps, adipis, fat: Forceps, forcipis, a pair of Tongs: Pumex, pumicis, a Pumice Stone: Ramex, ramicis, a Ram's head: Anas, anatis, a Duck or a Drake: Imbrex, imbricis, a gutter-tile: Culex, culicis, a Gnat: Natrix, natricis, a water-Serpent: Oryx, onycis, the Horn of an antelope, a precious Stone, white like a Pearl, the hair in ones eye: Silex, silecis, a flint-stone. But these are most used in the Masculine Gender.

The fourth Exception of Nouns increasing short, being the Commune Gender.

The fourth Exception of Nouns increasing short, being the Commune Gender: Vigil, vigiliis, a man or woman watcher: Pupil, pupillae, a man or woman champion: Exul, exulis, a banished man or woman: Praeful, praefulis, he or she that superintendeth: Homo, hominis, a man or woman: Nemo, neminis, no body, man or woman: Martyr, martyris, a witness man or woman, a Martyr: Lygur, lyguris, one of Lyguria in Italy: Angur, anguris, a man or woman soothsayer: Arcas, arcadis, one of Arcadia: Anstis, ansticis, a man or woman President, or a chief Ruler: Miles, milicis, a man or woman souldier: Pedes, pedinis, a Foot-man or woman: Interpreter, interpretis, a man or woman Interpreter, or Translator: Comes, comitis, a man or woman companion on the way: Hospes, hospitris, an host, hostess, or guest, man or woman: Ales, alicis, a bird, or swift: Praefes, praefidis, a President, he or she: Princeps, principis, a Prince or Princess: Auceps, aucipis, a man or woman Fowler: Eques, equitis, an horseman or woman: and Obfex, obfidis, a man or woman hostage or pledge. And secondly, many other Nouns coming of Verbs: as, Coniux, conjugis, an husband or wife: Iudex, iudicis, a man or woman Judge: Vindex, vindicis, an avenger man or woman: Opifex, opificis, a work-man or woman: Aruspex, aruspicis, he or she that seeth Destinies by the bowels of beasts, a soothsayer.

A generall Rule for Nouns ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives of one termination, are all three Genders: as, Hic haec & hoc felix, felicit, happy: Hic haec & hoc audax, audacis, bold. If they have two terminations; the first is the Commune Gender, and the other the Neuter: as, Hic & haec omnis, & hoc omne, omnis, all. If they have 3 terminations, the first is the Masculine, the second the Feminine, and the third the Neuter: as, Sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacri, sacrae, sacri, holy. These are by declining,

Com. Gend. and the other the Neuter: as, omnis, & omne. If they have 3 terminations, the 1. is the Masc, the 2. the Fem, the 3. the Neut. as, sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy. These are by declining, almost

The third Exception, which of these two Nouns following, to be the Doubtfull Gender: Cardo, margo, cinis, obex, pulvis, adeps, forceps, pumex, ramex, anas, imbrex, culex, natrix, oryx, silex; which are most used in the Masculine Gender.

The fourth Exception of Nouns, being of the Commune of two Genders: as,

1. Vigil, pupil, exul, praeful, homo, nemo, martyr, lygur, augur, arcas, anstis, miles, pedes, interpreter, comes, hostes, ales, praefes, princeps, auceps, eques, & obfex.

2. And many other Nouns also, derived of Verbs: as, Coniux, iudex, vindex, opifex, aruspex.

Genders of Adjectives, such as have but one termination, are all 3. Genders under that one: as, felix, audax. If they have 2 terminations, the first is the

Note that *filia* and *meta*, do make the Dative and Ablative case Plurall in *is*, as in abas. Also *Dea*, *meta*, *equa*, *liberta* *ambæ*, and *duæ*, do make the Dative and Ablative case Plurall, in abas only.

The first Declension comprehendeth four terminations: A, *as*, *mensa*, *mensa*, a table. As, as hic *Eneas*, *Enea*, a noble man of Troy, son to *Anchises* and *Venus*. Es, as hic *Anchises*, *Anchise*, son to *Carys*. And *s*, as hic *Penelope*, *Penelopes*, daughter to *Icanus*, and wife to *Ulysses*. Moreover, all which do end in As, Es, and S, are Greek Nouns: as, hic *Thomas*, *Thomas*, *Thomas*. Hic *Anchises*, *Anchise*, *Anchites*. Hæc *Phoebe*, *Phoebe*, *Phoebe*.

Some add hereunto, certain Hebrew names in Am: as, hic *Adam*, *Adæ*, *Adam*; hic *Abraham*, *Abrahæ*, *Abraham*. Which notwithstanding, thou must decline better after the Latines, thus: hic *Adamus*, *Adam*; hic *Abrahamus*, *Abrahami*.

Such as end in As, do make their Accusative in Am and An: as, hic *Eneas*, *Eneam*, or *Entan*: and the Vocative in A: as, *Eneas*, *Enea*.

Such as end in Es, have En in the Accusative: as, hic *Anchises*, *Anchisen*: in the Vocative and Ablative, E of A: as, *Anchise*, or, *Anchisa*.

Such as end in S, have es in the Genitive: in the Dative, en in, the Accusative, and e in the Vocative or Ablative: as, Nominativo, hæc *Penelope*, Genitivo hujus *Penelopes*, Dativo huic *Penelope*, Accusativo, hanc *Penelopem*, Vocativo ô *Penelope*, Ablativo ab hac *Penelope*.

A Type of the first Declension.						
SINGULARITER.						
Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.	
a	a	a	am	a	a	Hæc <i>meta</i> .
as	a	a	am, or an	a	a	Hic <i>Eneas</i> .
es	a	a	en or a	es or a	or a	Hic <i>Anchises</i> .
s	es	e	en	s	e	Hæc <i>Penelope</i> .
PLURALITER.						
a	as	is	as	a	is, and some in abus.	

Note

Hæc *Filia*, *filia*, a daughter: hæc *meta*, *a* daughter: hæc *meta*, *a* daughter: hæc *Dea*, *Dea*, a goddess: hæc *meta*, *a* Mule: hæc *equa*, *equa*, a Mare: hæc *liberta*, he or she that of bond is made free: *ambæ*, both: *duæ*, two.

As in the Genitive.

Sometimes some Latine Nouns have As in the Genitive case, after the manner of the Greeks: as, hic paterfamilias, paterfamilias, the Goddesse, or father of the house or family. Which the Ancients observed in many other words, Ennius: Dux ipse vias, the guide himself of the way. Livius Andronicus; Mercurius dis quoque eo filius. Latone, for Latone: Mercurius, and with him, the son of Latone. So Nevius: Fili terræ, for terræ, of the son of the earth. Virgil: Nec ausus nec sonitus memore: neither mindfull of the soft winds, nor of the sound. Aulæ, aulæ, for aulæ, i. g. an hawk; hic Pida, pida, for pida, a Whistler with a collar, a champion, a fighting cock: whereof I leave aulæ and pida, and like, to old Writers. The Genitive case Plurall, doth sometimes admit a Syncope: as, Horum Encadum, for Encadum, of the Trojans: Horum & harum Grajugenum, for Grajugenarum, of the Egyptians.

The second Declension.

The second Declension.

Hic vir, viri, a man. Hic liber, libri, a book. Hic colus, colis, a distaff. Hic leges, legi, speech. Hic magister, magistris, a master.

The second is when the Genitive case Singular endeth in i, the Dative in o, the Accusative in um, the Locative for the most part like the Nominative, the Ablative in o: The Nominative Plurall in i, the Genitive in orum, the Dative in is, the Accusative in os, the Locative like the Nominative, the Ablative in o.

As in Example:

Singulariter	Nominativo hic magister.	Pluraliter	Nominativo hi magistri.
	Genitivo huius magistra.		Genitivo horum magistrorum
	Dativo huic magistro.		Dativo his magistris.
	Accusativo hunc magistrum.		Accusativo hos magistris.
	Vocativo o magister.		Vocativo o magistri.
	Ablativo ab hoc magistro.		Ablativo ab his magistris.

Note.

Hic Dominus, domini, a Lord. Hic Deus, dei, God. Hic filius, filii, a son. Hic Georgius, Georgii, George. Hic agnus, agni, a lamb. Hic lucus, luci, a wood. Hic & hoc vulgus, vulgus, the common people. Hic populus, populi, a people. Hic chorus, chori, a company of singers or dancers. Hic fluvius, fluvii, a flood or river. Hic dominum, domini, lord. Hic malum, mali, evil.

Here is to be noted, that when the Nominative endeth in u, the Locative shall end in e; as, Nominativo hic Dominus, Vocativo o Domine. Except Deus, that maketh o Deus: and Filius, that maketh o Fili.

When the Nominative endeth in ius, if it be a proper name of a man, the Locative shall end in i: as, Nominativo hic Georgius, Vocativo o Georgi.

Also these Nouns following, to make their Locative Singular, in e, or in u: as, Agnus, Lucus, Vulgus, Populus, Chorus, Fluvius.

But Ovidius is bold to say, Latinus Endymion, non est tibi luna inbori: Latinus Endymion, Art thou not ashamed of the Moon? But he followeth the Attick Dialect of the Greeks, which doth form the Locative like the Nominative ever.

Note also that all Nouns of the Nuter Gender, of what Declension forer they be, have the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Locative like in both Numbers: And in the Plurall Number, they end all in a.

As in example:

Singularis	{	Nominativo <i>hoc regnum.</i>	{	Nominativo <i>hæc regna.</i>
		Genitivo <i>huius regni.</i>		Genitivo <i>horum regnorum.</i>
		Dativo <i>huic regno.</i>		Dativo <i>his regnis.</i>
		Accusativo <i>hoc regnum.</i>		Accusativo <i>hæc regna.</i>
		Vocativo <i>ô regnum.</i>		Vocativo <i>ô regna.</i>
		Ablativo <i>ab hoc regno.</i>		Ablativo <i>ab his regnis.</i>

Except *Ambo* and *Duo*, which make the Neuter Gender in o; and be thus Declined:

*Hæc verbum, ver-
bi, a word. Ambo,
both. Duo, two.*

Pluralis	{	Nominativo, <i>Ambo, amba, ambo.</i>
		Genitivo, <i>Amborum, ambarum, amborum.</i>
		Dativo, <i>Ambobus, ambobus, ambobus.</i>
		Accusativo, <i>Ambos, ambas, amba.</i>
		Vocativo, <i>Amba, amba, amba.</i>
		Ablativo, <i>Ambobus, ambobus, ambobus. Likewise, Duo.</i>

Which two Anomalous Poets do use in the Masculine Gender of the Accusative case: as Virg. Si duo præterea tales Ida tulisset terra viros; for duos: If the land of Ida had born two such men more. Hor. Ne vos titillet gloria: Jurejurando obstringam ambo; for ambos: Let glory should tickle you, I will binde you both with an oath. Cicero: Præter duo vos, nemo hic loquitur; for duos: Besides you two, no man speaketh here.

There are with the Latines, five terminations of the second Declension: as, Er, ir, ur, us, um: as, Hic aper, apri, a wilde Boar: Hic vir, viri a man: Satur, saturi, a ruler, an husband: hoc Templum, templi, a Temple, a Church.

Of Greek Nouns, there be in this second Declension, three terminations: as, Os, on, eus: as, hæc Delos, deli, delon, an Isle, one of the Cyclades, in the Sea Ægeum: hic Ilion, ilii, the third gut from the ventricle: hic Orpheus, Orphei, Orpheus, an ancient Poet, son to Apollo and Calliope.

Attick Nouns in Os, do make the Genitive in o, the Accusative in on: as, hic Androgeos, Genitivo Androgeo, Accusativo Androgeon, son to Minos king of Crete, or a Grecian captain against Troy.

Certain Greek Nouns contracted into Us, do form the Vocative in u: as, hic Panthus, ô Panthu, son to Oreus: for the word is Pantheus. Hic Oedipus, ô Oedipu, son to Laius and Iocasta.

The Greek Nouns in Bus, do form the Genitive in ei, or eos, the Dative in ei, the Accusative in ea, and the Vocative in eu: as, Nominativo hic Orpheus, Genitivo huius Orphei, or Orpheos, Dativo huic Orphei, Accusativo hunc Orpheia, Ovi Orpheon, Vocativo ô Orpheu, Ablativo ab hoc Orpheo.

To conclude, the Genitive Case Plural both sometimes admit also a Syncope: as, horum Deum, for horum Deorum, of the gods: Horum virum, for horum virorum, of men.

An Example of the second Declension.

SINGULARITER.						
	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
<i>Hic Magister.</i>	er				er	
<i>Hic Vir.</i>	ir				ir	
<i>Sapientia, sapientis, sapientum; toll</i> (sed.)	ur	i	o	um	er	o
<i>Hoc Camerum, vel. a forni.</i>	um				um	
<i>Hic Dominus. Georgius, m.</i>	us				e. i	
<i>Hic Orpheus.</i>	eus	eus	ei	eu ^{rum} or ei	ea	eo
PLURALITER.						
	i			os	i	is
		orum	is			
	a			a	a	

The third Declension.

The third Declension.

Hic pater, patris, a father. Hic panis, panis, bread. Hoc opus, operis, a work. Hoc caput, capitis, an head. Hec nubes, nubis, a cloud.

Hic vel hac bubo, bubonis, an Owl. Hec virtus, virtutis, vertue. Hoc animal, animalis, a living creature. Hoc cubile, cubilis, a bed. Hoc calcar, calcatri, a spur.

The third is when the Genitive case singular endeth in is, the Dative in i, the Accusative most commonly in em, and sometime in um, and sometime in both; the Vocative like the Nominative the Ablative in e sometime in i, and sometime both in e and i. The Nominative case Plural in es, the Genitive sometimes in um, and sometime in ium; the Dative in bus, the Accusative in es, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in bus.

As in Example:

Singulariter	<p>Nominativo <i>hic lapis, a stone.</i> Genitivo <i>huius lapidis.</i> Dativo <i>huic lapide.</i> Accusativo <i>hunc lapidem.</i> Vocativo <i>ô lapis.</i> Ablativo <i>ab hoc lapide.</i></p>	Pluraliter	<p>Nominativo <i>hi lapides.</i> Genitivo <i>horum lapidum.</i> Dativo <i>his lapidibus.</i> Accusativo <i>hos lapides.</i> Vocativo <i>ô lapides.</i> Ablativo <i>ab his lapidibus.</i></p>
Singulariter	<p>N. <i>hic & hac parent.</i> G. <i>huius parentis.</i> D. <i>huic parenti.</i> A. <i>hunc & hunc pare. tem.</i> V. <i>ô parente.</i> A. <i>ab hoc & hac parente.</i></p>	Pluraliter	<p>N. <i>hi & ha parentes.</i> G. <i>horum & harum parentum.</i> D. <i>his parentibus.</i> A. <i>hos & has parentes.</i> V. <i>ô parentes.</i> A. <i>ab his parentibus.</i></p>

The third Declension is very diverse, the more difficult cases, The Accusative only whereof we will touch in this place.

Some have their Accusative cases only in im : as, Hæc vis, vis, vim, strength, power, nature, violence : Hæc ravis, ravis, ravi, ravim, hoarseness : Hæc tussis, tussis, tussi, tussim, the cough : Hæc fitis, fitis, fitis, fitim, the fit : Hæc maguderis, maguderis, maguderi, maguderi, the herb, stalk or root of Lalerpitium : Hæc amussis, amussis, amussi, amussim, a Spoons or Carpenters rule, or line chalked or okered : hæc Charybdis, charybdis, charybdis, charybdim, a Gulf of the sea by Sicily, over against Scylla. So also, the Accusative cases of certain Rivers : as, hæc Tybris, tybris, tybri, tybrim, a great River, which running through Rome, falleth into the sea, fifteen miles from it : hæc Araris, araris, arari, aracim, the River Sagons in France.

Some Nouns have their Accusative cases in im and em, indifferently: as, Hec buris, buris, buui, burim, & burem, the Blowy tail, or handle; hic pelvis, pelvis, pelvi, pelvim, & pelvem, a Basin wherein divers things are washed; also the Spain-tunnell: Hec clavis, clavis, clavi, clavem & clavim, a key: Hec securis, securis, securi, secumim, & securem, an axe, or an hatchet: Hæc puppis, puppis, puppi, puppim, & puppem, the rail or cattle of a ship, the Stern, and sometimes the whole ship: Hic vel hæc torquis, torquis, torqui, torquim, & torquem, a neck-collar or chain: Hæc turris, turris, turri, turrim, & turrem, a tower: Hic vel hæc testis, testis, testi, testim, & testem, an halter, roard, rope or gable, a rope of Onions, a bunch of Garlick: hæc Fecis, fecis, feceri, febim, & febrem, a Fever: Hæc navis, navis, navi, navim, & navein, a ship, boat, barque, a vessel of the sea: hæc Bipennis, bipennis, bipenni, bipennim, & bipennem, a Twosid'd: hic & hæc Bipennis, & hoc bipenne, bipennis, bipenni, bipennim, & bipennem, & hoc bipenne, that is sharp on both edges: Hic & hæc bipennis, & hoc bipenne, bipennis, bipenni, bi, ennim, & bipennem, & hoc bipenne, hæc bifug two wings: hic Aqualis aqualis, equali, aqualem, & aqualem, a Water-Creeper, or other like beffell for water, also Water fly.

The Ablative case endeth regularly, in e: as, Hoc pedo, pedore, The Ablative case
the best, heart, courage, mind, or stomach, the back of the hand; Singular.
Hoc salus, salute, a salutation, safety, remedy, health, life, the good
state of ones life.

Proper Names, which are like unto Adjectives, have their Ablative

• Ablative cases in e : as, hic Felix, felicia, felices, Felix : hic Clemens, clementis, clemente, Clemente : hic Juvenalis, juvenale, juvenal : hic Martialis, Martiale, Martiali, &c.

• But Nouns of the *Pluriter* Gender, ending in al, ar, and e, have their Ablative for the most part in i : as, Vediculæ, veditigalis, veditigali, a tribute, a yearly revenue : Calcar, calcaris, calcari, a spur : Maris, maris, the sea.

A Demonstration of the third Declension.

SINGULARITER.						
	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
Hic <i>Petrus, petri</i> , a Doct'r work. <i>Hoc cubile, cubilis</i> , a bed.	A. E.				A. E.	
Hic <i>sermo, sermonis</i> , speech. <i>Hæc</i> & <i>hoc haloe, haloeis</i> , an Derring.	O. C.			em, im	O. C.	a. i.
Hic <i>animal, animalis</i> , a living creature. <i>Hoc nomen, nomi</i> , a name.	L. N.	is	i		L. N.	
Hic <i>pater, patris</i> , a fa- ther. <i>Hic lapis, lapidis</i> , a stone.	R. S.				R. S.	
Hoc <i>caput, capitis</i> , an head. <i>Hic cadex, dictis</i> , a book.	T. X.				T. X.	
PLURALITER.						
	Es.	ium		Es.	Es.	
	A.	um		A.	A.	

• The Ablative case Rete, being the *Communit* Gender, a net, cometh of the *Nominative* case Retis : not of the *Nominative* case, Rete, retis, the *Pluriter* Gender, a net. Hic hæc & hoc par paris, equal, convenient, sufficient, two : with his compounds, hath as well e as i : as, Per, Ablativo pare, or pari : Hic hæc & hoc compar, Ablativo compare, or compari, equal. Yet these do keep e ; Hoc far, faris, farris, bread corn : Hoc hepar, hepatis, hepate, the Liver, of a fish like a Beam : Hoc iubar, iubaris, iubare, the sun beam, the Day

day star, or brightness of the fire: hoc Nether, netheris, nether, a
pleasant liquor, or honey: hoc Gausape, undeclined, a frieze, or
rough garment, an hairy mantle for a hen, a carpet for a table:
hoc Præsep, præsepis, præsepe, a Stables or Dischamber, a stable or
crib, a stall of sheep-houls. And so also do these proper Names:
hoc Soracte, soractis, Soracte, a mountain twenty miles from Rome:
hoc Præneste, prænestis, prænesti the City Praenestina of Latium in Italy:
hoc Reate, reatis, reate, a City of Umbria in Italy.

The Names of Feasts being only of the Singular Number, have the Genitive case sometimes in *orum*: as, hæc Agonalia, agonaliorum, Feasts in the honour of Janus, before called Agonia: hæc Vinalia, vinaliorum, Feasts belonging to the castings of Wine, Saint Martin's Feasts. But sometimes in *ium*: as, hæc Floralia, floralium, Feasts in the honour of Flora, an harlot: hæc Feretalia, feratium, a day dedicated to the Gods, to pacify them towards dead souls; All-Souls Day. And sometimes as well in *onem* as in *ium*: as, hæc Parentalia, parentalium, or parentium, funeral Feasts of parents, or other Ancestors: hæc Saturnalia, saturnalium, or saturnum, Feasts kept in December, in the honour of Saturnus. But they make their Datives and Ablatives in *bus*: as, Saturnibus: & hæc Bacchanalia, bacchanalium, or bacchanalibus, the Feasts of Bacchus. Except, hæc Quinquæria, a Feast in Athens during five days, in the honour of Pallas; which, forsooth the former calls after the second Declension; as, Quinquæriorum, quinquæriis.

The Names of Feasts.

The Names of Months in *er* or *is*, have the Ablative in *i* only: as, hic September, septembris, Ablativo Septembri, the Month of September: hic Aprilis, aprilis, Ablativo Aprili, the Month of April.

The Names of Months.

Such Nouns as have the Accusative in *im* only, have the Ablative in *i*: as, Hæc sitis, sitis, sitim, Ablativo sit, thirst: Hæc tussis, tussis, tussim, Ablativo tussi, a cough.

Adjectives, having the Nominative in *is* or *er*, and the *Arter* in *e*, do make the Ablative in *i* only: as, Hic & hæc fortis, & hoc fortis, fortis, Ablativo forti, strong: Hic & hæc mollis, & hoc molle, mollis, Ablativo molli, soft: Hic & hæc dulcis, & hoc dulce, dulcis, Ablativo dulci, sweet. So, Hic acer, hæc acris, & hoc acre, acris, Ablativo acri, sharp. Though Poets do sometimes for *Arter* sake, use *e* for *i*.

Other Adjectives do make the Ablative as well in *e*, as in *i*: as, Hic hæc & hoc capax, capax, Ablativo capace, or capaci, capable, apt to receive: Hic hæc & hoc duplex, duplicis, Ablativo duplici, or duplici, double. Except, Hic & hæc pauper, pauperis, Ablativo paupere, poor: Hic & hæc degener, degeneris, Ablativo degeneri, degenerate, un noble: Hic & hæc uber, uberis, Ablativo ubere, plentiful: Hic & hæc hospes, hospitis, Ablativo hospite, whole: Hic & hæc hospes hospitis, Ablativo hospite, an host, hostis, or guest. For these do make the Ablative also in *e* only.

Also, Nouns of the Comparative Degree, do make their Ablative case two ways: as, Hic & hæc melior, & hoc melius, melioris, Ablativo meliore, or meliori, better: Hic & hæc doctior, & hoc doctus, doctioris, Ablativo doctiore, or doctiori, more learned. So likewise, certain Substantives: as, Hic ignis, ignis, Ablativo igne, or igni,

Note

igni, fire: Hic vel hæc annis, annis, Abl. annæ or anni, a river: Hic vel hæc anguis, anguis, Abl. angue or angui, a hy or water snake: hic supellex, supellectilis, Abl. supellectile, or supellectili, household stuff: Hic unguis, unguis, Abl. ungue, in ungui, a nail or hoof: Hic vectis, Abl. vecte, or vechi, a doop-bar. But Hic & hæc civis, civis, who moze seldom make in the Ablative case, give or civi, a Citizen: hic Arpinæ, Arpinæ, both also seldom make in the Ablative case: Arpinatæ, or Arpinati; out of Arpinum in Italy. And so likewise other Nouns Steniles. To conclude, after the same manner as these Nouns form their Ablative cases, whose Accusative case end in en and in: as, Hæc puppis, puppis, Abl. puppe, or puppi the stern of a ship: Hæc navis, navis, Abl. nave, or navi, a ship. And likewise Herball Nouns in trix: as, Hæc victrix, victricis, Abl. victricæ, or victricis, she that overcometh: Hæc alitrix, alitricis, Abl. alitricæ or alitricis, she that nourisheth.

Nouns of the Neuter Gender, whose Ablative Singular endeth in i onely, or in e and i, have their Nominative Plural in ia: as, Hic & hæc mollis, & hoc molle, mollis, Abl. molli or molle, Nominative Plur. mollia soft: Hic hæc & hoc duplex, duplicis, Abl. duplicæ, or duplici, Plur. Nom. duplicia, double. Except Ubra, in the Nominative Plural, of hoc uber, uberis, Abl. uberi, a breast: Plur. or pluria, of hoc plus, plus, Abl. pluri moze: Aplustra, or aplustria, & hoc aplustre, aplustriis, Abl. aplustri, flags or banners in the top of the mast of a ship. And Nouns of the Comparative degree: as, Meliora, of hic & hæc melior, & hoc melius, melioris, Abl. meliore, or meliori, better: Fortiora, of hic & hæc fortior, & hoc fortius, fortioris, Abl. fortiore, or fortiori, stronger: Doctiora, of hic & hæc doctior, & hoc doctius, doctioris, Abl. doctiore, or doctiori, learner: and Priora, of hic & hæc prior, & hoc prius, prioris, Abl. priore, or priori, former.

Of Ablatives in i onely, or in e and i: the Genitives Plural are in ium: as, Hic & hæc utilis, & hoc utile, utilis, Abl. utili, Plural Genitivo utilium, profitable: Hæc puppis, puppis, Abl. puppe, or puppi, plural. Gen. puppium, the Stern of a ship, or a ship. Except the Comparatives: as, Hic & hæc major, & hoc majus, majoris, Abl. majore, or majori, plural. Gen. majorum, greater: Hic & hæc melior, & hoc melius, melioris, Abl. meliore, or meliori, Plural. Gen. meliorum, better. Except these also, Hic hæc & hoc supplex, supplicis, Abl. supplicis, Plur. Gen. supplicum, humbly intreating: Hic hæc & hoc complex, complicitis, Abl. complicitis, Plur. Gen. complicitum, partner: Hoc strigil, or hæc strigilis, strigilis, Abl. strigiti, Plur. Gen. strigilum, a carry-comb: Hic artifex, artificis, Abl. artificis, or artificis, Plur. Gen. artificum, an Artificer: Hic & hæc vigil, vigilis, Abl. vigili, Plur. Gen. vigilum, a watch-man or woman: Hic hæc & hoc vetus, veteris, Abl. veteri, Plur. Gen. veterum, old: Hic hæc & hoc memor, memoris, Abl. memori, Plur. Gen. memorum, mindfull: Hic & hæc pugil, pugilis, Abl. pugili, Plur. Gen. pugilum, a man or woman champion: Hic hæc & hoc inops, inopis, Abl. inope, or inopi, Plur. Gen. inopum, needy. But, Hoc plus, plus, Abl. pluri Plur. Gen. plurium, moze.

Some also do sometimes admit a Syncope: as, Hic hæc & hoc sapiens, sapientis, Plur. Gen. sapientum, for sapientium, wise: Hic vel hæc serpens, serpentis, Plur. Gen. serpentum, for serpentium, a serpent.

When the Nominative cases Singular do end with two Consonants, the Genitives Plural do end in ium: as, Hæc pars, partis, Plur.

The Genitive Plural.

Plur. Gen. parijum, **part**: Hæc urbs, urbis, Plur. Gen. urbium, a **City**: Hæc falx, falcis, Plur. Gen. falcium, an **hook**. or **sickle**: Hæc glans, glandis, Plur. Gen. glandium, an **acorn**, **plummet** or **pellet**: Hæc trabis, trabis, Plur. Gen. trabum, a **beam**, or **great piece of timber**: Hæc merx, merces, Plur. Gen. mercium, **merchandise**. Except these, hæc Hyems, hyemis, Plur. Gen. hyemum, **Winter**: hic & hæc Princeps, principis, Plur. Gen. principum, a **Prince**: Hic hæc & hoc particeps, participis, Plur. Gen. participum, a **partaker**: hic & hæc Municeps, municipis, Plur. Gen. municipum, a **Cityen. freeman, free Denizen**, or **Burgess**: hic vel hæc forceps, forcipis, Plur. Gen. forcipum, a **pair of Tongs** or **Pincers**: Hic hæc & hoc inops, inopis, Plur. Gen. inopum, **poor**: Hic & hæc colubs, colubis, Plur. Gen. colubum, a **single person, unmarried**: Hic & hæc cliens, clientis, Plur. Gen. clientum, a **retainer, or client**.

When as there are in the Nominative and Genitive cases Singular, like syllables, the Genitive Plurall endeth in ium: as, Hic collis, collis, Plur. Gen. collium, an **hillock**: Hic mensis, mensis, Plur. Gen. mensium, a **Month**: Hæc auris, auris, Plur. Gen. aurium, an **ear**. Add unto these, Hæc lit, litis, Plur. Gen. litium, **strife**: Hic & hæc dis, ditis, Plur. Gen. ditium, **rich**: Hæc vis, vis, vim, vi, Plur. Nomin. vires, Gen. virium, **Strength**: Hæc vitis, vitis, Plur. Gen. vitium, a **Vine**: Hic Sal, salis, Plur. Gen. salium, **Salt**: Hi manes, manium, **debils**: Hi penates, penatium, **household gods**. Except yet, Hic & hæc canis, canis, Plur. Gen. canum, a **dog**: Hic panis, panis, Plur. Gen. panum: **bread**, or a **loaf**: hic & hæc Vates, vatis, Plur. Gen. vatum, a **Prophet**, hic & hæc juvenis, juvenis, Plur. Gen. juvenum, a **yong man**: Hic opus, hanc opem, ope, Plur. Gen. opum, **ayds, riches**: hæc Apes, vel apis, apis, epicen. Plur. Gen. apum, a **Bee**.

Hic as, asis, hath in the Genitive Plurall, asium, a **pound of twelve ounces**, in **weight**: in **money**, the least piece of **coyn**: in the **division of solid things**, as **land**, it is taken for the **whole**: Hic mas, maris, Plur. Gen. marium, a **man**: Hic vas, vasis, Plur. Gen. vadium, a **surety** in a **matter of death**: Hæc nox, noctis, Plur. Gen. noctium, **night**, **sleep**, **darknesse**: Hæc nix, nivis, Plur. Gen. nivium, **snow**: Hæc os, ossis, Plur. Gen. ossium, a **bone**: Hæc faux, faucis, Plur. Gen. faucium, the **cheek, jaw**, or **gullet**: hic Mus, muris, Plur. Gen. murium, a **Mouse**: Hæc caro, carnis, Plur. Gen. carniū, **flesh**: Hæc cor, cordis, Plur. Gen. cordium, an **heart**: Hic hæc & hoc ales, alitis, **swift with wings**, or Hic & hæc ales, alitis, Plur. Gen. alitum, (for it taketh unto it, u) any **great or winged fowl**: hic & hæc Bos, bovis, Plur. Gen. bovum, **Dar.** & Abl. **bovis**, or **bubus**, (for, in all these cases, it is irregular) an **Oxe, Cow**, or **Steer**.

Nouns ending in ium, in the Genitive cases Plurall, do form the Accusative in es, and in the Diphthong eis: as, Hæc pars, partis, Plur. Genie. partium, Accusativo partes, or parteis, **part**: Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc omne, omnis, Plur. Gen. omnium, Accusativo omnes, or omneis, **all**.

Greek Nouns for the most part, being varied after that language, have the Genitive case in os: as, hic Titan, Titanos, **son to Cælus and Vesta**, and is of Poets used for the **Sun**: hic Pan, Panos, the **god of Shepherds**: hic Daphnis, Daphnidos, **Mercury's son**; also a **Castle** in **Lycia**, and the **Suburbs of Antiochia**: hæc Phylis, Phylidos, **daughter to King Lycurgus**; also, in the **Palacu**.

The Accusative Plurall,

The declining of Greek Nouns:

line Gender, a River in Bithynia: and the Dative in *i*. Host: in
 Titani, Peat, Daphnidi, Phylidi. But the Accusative in *a*, unde
 they be of the Neuter Gender, not ending in *a*: as, hic Pan, Pa-
 nos, Accus. Panos: hec, or signifying a River, hic Phyllis, Phyl-
 los, Accus. Phyllis: hec Amaryllis, Amaryllidos, Accus. Amaryllis,
 a country whence name mentioned often by Theocritus and Vir-
 gil: hic Orpheus, Orpheos, Accus. Orpheus, an ancient Poet, son to
 Apollo and Calliope.

Notwithstanding, *i* and *ys* being declined in the Genitive
 case with pure *cs*, do make the Accusative, by changing the *i* of
 the Nominative, into *n*: as, hec Tethys, Gen. Tethyos, Accus. Te-
 thyos, goddess of the sea, wife to Neptune, sister to Saturn, and mo-
 ther to all the sea Nymphs: hec Decapolis, Gen. Decapoliis, Accus.
 Decapoliis, a country of Syria next Judea, so called of ten Cities
 therein contained: hec Genesis, Gen. Genesisos, Accus. Genesis,
 generation, namely, the Planet under which one is born: hec Meta-
 morphosis, Gen. Metamorphosisos, Accus. Metamorphosis, a transfor-
 mation, or change of one shape into another.

There are, which have a double Genitive case, one in *cs*, ne-
 pure, another in pure *cs*. And these, according to the manner of
 their Genitives, do form also a double Accusative case; the one in
n, and the other in *a*: as, hic Paris, Gen. Paridos, & Parios, Accus. Paridos
 & Parin, son to Priamus and Hecuba: hec Themis, Gen. Themidos, &
 Themios, Accus. Themida, & Themin goddess of Justice, Jupiter's
 sister, on whom he begat Minerva.

Nouns of the Feminine Gender, in *o* do make the Genitive
 in *us*, and the Accusative in *o*: as, hec Sappho, Gen. Sapphus, Accus.
 Sappho a famous Poetress of Lesbos: hec Mambo, Gen. Mambo, Accus.
 Mambo, daughter to Terebas the Theban slayer: hec Clido, Gen.
 Clidi, Accus. Clido one of the nine Muses.

The Vocative case is for the most part like the Nominative;
 yet notwithstanding, in some Nouns the *i* is cast away from the
 Nominative: as, hic Pallas, Gen. Palamini, Vocat. o Palla, son to
 Evander and Pandon: hic Theseus, Gen. Theseus, Voc. o Theseu, son
 to King Aegeus, and Aethra: hec Tethys, Gen. Tethyos, Voc. o Tethy,
 goddess of the sea: hec Phyllis, Gen. Phyllidos, Voc. o Phylli, daugh-
 ter to King Lycurgus: hic Alexs, Gen. Alexios, Voc. o Alexi, Polus
 servant, whom Virg. loved; also, a comical Poet: hic Achilles,
 Gen. Achilleos, Voc. o Achilli, son to Peleus and Thetis.

Nouns of the Neuter Gender, and Singular Number, in *a*,
 are Greek Nouns: as hec Problema problematis, a demand: hec
 Poema poematis, a Poem, or Poets work: which the Ancients do
 also decline after the Latine form, adding therunto the syllable
um: as, hec Problematum, problemati: hec Poematum, poemati:
 whose Datives and Ablatives Plurall, are yet in more use: as
 Problematis, Poematis.

The fourth Declension.

The fourth is, when the Genitive case Singl^r endeth in
us, the Dative in *in*, the Accusative in *um*, the Vocative like
 the Nominative, the Ablative in *u*: The Nominative Plurall

The Vocative.

Greek Nouns of
 the Neuter Gen-
 der, in *a*.

The fourth De-
 clension.

In the Genitive in *um*, the Dative in *ibus*, the Accusative in *us*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *ibus*.

As in Example:

Singular	{	N. <i>hæc manus</i> , an hand.	{	N. <i>hæc manus</i> .	{	Hic gradus, <i>as</i> , a step. Hæc portus, <i>us</i> , a porch or walking-place. Hæc curvus, <i>us</i> , a horn. Hæc genu, <i>a knee</i> . Hic concubitus, <i>us</i> , copulation. Hic vestitus, <i>us</i> , apparel.
		G. <i>hujus manus</i> .		G. <i>hujus manus</i> .		
		D. <i>hæc manui</i> .		D. <i>hæc manibus</i> .		
		A. <i>hæc manu</i> .		A. <i>hæc manibus</i> .		
		Voc. <i>ô manus</i> .		Voc. <i>ô manus</i> .		
		Abl. <i>ab hæc manu</i> .		Abl. <i>ab his manibus</i> .		

In the fourth Declension, there is almost no difficulty. For, in the Nominative case Singular, it hath only two terminations, that is, *us* & *u*: *as*, *manus*, *genu*. The Ancients, from the Nominatives, *Hæc avis*, an old woman, or wife: *Hic tumultus*, a tumult or stir: *Hic ornatus*, apparel, trimming: have used, in the Genitive case, *avis*, *tumultus*, *ornatus*. Terent. *Hijus avis causa*, for his old wife's sake. Idem. *Nihil ornati*, no decking. *Nihil tumultu*, no stir.

The Dative case hath *ui*, and sometimes also *u*: *as*, *Hic fructus*, Dative *fructui*, fruit: *Hic concubitus*, Dative *concubitu*, copulation: *sedum fructu*, *concubitu*. Virgil: *Quod neque concubitu indulget*: that, they do neither give themselves to copulation. Terent. *Vellitu nimio indulget*: thou givest thy self too much to apparel, or trimming. But *curium*, for *currium*, in the Genitive case Plurall, of *hic curvus*, *curtus*, a cart, wagon, ship, or triumph; is a Synacresis, as is usual in other Declensions also. *Iesus* hath in the Accusative case, *hunc Iesum*; but in all the other cases, *Iesu*, *Iesus*.

These do form the Dative and Ablative cases Plurall in *ibus*: *as*, *Hæc acus*, *acus*, Plu. Abl. *acubus*, a needle: *Hic lacus*, *lacus*, Plu. Abl. *lacubus*, a lake, or pool: *Hic arcus*, *arcus*, *arcubus*, in the Ablative Plurall, the joynts: *Hic arcus*, *arcus*, Plu. Abl. *arcubus*, a long Bow, an arch: *Hæc tribus*, *tribus*, Plu. Abl. *tribubus*, a tribe or kindred: *Hæc ficus*, *ficus*, Plu. Abl. *ficubus*, a fig: *Hic vel hæc specus*, *specus*, Plu. Abl. *specubus*, a Den to wait a prey: *Hæc quercus*, *quercus*, Plu. Abl. *quercubus*, an Oak: *Hic partus*, *partus*, Plu. Abl. *partubus*, a birth of a child, a child, or brood: *Hic portus*, *portus*, Plu. Abl. *portubus*, a Port or Haven: *Hoc verum*, undeclined in the Singular Gender; in the Plurall, *Hæc vera*, *verum*, Abl. *veribus*, a Spirit or dart. All other Nouns end in *us*: *as*, *Hic fructus*, *fructus*, Plu. Abl. *fructibus*, fruit: *Hic fœtus*, *fœtus*, Plu. Abl. *fœtibus*, children, or young ones of any thing: *Hæc manus*, *manus*, Plu. Abl. *manibus*, an hand: *Hic motus*, *motus*, Plu. Abl. *motibus*, a moving, gesture, a stir, a motion, or cause: and so in the Dative.

A Type of the fourth Declension.

SINGULARITER.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
<i>Hic fructus,</i> <i>fructus,</i> <i>fruit.</i>	us	us	ui	um	us	u
<i>Hac cornu,</i> in- declinabile, an horn.	u	u	u	u	u	u

PLURALITER.

<i>Hac cornua,</i> <i>horns.</i>	us	um	ibus	u	us	ibus
	a	um	or ibus	a	a	or ibus.

The fifth Declension.

The 5th De-
clension.

The fifth is, when the Genitive and Dative case Singular endeth in *ei*, the Accusative in *em*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *e*: The Nominative case Plural in *es*, the Genitive in *eum*, the Dative in *eus*, the Accusative in *es*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *eus*.

As in Example:

Singulariter	N. <i>hic meridies,</i>	Pluraliter	N. <i>hi meridies,</i>	{	<i>Hac res, rei, a thing. Hac facies,</i> <i>faciei, a face. Hac acies, aciei, an</i> <i>edge, the array of an army, the</i> <i>sight of the eye. Hac fides, fidei,</i> <i>fuirh. His vel hac dies, ei, plural.</i> <i>hi dies, dierum.</i>
	G. <i>hujus meridiei</i>		G. <i>horum meridianum.</i>		
	D. <i>huc meridiei,</i>		D. <i>his meridianis,</i>		
	A. <i>hunc meridiem.</i>		A. <i>hos meridies.</i>		
	Voc. <i>o meridies.</i>		Voc. <i>o meridies.</i>		
	A. <i>ab hoc meri-die,</i>		A. <i>ab his meridianis,</i>		

Note, that all Nouns of the fifth Declension, are of the Feminine Gender, except *meridies*, and *dies*, a day.

The fifth Declension hath seldom the Genitive. Dative and Ablative cases Plural; as afterwards it shall be shew'd more at large in the Heteroclites.

The Genitive case Singular of this Declension, did in times past end also in *es*, *ii*, and *e*: Cicero: *Equites vero daturus illius dies pœnas*: But the hostlers, to give the punishments of that day. *Virgil*: *Munera lætitiæque dii*: The gifts and joy of the day. *Lucret*:

The Genitive
singular.

A NOUN.

37

last: Vix decima parte die reliqua: Scarce the tenth part of the day being left.

In times past also, certain Nouns of the third Declension, were declined after this Declension: as, Hæc plebes, plebei, the common people.

But besides these things now spoken, thou shalt note also diligently, those Nouns which the Grammarians do call Heteroclitics. These thou must learn, partly by the others reading of approved Authors, and partly by the Rules following.

An Example of the fifth Declension.

SINGULARITER.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.	
ei	ei	ei	em	ei	e	Hæc facies, facies, a face.

PLURALITER.

ei	eius	eius	ei	ei	eius.	
----	------	------	----	----	-------	--

The DECLINING of Adjectives.

A Noun Adjective of three terminations, is thus declined: The declining of Adjectives.

Singulariter	N. bonus, bona, bonus.	Pluraliter	N. boni, bona, bona.	Niger, nigra, nigrum, black.
	G. boni, bone, boni, good.		G. bonorum, bonarum, bonorum.	
	D. bono, bone, bona.		D. bonis.	
	A. bonum, bonam, bonum.		A. bonos, bonas, bona.	
	V. bone, bona, bonum.		V. boni, bona, bona.	
	A. bono, bona, bona.		A. bonis.	
				Tardus, tarda, tardum, slow.
				Satur, satura, saturum, full fed.
				Doctus, docta, doctum, taught.
				Inermis, a, um, unarmed.
				Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.

There are besides these, certain Noun Adjectives, of another manner of declining; which make the Genitive case Singular in us, and the Dative in i: which be these that follow, with their compounds.

Singulariter	Nominativo unus, una, unum.	Pluraliter	Nominativo uni, una, una.
	Genitivo unius, ONE.		Genitivo unorum, unarum, unorum.
	Dativo uni.		Dativo unis.
	Accusativo unum, unam, unum.		Accusativo unum, unam, unum.
	Vocativo uno, una, unum.		Vocativo uni, una, una.
	Ablativo uno, una, uno.		Ablativo unis.

Note, that Unus, una, unum, hath not the Plurall Number, but when it is joyned with a word that lacketh the Singular

hic	haec	hic	haec	hic	haec	hic haec & haec fides, fides
haec	haec	haec	haec	haec	haec	haec haec & haec praeceps, praeceps, wife.
PLURALITER.						
haec	haec	haec	haec	haec	haec	
SINGULARITER.						
haec	haec	haec	haec	haec	haec	haec & haec doctus, & haec doctus, doctus, magister.
PLURALITER.						
haec	haec	haec	haec	haec	haec	

OF Nouns HETEROCLITES:
ROB. ROBINSON.

HETEROCLITES are such Nouns, as do after a new order, vary their Gender or Declension, or are defective or abounding.

What Heteroclitics are.

Nouns varying the Gender.

These Nouns do vary, partly the Gender, and partly the Declining; being the Feminine Gender in the Singular Number, and the Neuter in the Plural: as, Singulariter Nominativo haec Pergamus, Pergamini; Pluraliter Nominativo haec Pergama, Pergamorum, a City of the Trojans, otherwise called, Ilium, or Ilium. So, Haec supellex, supellectilis, and in the Plural Number, haec supellectilia, supellectilium, household-stuff: unless it want the Plural Number.

These are in the Singular Number, the Neuter Gender, and in the Plural, the Masculine and Neuter both: as, Hoc castrum, castrum, Plu. hi castra, & haec castra, castrorum, a Rake: Hoc fructum, fructum, Plu. hi fructus, & haec fructus, fructorum, a Wife: Hoc filium, filium, Plu. hi filii, & haec filii, filiorum, a third: Hoc capistrum, capistrum, Plu. hi capistri, & haec capistra, capistrorum, an halter: Hoc Argos, Argos, Plu. hi Argi, Argorum, a famous City of Peloponnesus, the half Isle of Greece, also a Town of Apulia, another of Thessaly, and another of Acarnania; also the name of Ulysses' dog: Hoc caelum, caelum, Plu. hi caeli, caelorum, Heaven: which two last, are only the Masculine Gender in the Plural Number. These following, are the Neuter Gender in the Singular Number, and the Feminine

Feminine in the Singular Number, and Neuters in the Plural, are Pergamus, & supellex: Except supellex want the Plural.

Neutrals, in the Singular Number, and Masculine and Neuter both, in the Plural, are these: Castrum, fructum, filium, capistrum, Argos, & caelum, which two last are Masculine only in the Plural Number.

Also *Nundinum*, *epulum* & *balneum*, which three are Feminine in the Plurall Number: having their *Superlativ* hath in the Plurall Number, *balnea*, in the Neuter Gender. Masculines in the Singular Number, and Neutrals in the Plurall, are these: *Menalus*, *Dyodimus*, *Ismarus*, *Tartarus*, *Taygetus*, *Tenerus*, *Mafficus*, & *Gargarius*. Bot. *Sibyllus*, *jocus*, *locus*, *Campanus*, & *Avernus*, are both Masculine and Neuter in the Plurall Number.

Nouns *Apototes* are such, as alter not from the Nominative case: as, *Festus*, *nil*, *inflexus*: and many ending in *u*, and in *is* as, *cornu*, *genu*, *gummi*, *frugi*: so also, *Tempe*, *cor*, *quis*: and all Nouns of Number, from three to an hundred. Nouns *Monoptotes* are they, which are found in some one oblique case onely: as, *Noctu*, *natu*, *injustu*, *injustu*, *altu*; and in the Accus. Plu. *altu*, *promissu*, *promissu*, & *inlicitu*.

in the Plurall: as, hoc *Nundinum*, *nundini*, Plu. *hæ nundina*, *nundinorum*, a Fair or Market: hoc *Epulum*, *epuli*, Plu. *hæ epulae*, *epularum*, a Feast: hoc *Balneum*, *balnei*, Plu. *hæ balnea*, *balnearum*, and with the Poet *Juvenal*, *hæc Balnea*, *balnearum*, a Bath.

These Nouns following are the *Male*. Gen. in the Singular Number, and the Neuter in the Plurall: as, hic *Menalus*, *Menali*, Plu. *hæc Menalus*, *Menalorum*, a mountain in Arcadia: hic *Dyodimus*, *Dyodimi*, Plu. *hæc Dyodimus*, *Dyodimorum*, a top of Ida: hic *Ismarus*, *Ismari*, Plu. *hæc Ismara*, *Ismarorum*, a mountain in Thracia: hic *Tartarus*, *tartari*, Plu. *hæc tartara*, *tartarorum*, a deep place in Hell: hic *Taygetus*, *Taygeti*, Plu. *hæc Taygeta*, *Taygetorum*, an high steep hill in Lacademonia, where Sparta and Amicle, the Cities, do stand: hic *Tenerus*, *Teneri*, Plu. *hæc Tенера*, *Tenerorum*, a Promontory of Laconia, where was supposed to be an entry into Hell: hic *Mafficus*, *Maffici*, Plu. *hæc Maffica*, *Mafficorum*, an hill in the part of Italy, called Campania: hic *Gargarius*, *Gargari*, Plu. *hæc Gargara*, *Gargarorum*, a very high top of the hill Ida, also a town at the foot of the same hill; also a Lake, out of the which so many rivers do issue. But these are both Masculine and Neuter in the Plurall Number: as, hic *Sibyllus*, *sibylli*, Plu. *hi sibylli*, & *hæc sibylla*, *sibyllorum*, an hill: hic *jocus*, *joci*, Plu. *hi joci*, & *hæc joca*, *jocorum*, a merry scott, or sport: hic *locus*, *loci*, Plu. *hi loci*, & *hæc loca*, *locorum*, a place: *Campanus*, *Campana*, *Campanum*, *Campani*, & *mi*, Plu. *Campani*, *Campanæ*, *Campana*, *Campanorum*, *arum*, of Campania in Italy: hic *Avernus*, *Averni*, Plu. *hi Avernus*, & *hæc Avernus*, *Avernorum*, a Lake in Campania, where hence they thought was a descent into Hell.

Nouns Defectives.

These following, are either maimed in Number, or in Case.

Nouns APTOTES.

Nouns *Apototes* are such as vary no Case: as, *Hoc fas*, right lawfull, godly: *Hoc nil*, & *hoc nihil* nothing: *Hoc inflexus* like. Many such Nouns also there be, ending in *u*, and in *i*: as, *Hoc cornu*, an horn: *Hoc genu*, a knee: *Hoc Gummi*, Gum: *Hic hæc & hoc frugi*, thistly, profligate: likewise, *hæc Tempe* a fair field in Thessalia, a place of delight; there is also *Tempe* in Bœotia, and another in Sicily: *Hi hæc*, & *hæc cor*, so many: *Hi hæc & hæc quot*, how many: and lastly, all Nouns of Number, from three to an hundred.

Nouns MONOPTOTES.

A Noun *Monoptote*, is a Noun of some one Case onely, it not being the Nominative: as, *Noctu*, by night: *natu*, by birth: *Injustu* by commandment: *Injustu*, without bidding: *Altu* by secret: *Promptu*, with speed: by readiness: *Permissu*, by sufferance: all which are Ablatives: but *altu*, hath in the Accusative case Plurall, *altu*; and also in the same Case and Number, we read *Inlicitis*, a Deniall.

Nouns DIPTOTES.

A Noun Diptote, is a Noun of two Cases onely: as, Nominativo hac fors, Ablativo ab hac forte, *hap*; Genitivo spontis, Ablativo hac sponte, of his own accord: Nom. hac plus. Gen. pluris, *more*; Plu. harum, repetundarum, ab his repetundis, of bribery: Gen. jugeris, ab hoc jugere, of an acre of ground: Hujus verberis, ab hoc verberere, of a rod or stripe: Plu. Nom. hz suppetias, Accus. suppetias, *aid*s; Nom. hoc tantundem, hujus tantidem, as much: Gen. impetis, ab hac impete, of violence: Accus. hanc vicem, Abl. vice, by turn: *inter*get do I read more. *Bitt*, verberis, vicem, plus, & jugeris, have all the Cases in the Plurall Number.

pate, vicem, vice, and no more: but, *verberis*, *vicem*, *plus*, & *jugeris*, are whole in the Plurall Number.

Nouns TRIPTOTES.

A Noun Triptote, is a Noun of three Cases onely: as, Genitivo precis, hanc precem, ab hac proce, of prayer: Gen. opis, hanc opem, ab hac ope, of aid: but, Gen. frugis, of fruit, corn or pulse; and, Gen. ditionis, of right or title, do want onely the Nominative case: Hec vis, vis, wanteth no Case, except it be the Dative. But all these have all the Cases in the Plurall Number.

ly the Nominative: and *vis*, onely the Dative: and are all perfect in the Plurall Number.

Relatives; as, Qui, quz, quod, vel quid, ejus, which. Interrogatives; as, Equis, equa, equod, eccujus, who, whether any. Distributives; as, Nullus, nulla, nullum, nullius, none. *Neuter*; Nom. neutrum, neutrius, neither of two: Hic & hac omnis, & hoc omne, omnis, all, every one. Nouns Infinites; as, Quilibet, quolibet, quicujuslibet, every one, or whosoever you will: Alter, altera, alterum, alterius, another, the other of the two; do commonly want the Vocative case: and likewise, all the Pronouns, except Noster, nostra, nostrum, nostri, *z*, i, ours: Hic & hac nostras, & hoc nostras, nostras, of our country, *scit*, of faction: Meus, mea, meum, mei, *z*, i, mine: And, Tu tui, tibi, thou.

All proper Names do want the Plurall Number: as, hic Mars, Martis, the heathenish god of battell: hic Caro, Caronis, the name of a wise man in Rome: hac Gallia, Gallia, France: hac Roma, Romz, Rome: hac Ida, Idz, an hill by Tr y, the daughter of Da danus King of scythia; and another high hill in Crete, insurround with many Cities: hic Tagus, Taji, a river in Portugal, or Spain, parting Castile from Portugal: hic Lelaps, Lz'apis, the name of one of Acheas Dogs: hic Parnassus, Parnassi, an hill in Phocia: hic Bucephalus, Bucephali, an horse of Alexander the great: and also, the names of Bread corn: of Towe, or Woolle, or Yarn: of Herbs: of most things: and of Mettals: wherein the opinion of Authors is to be observed. For, sometimes they use them in the Plurall Number, and sometimes not.

Towe, or Woolle; thirdly, of Herbs: fourthly, of most things: and fifthly, of Mettals.

A Diptote is a Noun of two Cases onely: as, *Fors*, *fort*, (spontis, sponte plus, pluris, repetundarum, repetundis, verberis, verberere, suppetia, suppetias, tantundem, tantidem, impetis, im-

A Triptote is a Noun of three Cases onely: as, *Precis*, *precem*, *price*: *opis*, *opem*, *ope*: but *frugis* & *ditionis*, want one-

Relatives: as, *Qui*, *Interrogatives*: as, *Equis*, *Distributives*: as, *Omnis*, *Nullus*, *neuter*. *Infinites*: as, *Quilibet*, *alter*; do oftentimes want the Vocative case: and also, all the Pronouns, except *Noster*, *nostras*, *manus*, & *tui*.

All proper Names do want the Plurall Number: as, *Mars*, *Caro*, *Gallia*, *Roma*, *Ida*, *Tagus*, *Lelaps*, *Parnassus*, & *Bucephalus*.

And secondly the Names sometimes, first of bread corn: secondly, of Yarn,

These Neuters are found onely in the Nom. Accus. and Voc. Cases, in the Plu. Num. *Hordeum, far, forum, mel, mulsium, defrutum, & thus.*

These Masculines have scarcely the Plu. Num. as, *Hesperus, vesper, pontus, limus, finis, penus, sanguis, ether, & nemo.*

These Feminines have scarcely the Plu. Num. as, *Pubes, salus talis, indoles, tristis, pice, humus, lues, sitis, fuge, quies, cholera, fames, bilis, senectus, juvenis*: but, *soboles, & labes*, with all Nouns of the fifth Declension have the three like Cases Plural: except, *res, species, facies, dies, & dies*; which are whole in the Plu. Num. Add hereunto, many other Feminines, often wanting the Plu. Num. as, *Stultitia, iracundia, sapientia, desiderium*, and the like.

These Neuters do want the Pl. Num. as, *Delicium, senium, lethum, carum, salum, barathrum, virus, vitrum, viscum, æonium, justium, nihilum, ver, lac, glutin, hunc, gelu, salinum, jubar*; and many the like. These Masculines do want the Sing. Num. as, *Manes, æther, cancelli,*

Nouns of the Neuter Gender, and Singular Number, wanting certain Cases Plural.

HOc *hordeum, hordei*, Barly: *Hoc far, faris*, bread corn: *hoc Forum, fori*, a Market: *hoc Mel, mellis*, Honey: *hoc Mulsium, mulsis*, Wine mingled with Honey: *hoc Defrutum, defruti*, Wine boyled to the half: *hoc Thus, thuris*, Frankincense. of the tree: have onely the three like Cases in the Plural Number: as, *Hæc hordea, farra, fora, mella, mulla, defruta, and thura.*

These Nouns of the Masculine Gender, do scarcely admit the Plural Number: as, *hic Hesperus, hesperi*, the evening Star: *hic Vesper, vespere*, the evening, or evening Star: *hic pontus, ponti*, the sea: *hic limus, limi*, mud, or slime: *hic finis, fini*, dung: *hic penus, peni*, all manner of victuals, meat and drink: *hic sanguis, sanguinis*, blood: *hic Ether, ætheris*, the Element of Fire, and whatsoever is above it, the sky or firmament, the light: and, *Hic & hæc nemo, nemini*, no body.

These Nouns of the Feminine Gender, do scarcely admit the Plural Number: as, *Hæc pubes, pubis*, ripefull of age: *Hæc salus, salutis*, health: *Hæc ratio, rationis*, like for like: *Hæc indoles, indolis*, towardness: *Hæc tossis, tussis* the cough: *Hæc pice, picis*, pitch: *Hæc humus, humi*, the ground: *Hæc lues, luis*, a common disease, or murrain: *Hæc sitis, sitis*, thirst: *Hæc fuga, fuge*, a fleeing away: *Hæc quies, quietis*, rest of body: *Hæc cholera, cholerae, cholæ*, or the choleric passion: *Hæc fames, famis*, hunger: *Hæc bilis, bilis*, gall, anger, melancholy: *Hæc senectus, senectæ*, old age: *Hæc juvenis, juvenitis*, youth. But these, *Hæc soboles, sobolis*, an off-spring: *Hæc labes, labis*, a spot, a great chap, a reproach. As also, all Nouns of the fifth Declension, have in the Plural Number the three like Cases: except, *res, rei*, a thing: *Hæc species, speciei*, a form, or kinde: *Hæc facies, faciei*, a face: *Hæc acies, aciei*, an edge, the array of an army, the sight of the eye: and, *Hic vel hæc dies, diei*, & *hi dies, dierum*, a day: which have all the Cases in the Plural Number. Add hereunto many other Feminines, wanting commonly the Plural Number: as, *Hæc stultitia, stultitiæ, foolishness*: *Hæc invidia, invidiæ*, envie: *Hæc sapientia, sapienciæ*, wisdom: *Hæc desidia, desidiæ*, sloathfulness: and such like.

These Nouns of the Neuter Gender do want the Plural Number: as, *Hoc delictum, delicti*, ones delict: *Hoc senium, senii*, old age: *Hoc lethum, lethi*, death: *Hoc æonium, æoni*, dirt: *Hoc salum, sali*, the sea: *hoc Barathrum, barathri*, a place taken for Hell, Hell: *Hoc virus, viri*, or *hoc virus*, undeclined; a poison or stink: *Hoc vitrum, vitri*, glasse: *Hoc viscum, visci*, Bird-lime: *Hoc penum, peni*, provision of victuals, all manner of victuals: *hoc Iustum, iustitii*, Vacation time, no Term: *Hoc nihilum, nihili*, nothing: *hoc Ver, veris*, the Spring time: *hoc Lac, lacis*, Milk: *hoc Glutin, glutinis*, Glue: *hoc & hoc Hæc, hæcis*, a Derrring: *hoc Gelu, undeclined*, Frost or Ice: *Hæc solum, solis*, a throne, or seat of estate: *Hoc jubar, jubaris*, the Sun-beam: and many such like.

These Nouns of the Masculine Gender, have onely the Plural Number: as, *Hi manes, manum*, Spirits: *Hi majores, majorum*, Ancestors: *hi Cancelli, cancellorum*, a Lattice, or the Lits of a game

game place, or of a spectacle: Hi liberi, liberorum, children: Hi antea, antium, pillars, or Buttresses, the uttermost ranges of vines, or the walls that compass them: hi Menses, mensium, womens monthly flowers: hi Lemures, lemurum Hobgoblins, or night Spirits: hi Fasti, fastorum, a Register of things for the whole year: hi Minores, minorum, our Successours, posterity: hi Natales, natalium, a stock, or family wherof one cometh, an originall parentage: hi Penates, penatium, the heathenish household gods, the secret parts of ones house: and many Names also of places, are onely of the Plurall Number: as, hi Gabii, Gabiorum, a City of the Tolsians in Italy, fourscore miles from Rome: hi Locri, Locorum, people of Locris a City in Italy; and such like.

These Nouns of the Feminine Gender, have onely the Plurall Number: as, Ha exuvia, exuviarum, the thing that is put off: Ha phalerae, phalarum, horse trappings: Ha gratiae, gratiarum, (having no more Cases) thanks: Ha manubiae, manubiarum, spoiles taken in war: ha Idus, iduum, the Ides of the Months, or dayes dividing the Months: in March, May, June, and October, it is the sixteenth day, in the rest the thirteenth: Ha antea, antiarum, a womans forelocks: ha Induciae, induciarum, a Truce: ha infidiae, infidiarum, a laying in wait for, or deceit: He minae, minarum, threatenings: Ha excubiae, excubiarum, watch and ward: ha Nonae, nonarum, the Nones of a Month; because that from that day, nine are counted to the Ides; they are the first dayes after the Calends, that is, after the first day of the Month: in March, May, June, and October, there be six, and in the rest but four. Ha nuga, nugarum, trifles: Ha tricae, tricarum, trifling gewgaws, a trifling let: ha Calendae, calendarum, the Calends, that is, the first day of every Month: Ha quiquilae, quiquiliarum, the sweeping and refuse of things, things of no waight, chippings: ha thermae, thermarum, hot bathes: ha cunae, cunarum, a cradle for a child: Ha dirae, dirarum, curfings, hellish furies: ha exequiae, exequiarum, Solemnities, or Ceremonies of, or at burials: ha Inferiae, inferiarum, heathenish Sacrifices done to Spirits in hell: ha seriae, seriarum, Holy-dayes, or times of pastimes: Ha primitiae, primitiarum, the first-fruits of ones grounds, or the firstlings of any other thing: Ha plagae, plagarum, great nets to take Beasts: Ha valvae, valvarum, folding, or two-leaved doors: Ha divitiae, divitiarum, riches: Ha nuptiae, nuptiarum, marriages: ha Laetae, laetiarum, the small Cures. Adde heremita, ha Thebae, Thebarum, the City Thebe, in Egypt, and another so called in Boetia: ha Aethenae, Aethenarum, the City Athens in Greece; with many such Names of places.

These Nouns of the Neuter Gender, have seldom the Singular Number: as, haec Moenia, moeniorum, the walls of a Town: Haec telus, telquorum, rough places, untilled, or hard to climb upon: Haec Praecordia, praecordiorum, the Bidriff: Haec lustra, lustrorum, Dens of wilde beasts, or Brothel-houses, petty typling houses of Bawdy: Haec arma, armorum, armour, or weapons: haec Mapalia, mapaliorum, sheep coats, or small Cottages: haec Bellaria, bellariorum, Tuncates: Haec munia, muniorum, a duty, or office: haec Castra, castrorum, the Camp, pavilion or army, tents: haec Iusta, iustorum, the Ceremonies of buriall: Haec sponsalia, sponsaliorum, conditionall betrothings: haec Rostra, rostrorum, a Pulpit: Haec crepundia,

liberi, entes, membra, lemures, fasti, minores, natales, penates: and many Names of places; as, Gabii, & Locri.

These Feminines do want the Singular Number: as, Exuviae, phalerae, gratiae, manubiae, idus, antia, induciae, infidiae, minae, excubiae, nonae, nuga, tricae, calendae, quiquilae, thermae, cunae, dirae, exequiae, inferiae, seriae, primitiae, pligae, iusta, draetia, nuptiae, laetae; with Thebae, & Aethenae, and many like Names of places.

These Neuters have seldom the Singular Number: as, Moenia, telus, praecordia, lustra, arma, mapalia, bellaria, tuncates, munia, castra, iusta, sponsalia, rostra,

These are of the second and fourth Declension both; as, *Laurus*, in the Genit. case, hath *lauri*, & *laurus*; so also, *Quercus*, *pinus*, *ficus*, *colus*, *pinus*, *cornus*, *lacus*, *domus*, and divers others: though these have not every Case. Many Adjectives also do abound, especially such as come of these Nouns: *Arma*, *jugum*, *vervix*, *summus*, *clivus*, *animus*, *limus*, *frax*, *cera*, *bacillum*; being formed of them, by us or is: as, *laurus*, *lauris*, *laurus*, which *lauris* is little in use.

Laurus, Gen. *lauri*, & *laurus*, a Laurel. or Bay tree: *hæc Quercus*, *quercus*, an Oak: *hic Pinus*, *pinus*, a Pine tree: *hæc Ficus*, *ficus*, & *ficus*, a Fig tree, or a Fig: *Hæc colus*, *coli*, & *colus*, a fig-staff: *Hic vel hæc penus*, *peni*, & *penus*, all provision of victuals: *hæc Cornus*, *corni*, & *cornus*, a Cornel-tree. Dog-tree, or the wilde Cherry-tree: *hic lacus*, *laci*, & *lacus*, a Lake or pool: *Hæc domus*, *domi*, or *domus*, an house. Though these are not to be found in every Case: and others such like, which we may leave to old Authors.

Many Adjectives also do abound, especially such as do come of these Nouns Substantives: *Hæc arma*, *armorum*, Armour, or any kind of weapons: *hoc Jugum*, *jugi*, a yoke of Oxen that is, a couple, by a metaphor, it is a servitude, a Weavers beam, or a pair of Gallows, such as for ignominy the Romans went under the top of an hill: *hic Nervus*, *nervi*, a Strenght: *Hic somnus*, *somni*, Sleep: *Hic clivus*, *clivi* the steep side of an hill, a little hill, a bank ascending: *Hic animus*, *animi*, a minde: *Hic limus*, *limi*, mud, slime, a kinde of garment from the navel to the feet: *Hoc fraxum*, *fraxi*, *Platani*, *fraxi*, & *hæc fraxia*, *fraxorum*, a Bable: *hæc Cera*, *cera*, Wax: *Hoc bacillum*, *bacilli*, a staff or stick: which Adjectives are formed of them, by us or is: as, *Inermis*, *inermis*, *inermis*, or *hic* & *hæc* *inermis*, & *hoc inermis* *inermis*, unarmed: *Hic* & *hæc* *hilaris*, & *hoc hilaris*, *hilaris*, or *hilaris*, *hilara*, *hilarum*, merry: but the latter is little used.

Certain Heteroclitics more usuall.

Vnus, one: *Uter*, which: *Neuter*, neither of them: *Solus*, alone: *Ullus*, any: *Alter*, another: *Totus*, the whole: *Alius*, another.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
<i>U</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>us</i> ,	<i>ius</i> ,	<i>i</i> ,	<i>um</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>us</i> ,		<i>o</i> <i>a</i> <i>o</i>
PLURALITER.					
<i>i</i> <i>e</i> <i>a</i>	<i>orum</i> <i>orum</i> <i>orum</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>os</i> <i>os</i> <i>a</i>		<i>is</i>
<i>Hæc domus</i> , an house.					
S. <i>us</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>o</i>
P. <i>us</i>	<i>orum</i> <i>orum</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>os</i> <i>is</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>ibus</i>

Duo, two: Ambo, both: being Plurals only.					
o	duos	ambos	os	o	duos
a	duos	ambos	as	a	duos
o	duos	ambos	o	o	duos
Tres, three: being only Plurals.					
es	tres	tres	es	es	tres
is	tres	tres	is	is	tres

The COMPARISONS of Nouns.

Comparisons of
Nouns.

Nouns whose signification may increase, or be diminished, may form comparison.

There be three degrees of Comparison: The Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Positive.

The Positive denoteth a thing absolutely without excess. As, Durus, dura, durum, (hard.) Albus, a, um, white: Niger, a, um, black: Probus, a, um, honest: Improbis, a, um, dishonest.

The Comparative.

The Comparative somewhat exceedeth his Positive in signification: As, Hic & hæc durior, & hoc durius, (duriori, harder.) It increaseth the signification of his Positive, by the Adverb, magis, more: As, Hic & hæc albius, & hoc albius albius, that is, magis albus, more white: Hic & hæc probior, & hoc probius, probioris, that is, magis probus, more honest. And it is formed of the first case of his Positive (regularly) that endeth in i, by putting thereto or and us: As, of Duri, (in the Genitive case,) Hic & hæc durior, & hoc durius (durioris) of (the Dative) tristi, (sad,) Hic & hæc tristior, & hoc tristius (tristioris, sadder:) of (the Dative) Dulci, (sweet,) hic & hæc dulcius, & hoc dulcius, (dulcioris, more sweet:) of the Genitive amicis, (friend,) Hic & hæc amicior, & hoc amicior, amicioris more friendly: of the Genitive, pudici, (shamefast,) Hic & hæc pudicior, & hoc pudicius, pudicioris, more shamefast.

The Superlative.

The Superlative exceedeth his Positive in the highest degree. As, Durissimus, a, um, (hardest.) It signifieth above his Positive with the Adverb valde, very greatly, or, maxime most of all: As, Durissimus, a, um, that is, valde durus, very, or, most hard: Doctissimus, a, um, that is, valde or, maxime doctus, most learned: Justissimus, a, um, that is, valde or, maxime justus, most just. And it is (regularly) formed of the first Case of his Positive, that endeth in i, by putting thereto s and simus: As, of (the Genitive) duri (hard) durissimus a, um, (most hard:) of (the Dative) eristi (sad) tristissimus a, um, (most sad:) of (the Dative) dulci (sweet) dulcissimus a, um, (most sweet.) Of the Genitive, candidi, white, candidissimus, a, um, most white: Of the Dative, Prudenti, wise, prudentissimus, a, um, most wise.

In rimis.

But if the Positive end in r, the Superlative is formed of the Nominative Case, by putting to rimus: As, Pulcher, a, um, fair, pulcherimus, a, um, fairest. Niger, a, um, black, nigerimus, a, um, blackest: Acer, a, um, black, acerrimus, a, um, blackest: Acer, a, um, sharp, acutissimus, a, um, sharpest.

vus, a, um, little, hic & hæc minor, & hoc minus, minoris, less, minus, a, um, least: Multus, a, um, much: Hic hæc & hoc plus, pluris, more: Plurimus, a, um, most. Hic hæc & hoc vetus, veteris, old: hic & hæc vetus, & hoc veteris, veterioris older: Veturimus, a, um, oldest: Hic & hæc deterior, & hoc deterior, deterioris worse, deterrimus, a, um, of this evil word, deter, a, um, naught: Hic hæc & hoc nequam, an evil man, wanton (undisciplined): Hic & hæc nequior, & hoc nequius, nequioris, worse man, nequissimus, a, um, the worst man of all: citra without, hic & hæc citerior, & hoc citarius, citioris, nearer to our time, citius, a, um, next to us: Intra, within, hic & hæc interior, & hoc interioris, interioris, more inward, intimus, a, um, most inward: Infra, beneath, hic & hæc inferior, & hoc inferioris, inferioris lower, infimus, a, um, lowest: Extra, without, hic & hæc exterior, & hoc exterioris, exterioris, more outward, extremus, a, um, outmost: Supra, above, hic & hæc superior, & hoc superius, superioris, supremus, a, um, highest: Post, after: Hic & hæc posterior, & hoc posterioris, posterioris, latter, postremus, a, um, last: Ultra, beyond: Hic & hæc ulterius, & hoc ulterius, ulterioris, furthermore ultimus, a, um, furthest: Propè, nigh: Hic & hæc propior, & hoc propius, propioris, nearer: proximus, a, um, nighest: whereof cometh proximior, with Ovis, nearer: pridem late, hic & hæc prior, prioris, former: Primus, a, um, first: Diu, long time, hic & hæc diutior, & hoc diutius, diutioris, longer, diutissimus, a, um, longest: sæpe, often, sæpius, oftener, sæpissime, most often.

A Descriptive Comparison.

A mained Comparison.

Inclutus, a, um, glorious, inclutissimus, a, um, most glorious: Meritus, a, um, deserber, or deservedly, meritissimus, a, um, most deservedly: Optimus, a, um, fat, grosse, hic & hæc optimior, & hoc optimius, optimioris, more fat: Similis, a, um, on the left hand unlucky, hic & hæc sinisterior, & hoc sinisterioris, sinisterioris, more unlucky: Hic & hæc ocyor, & hoc ocyas, ocyoris, more swift, ocyllinus, a, um, swiftest, of a hawk, swift: novus new, a, um, novissimus, a, um, the last: Hic & hæc juvenis, juvenis, a young man, hic & hæc junior, & hoc junius, junioris, younger: Hic & hæc adolescens, adolescentis, a youth, hic & hæc adolescentior, & hoc adolescentius, adolescentioris, more youthfull: Hic & hæc senex, senis, an old man or woman, hic & hæc senior, & hoc senius, senioris, elder: Hic & hæc potior, & hoc potius, potioris, better, potissimus, a, um, best, ante, before, hic & hæc anterior, & hoc antarius, anterioris, the former: longinquus, a, um, far off, hic & hæc longinquior, & hoc longinquius, longinquioris, further off: Nuper, late, nuperimus, a, um, latest penè, near, neare, penissimus, a, um, nearest.

An abusive Comparison.

And sometimes comparison is made of Substantives, but abusively: as, hic & hæc Nerunior, & hoc Neronius, Neronioris, more Nero-like; of Nero, the emperour: Hic & hæc Cinædior, & hoc Cinædus, Cinædioris of Cinædus, one past all fame: Hic & hæc pœnior, & hoc Pœnius, Pœnioris, more Carthage like: of Pœnius, a man of Carthage of Africa.

A Type of Comparisons.

SINGULARITER.

[illegible]

PLURALITER.

	Deſi,	genti,	dulci,	ſalici,	proden-	tes.		
Nom.	1, 2, 3.	21, 22, 23.		20721, 20722, 20723.			20721, 20722, 20723.	
Gen.	2072100, 2072100, 2072100.	20721, 20722, 20723.		2072100, 2072100, 2072100.			2072100, 2072100, 2072100.	
Dat.	19, 20, 21.	20721, 20722, 20723.		2072100, 2072100, 2072100.			20721, 20722, 20723.	
Accuſat.	21, 22, 23.	20721, 20722, 20723.		2072100, 2072100, 2072100.			20721, 20722, 20723.	
Voç.	1, 2, 3.	21, 22, 23.		20721, 20722, 20723.			20721, 20722, 20723.	
Abſat.	19, 20, 21.	20721, 20722, 20723.		2072100, 2072100, 2072100.			20721, 20722, 20723.	

OF a PRONOUN.

A Pronoun.

A PRONOUN is a part of Speech, much like a Noun, which is used in shewing, or rehearsing (any thing.)

There be fifteen Pronouns: Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras; whereof four have the Vocative case; as, Tu, meus, noster, & nostras, and all other want the Vocative case.

To these may be added their Compounds; Egomet, tuze, idem, (and the like:) and also, Qui, quæ, quod.

Of the things belonging to a Pronoun.

The things befalling to a Pronoun.

There belongeth to a Pronoun these five things: Number, Case, and Gender, as are in a Noun, Declension, and Person, as here followeth. Of these seven things: Species, Number, Case, Gender, Declension, Person, and Figure.

The species of a Pronoun.
Primitives.
Demonstratives.

A Pronoun is of two sorts: Primitive and Derivative.

These eight; Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, and is, be Primitives: so called, because they be not derived of others. And they be also called Demonstratives, because they shew a thing not spoken of before. Of Primitives, some are Demonstratives, and some Relatives. These six, Hic, ille, iste, is, idem, and qui, be Relatives, because they rehearse a thing that was spoken of before. Of these seven: Hic, ille, ipse, iste, is, idem, and qui.

Relatives.

Derivatives.

These seven; Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, be Derivatives. For they be derived of their Primitives; Mei, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri.

Possessives.
Genitives.

Of Derivatives, some are Possessives: as, Meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester. And some Gentiles: as, Nostras, vestras, and this Noun cujus; which are called Gentiles, because they signify country or nation, part or sect.

OF NUMBER.

Number in Pronouns.

There be in Pronouns, two Numbers: The Singular; as, Ego, I. And the Plural; as, Nos, We.

OF CASE.

Cases of Pronouns.

There be therein also six Cases, as in a Noun. But all Pronouns do want the Vocative case, except these four: Tu, thou; Meus, mine; Noster, ours; and Nostras, of our country, sect or faction. Pet Martial seemeth to use this Pronoun, Ipse, he, in the Vocative case: as,

*Motis revocetur amor, serique tonantis,
Atque Iuno p. est Celton, & ipsa Venus.*

Let the love of Mars be recalled, and the voice of terrible thundring; let Celton require of thee, O Iuno, and thou, O Venus.

A PRONOUN.

51

OF GENDER.

There be Genders in Pronouns, then as in Nouns Adjectives. For some are referred to three Genders: as, Ego, Tu, Thou: Sui, of himself. Others are varied by three Genders: as, Meus, mea, meum, mine.

Gender of Pronouns.

OF DECLENSION.

There be four Declensions of Pronouns. And the Genitive case of the first Declension, endeth in i: as, Ego, tu, Genitivo mei, tui, and sui; which last wanteth the Nominative case, in both Numbers. These three, Ego, tu, sui, be of the first Declension, and be thus declined:

Singulariter	Nominativo ego, I.	Pluraliter	Nominativo nos, we.
	Genitivo mei.		Genitivo nostrum vel nostri.
	Dativo mihi.		Dativo nobis.
	Accusativo me.		Accusativo nos.
	Vocativo care, i. It wants.		Vocativo care.
	Ablativo à me.		Ablativo à nobis.
Singulariter	Nominativo tu, thou.	Pluraliter	Nominativo vos, ye:
	Genitivo tuus.		Genitivo vestrum, or vstri.
	Dativo tibi.		Dativo vobis.
	Accusativo te.		Accusativo vos.
	Vocativo ô tu.		Vocativo ô vos.
	Ablativo à te.		Ablativo à vobis.

Singulariter and Pluraliter	{	Nom. caret.	{	Accus. se.
		Gen. sui, of himself, or of		Voc. caret.
		Dat. sibi. (themselves.)		Abl. à se.

The second.

The Genitive case of the second Declension, endeth in ius, or ius: of which form are, Ille, he, Ipse, he, iste, this, that; Genitivo illius, ipsius, istius. Hic, this, is, he, qui, which; Genitivo huius, ejus, cujus.

These six; Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, and qui, be of the second Declension, and be thus declined:

Nominativo hic hac hoc, Genitivo huius, Dativo huic, as aforesaid in the Noun.

Singulariter	Nominativo iste, ista, istud.	Pluraliter	Nominativo isti, ista, ista.
	Genitivo istius.		Genitivo istorum, istarum, istarum.
	Dativo isti.		Dativo istis. (rum.)
	Accusativo istum, istam, istud.		Accusativo isto, ista, ista.
	Vocativo caret.		Vocativo caret.
	Ablativo isto, ista, ista.		Ablativo istis.

Ille, is declined like iste, and also ipse: saving that the Gender Gender in the Nominative case, and in the Accusative case Singular, maketh ipsum.

Singulariter	Nominativo <i>is, ea, id.</i>	Pluraliter	Nominativo <i>ii, ea, ei.</i>
	Genitivo <i>eius.</i>		Genitivo <i>eorum, earum, eorum.</i>
	Dativo <i>ei.</i>		Dativo <i>eis, or eis.</i>
	Accusativo <i>eum, eam, id.</i>		Accusativo <i>eos, eas, ea.</i>
	Vocativo <i>eare.</i>		Vocativo <i>eare.</i>
	Ablativo <i>eo, ea, eo.</i>		Ablativo <i>eis, or eis.</i>

Singulariter	Nominativo <i>qui, quæ, quod.</i>	Pluraliter	Nominativo <i>qui, quæ, quæ.</i>
	Genitivo <i>cujus.</i>		Gen. <i>quorum, quarum, quorum.</i>
	Dativo <i>cui.</i>		Dativo <i>quibus, or quæ.</i>
	Accusativo <i>quem, quæ, quod.</i>		Accusativo <i>quos, quæ, quæ.</i>
	Vocativo <i>eare.</i>		Vocativo <i>eare.</i>
	Ablativo <i>quo, quæ, quod, or qui.</i>		Ablativo <i>quibus, or quæ.</i>

Likewise, *Quis*, (*who*) and *Quid* (*what*) be declined, whether they be Interrogatives, or Indefinites. *Allo*, *Quisque*, (*whosoever*) is thus declined:

Singular. Nom.	<i>Quisquis.</i>	Accus.	<i>Quisquis.</i>	Ablat.	<i>Quisquo.</i>
	<i>Qui: quid.</i>		<i>Quisquis.</i>		<i>Quisquo.</i>

Wherefore, that *Quid* is alwayes a Substantive of the Masculine Gender, (and is thus declined :) Nominativo *quid*, Genit. *cujus*, Dat. *cui*, &c.

the third.

The Genitive case of the third Declension, endeth in *i, ei, id*, unto *Pouns* Adjectives of three terminations.

These five; *Meus* (*mine*) *Suus* (*thine*) *Suus* (*his*) *Noster* (*ours*) and *Vester* (*yours*) are of the third Declension, and be declined as *Pouns* Adjectives of three terminations, in this wise:

Singulariter	Nominativo <i>meus, meus, meus.</i>	Pluraliter	Nominativo <i>mei, mei, mei.</i>
	Genitivo <i>mei, mei, mei.</i>		Gen. <i>meorum, meorum, meorum.</i>
	Dativo <i>meo, meo, meo.</i>		Dativo <i>meis.</i>
	Accusativ. <i>meum, meum, meum.</i>		Accusativo <i>meos, meos, meos.</i>
	Vocativo <i>mi, mei, mi, mi.</i>		Vocativo <i>mei, mei, mei.</i>
	Ablativo <i>meo, meo, meo.</i>		Ablativo <i>meis.</i>

So is *Noster* declined, and also *Tuus*, *Suus*, *Vester*, having the these three last do lack the Vocative case.

the fourth.

The Genitive case of the fourth Declension hath *as*: *as*, *Nostras*, *nostræ*, of our own country, household, or sect: *Vestras*, *vestræ*, of your country, lineage, or faction: and this *Poun*, *Cujas*, of what sect, or country?

Nostras, *Vestras*, and this *Poun* *Cujas*, be of the fourth Declension, and be thus declined:

Singulariter	N. <i>hic & hæc nostræ, & hæc no.</i>	Pluraliter	N. <i>hi & hæ nostræ, & hæ</i>
	G. <i>hujus nostræ.</i> (<i>istræ</i>).		(<i>nostræ</i>).
	D. <i>huc nostræ.</i>		G. <i>horum, horum, horum.</i>
	A. <i>hunc & hæc nostræ, & hæc</i>		D. <i>his nostræ.</i>
	(<i>nostræ</i>).		A. <i>hos & hæc nostræ, & hæc</i>
	V. <i>ô nostræ, & ô nostræ.</i>		(<i>nostræ</i>).

Singulariter	A. <i>ab hoc hæc & hæc nostræ, or</i>	Pluraliter	V. <i>ô nostræ, & ô nostræ.</i>
	(<i>nostræ</i>).		A. <i>ab his nostræ.</i>

There is to be noted, that *Nos*, *Vos*, and this *Non* Cum, be called *Geniles*, because they properly betoken pertaining to country's or nations, to sects or factions.

OF PERSON.

A Pronoun hath three Persons. The first Person speaketh of himself: as, *Ego*, I: *Nos*, we. The second Person is spoken to: as, *Tu*, thou: *Vos*, ye; and of this Person is also every *Locative* case. The third Person is spoken of: as, *ille*, he, *illi*, they. And therefore, all other Pronouns, Nouns, and Participles, be of the third Person.

The Persons of a Pronoun.

OF FIGURE.

Figure is also fold: Simple; as, *Ego*, I. And Compound; as, *Egoque*, I my self.

Pronouns are compounded one with another: as, *Egoque*, I my self: *Tuque*, thou thy self: *Suipius*, of him himself: *Meipius*, of me myself. Nominativo *istuc*, *istac*, *istoc*, or *istuc*, the self same. Accusativo *istunc*, *istanc*, *istoc*, or *istuc*: Ablativo *istoc*, *istac*, *istoc*: Participio Nominativo, & Accusativo, *istac*. After the same manner also is declined, *ille*, *illac*, *illoc*, that same.

The composition of Pronouns.

They are compounded also with Nouns: as, *Hic hac & hoc*, of what fashion? undeclined. *Hic hac & hoc huiusmodi*, undeclined, of this sort. *Hic hac & hoc illiusmodi*, undeclined, of that sort. *Hic hac & hoc illiusmodi*, undeclined, of the same sort.

Also, they are compounded with Prepositions: as, Ablativo *meum*, with me: *tecum*, with thee: *secum*, with himself: *Nobiscum*, with us: *Vobiscum*, with you: *Quicum*, with whom: *Quibuscum*, with whom.

They are compounded also with Adverbs: as, of *Eccē*, behold: *Eccum*, *eccam*, loe he, or he: *Eccos*, *eccas*, behold these men, or women: *Ellum*, *ellam*, see where he, or she is: *Ellos*, *ellas*, see where these men, or women be. So, *Idem*, the same, is compounded of *is*, the same, and *dem*, finally.

They are compounded also with Conjunctions: as, Nominativo *hicine*, *haccine*, *hoccine*, is this he here? Accusativo *huncine*, *hancine*, *hoccine*, Ablativo *hoccine*, *haccine*, *hoccine*. In the Plurall Number, and Better Gender, *haccine*.

Met.

To conclude, they are compounded with the addition of Syllables: as, *Meque*, &c. *Mer*, is added to the first and second Person: as, *Egoque*, I my self: *Meimet*, *meimet*, *memet*, *nosmet*, &c. So we say, *Sibimet*, to him himself, and *semet*. But we do not say, in the Nominative case, *Tumet*, lest it should be thought to be a Clerk, of *Tumco*, to swell: but *Tuimet*, of thee thy self; *Tibimet*, *temet*, *nosmet*, &c.

Tumet.

Te, is added to these, *Tu*, thou: as, *Tuque*, thou thy self: *Te*, thee: as, *Teque*, thee thy self.

Co, is added to the oblique Cases of these Pronouns: *Hic*, *ille*, *Co*, he, when they end in *i*: as, *Huiusce*, of this, *hiscē*, *illiusce*, of him: *illiusce* of this: *Illisce*, these: *Illisce*, those: *Illisce*, those.

Pr, is put to these Ablatives: *Mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*: as, *Mea*, *prae*.

Meapte, mine own : Tuapte, thine own : Suapte, his own : Noapte, our own : Vestrapte, your own. And sometimes, it is added to the Masculine and Neuter Genders : as, Meapte marie, mine own wife : Tuapte labore, by thine own labour : Suapte jumento, by his own beast : Noapte damno, with our own loss, &c.

Quis.

Quis, and Qui, are thus compounded : Quis, is in composition put after these Particles : En, behold : Ne, no : Alius, another : Num, whether : Si, if : as, Equis, a, equod, ecujus, what, who : Nequis, nequod, vel nequid, necujus, that none : Aliquis, a, aliquod, alicujus, some body : Nunquis, nunqua, nunquod, vel nunquid, nuncius, is there any one ? Siquis, siqua, siquod, vel siquid, sicujus, if any. And thus as well in the Feminine Singular, as in the Neuter Plural, have Qua, and not Quæ : as, Si qua mulier, if any woman : Nonne flagitia, that no offences, &c. Except Equis, which in the Feminine Gender, is found to have both Ecquis, and Ecqua.

Ecquis.

But Quis, is in composition, set before these Particles : Nam, piam, putas, quam quæ ; as, Quisnam, quænam, quodnam, vel quidnam, cujusnam, who ? Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, vel quidpiam, cujuspiam, some body : Quisputas, quæputas, quodputas, vel quidputas, cujusputas, who think you ? Quisque, quæquam, quodquam, vel quidquam, cujusquam, any body : Quisque, quæque, quodque, vel quidque, cujusque, every one. And these every where, (excepting, in the Ablative Singular) have Quæ, and not Quæ ; as, Quænam doctrina, what doctrine ? Negotia quæpiam, some businesses. Optima quæque, all the best things.

Quisque.

Qui.

Quis, æ, quod, cujus, who ; is also compounded with it self : as, Quisque, whosoever ; and is declined as before. Qui, æ, quod, cujus, which ; is in composition set before these Particles : Nam, vis, libet, canque ; as, Quidam, quædam, quoddam, vel quiddam, cujusdam, a certain man : Quivis, quævis, quodvis, vel quilibet, cujusvis, whosoever thou wilt : Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, vel quidlibet, cujuslibet, who, or whatsoever thou wilt : Quicumque, quæcumque, quodcumque, cujuscumque, who, or whatsoever. And these every where, (except in the Ablative case Singular) keep Quæ, and not Quæ ; as, Quædam puella, a certain wench : Quæcumque facinora, whatsoever offences.

The Declensions of Pronouns.

The first.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
Sing.	ego	mei	mihi	me	tu	me
	tu	tui	tibi	te		te
Plur.	nos	nostrum, i,	nobis	nos	vos	nobis
	vos	vestrum, i,	vobis	vos		vobis
		sui	sibi	se		se

So are these seven **Pronouns** and their **Compounds** declined: **Unus**, a, um, unus **one**: **Totus**, a, um, totus, the whole: **Solus**, a, um, solus, alone: **Alius**, a, um, alius another: **Alter**, a, um, alterius, one of the two: **Uter**, a, um, utrius, whether of the two: **Ullus**, a, um, ullius, any: as, in the end of the **Heteroclitics**.

	Nominat.	Genitive.	Dative.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablative.
Sing.	ille iste ipse a, um.	ius	i	um um um, um		o o o
Plur.	i ei ei	orum orum orum	is	os as a		is
Sing.	hic hac hoc	hujus	hinc	hunc hanc hoc		hic hac hoc
Plur.	hi ha hae	horum harum horum	his	hos has hae		his
Sing.	is ea id	eius	ei	eum eam id		eo ea eo
Plur.	ii ei ei	eorum earum eorum	illis, or eis,	eos eos ea		illis, or eis,
Sing.	quis, or qui qua, or qua quod, or quod	cujus	cui	quem quam quod, or quod		quo, or quo qua, or qua quo, or qui
Plur.	qui qua qua, or qua	quorum quarum quorum	quibus, or quibus	quos quas qua, or qua		quibus, or quibus

Idem, the same, **eadem**, **idem**, is a **Pronoun** Relative, of the second order.

Singular	meus tuus suus noster vester cujus, whole	i a i	o a o	um um um	i et a um	o a o
Sing.	nostras vestras cujus	atis	ati	atem, ate	as, ate	ate, or ati.
Plur.	ates, atia	atium	atibus	ates, atia	ates, atia	atibus

The second.

The third.

The fourth.

Of

A Verbe *Mover*.
I move. *Tango*. I
touch. *Mover*. I
am moved. *Tan-
go*. I am touched.
Suffra. I am.



A Verb is a part of speech declined with
and Tense. and do tokeneth doing; as,
I love: or *Amor*; as, *Amor*. I am lov-
ing: as, *Sum*. I am.

Of Verbes, such as have Persons be
Personals; as, *Ego amo*. (I love:) *tu amas*. (thou
lovest.) And such as have no Persons, be
Impersonals: as, *Teder*. It fraketh. *Oportet*. It behooveth.

A Verb Personall is that which is distinguished by cer-
persons; as, *Ego lego*. I read; *tu legis*. thou readest; *hic legit*.
man readeth: *illi legunt*. they read. Contrariwise, that is called
Verb Impersonall, which is not distinguished, nor varied by
wordes of divers Persons; as, *Permittit*. it repenteth: *Militem*.
suffreth.

A Verbe Perso-
nall.

Of the things accidentary to a Verbe.

The accidents
of a Verb.

These things do belong to a Verb: *Kind*. *Mod*. *Tense*.
gure. *Figure*. *Person*. *Number*. and *Conjugation*.

Of the Genus, or Kinde.

Kinde.

Of Verbs Personals there be five kinds: *Active*. *Passive*.
Neuter. *Deponent*. and *Common*.

Active.

A Verb Active endeth in *o*, and do tokeneth to do; as, *Amo*.
love: and by putting to *r*. it may be a Passive, as, *Amor*. I am
loved: *Lego*. I read. *legor*. I am read.

Passive.

A Verb Passive endeth in *or*, and do tokeneth to suffer: as,
Amor. I am loved: and by putting away *r*. it may be an Active,
Amo. I love: *Afficio*. I am affectioned. *afficio*. I doe affect.

Neuter.

A Verb Neuter endeth in *o*, or *m*, and cannot take *r* to ma-
ke it a Passive: as, *Corro*. I run. *Sum*. I am. And it is Englished
sometimes Actively, as, *Curro*. I run: and sometimes Passively
as, *Ego ven*. I am sick. *Ambulo*. I walke. *Jacco*. I lie.

A Verb Neuter
Substantive.
A Verb Neuter
Absolute.

Of Verbs Neuters, there be three kinds. For, one is called
a Verb Substantive: as, *Sum*. I am. *est*. thou art. *est*. he is. *sumus*.
we are. &c. Another, a Verb Absolute, so called, because it doth
it selfe perfect the sense. And this againe is double. For,
both in the Verb it selfe signifye an action compleat, and not pa-
sing into any other thing: as, *Ambio*. I desire. *dormio*. I sleepe.
pluit. it raineth. *ningit*. it snoweth. But the other sheweth a pass-
in it selfe compleat: as, *Paleo*. I am pale. *rubeo*. I am red. *al-
leo*. I waite white. *nigro*. I waite black. There is moreover
other kinde of Verb Neuter, whose action passeth into a thing
the like signification, being used in the third Person of the Pa-
ssive voyce: as, *Bibo vinum*. I drinke wine. *Vinum bibitur*. wine
is drunke: *Corro stadium*. I run a race. *stadium curritur*. a race is run.
Vivo vitam. I live a life. *vita vivitur*. a life is lived. *i. a me*. of
me. I live: and so of the rest. To conclude there are Verbs
simple Neuters, but being compounded do containe an action

as, *Ego*, I go: *Ades*, I go. *co. Mingo*, I pistle: *Commungo*, I pistle together with.

A *Verb Depoñent* endeth in *n*, like a *Passive*, and yet in signification is but either *Active*: as, *Loquor verbum*, I speake a word: or *Passive*, as, *Glorior*, I boast. (*Philosophor*, I profess Philosophie.)

Depoñent.

A *Verb Commune* endeth in *r*, and in signification is both *Active* and *Passive*: as, *Osculor te*, I kisse thee: *Osculor à te*, I am kisse of thee. *Veneror*, I honour: *Criminor*, I blame: *Consolor*, I comfort: *Scipulor*, I couerment: *Speculor*, I espye: *Adulor*, I flatter: *Frustror*, I frustrate: *Dignor*, I vouchsafe: *Tutor*, I witness: *Interpretor*, I interpret: *Amplector*, I embrace: *Meditor*, I meditate: *Esperior*, I proove: *Ementior*, I lie: and many such like, every where to be found, in the old writers.

Commune.

MOODS.

There be six Moods: the *Indicative*, the *Imperative*, the *Optative*, the *Potentiall*, the *Subiunctive*, and the *Infinitive*.

Six Moods.

The *Indicative Mood* sheweth a reason, true or false: as, *Ego amo*, I love: or else, asketh a question, as, *amas tu?* dost thou love?

Indicative.

The *Indicative* doth determine a thing simply to be done, or not to be done: as, *Probitas laudatur*, & alget: *Honestas* is praised, and is very cold. This Mood is sometimes used in a question: as, *Quis legit hæc?* Who readeth these things? Sometimes, in doubting: as, *An in alio venit aliud ex alio malum?* Whether doth one evil in the citie, come of an other, or no?

The *Imperative Mood* biddeth or commandeth: as, *Amia*, love thou.

Imperative.

We use the *Imperative Mood* in commanding. This Mood hath no future Tense, but a double Present Tense: as with *Properius*: *Aus si es dura, nega; sin non es dura, venio*. Either if thou beest hard, denie; but if thou beest not hard, come. *Virg.*

Tityrus dum redas, brevis est via, pascere capellam

Et potum pascas age Tityre, & inter agendum

Ocupare capro (cornu ferit ille) catenas.

Tityrus whiles I returns, the way is short, feed the little goates: and being fed *Tityrus*, give them drinke, and in giving it, prevent the goat, (he striketh with the home) take heed.

But it becometh the *Potentiall* tense of the *Subiunctive Mood*: *Cic. Sed amabo te, nihil incommode valetudinis tua feceris*. But I pray thee of all love, do nothing that may be hurtfull to thy health.

Marcialis:

Dic quatenus es, quanti cupias comare, nec ullum

Addideris verbum, comperata tibi est: Say what thou art, how much thou desirest to sup with, neither adde a word, supper is ready for thee. And these *Passives*. *Preceptum* sic let it have been commanded: *Dictum* sic let it have been spoken: *Determinatum* sic let it have been determined: *Psicantur* confesseth to be of the *Potentiall* tense of the *Imperative Mood*.

This Mood is also called *permissive*, because that sometimes permission is hereby signified: as,

*Si sine pace tua, atque ductis manibus Troes
Italiam petiere, sicut peccata, nec illos speraveris auxilio:*
If without thy leave, and against the will of God, the Trojans
have attained Italie, let them abide their sinnes, neither ask
thou them.
To conclude, it is sometimes called suppositive, or hypotheticall;
as, *Virg. — scilicet, & in media ardua viamur:* Let us go, and
rush into midst of the armour.

Optative.

The Optative Mood wisheth, or desireth with these signs.
Would God. I pray God, or God grant: as, *Utinam amen,* I
pray God I love. And hath evermore an Adverb of wishing
joyned with him.

The Optative, Potentiall, and Subjunctive Moods seem
to have the five Tenses severed by the same voices, according
to Linacrus. Note further, that, the Present tense of this Mood
hath sometimes the signification of the future Tense: as, *Utinam
aliquando tecum loquar:* God grant I do at the length speake
with thee.

Potentiall.

The Potentiall Mood is knowne by these signes: May, can,
might, would, should, or ought: as, *Amen, I may or can love,* wish
out an Adverbs joyned with him.

By the Potentiall Mood, we signifie, that something may
be done, or ought to be done: as, *Espectes eadem, à summo munus
poeta:* for, *poeta expectare:* thou must expect the same thing
of the greatest and least poet. *Non expectes, ut statim gratias agat,
qui famulur invites:* for, *non debes expectare:* Thou oughtest not
looks that he should presently give thanks, which is said
against his will. *Quis enim rem tam veterem, pro certo affirmet?* he
vult affirmare? Who would affirme a matter so old, for certain?

The Optative
Moods of the
Greekes.

The Greeks do expresse this Mood, sometimes by the Indicative,
and sometimes by the Optative Mood, and the particle *ay*.

Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive Mood hath evermore some Conjunction
joyned with him; as, *Cum amarem,* when I loved. And it is
called the Subjunctive Mood, because it dependeth of another
Verb in the same sentence, either going afore, or comming after:
as, *Cum amarem, eram miser:* When I loved, I was
wretched.

The Subjunctive Mood doth not by it selfe perfect a sentence,
unlesse it be subjected to another speech, or have another
speech subjected unto it: as,

Si fueris felix, multos numerabis amicos:
Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris: So long as
thou art happy, thou shalt have many friends: if the times be
cloudie, thou shalt be alone.

Note.

By the voyces therefore of the Tenses, these three Moods do
in all things (as hath been said) agree: being discerned by the
signification and signs. For, the Optative Mood hath alwaies
some Adverb of wishing: as, *Uti am veniat aliquando tempus:*
God grant the time do at the length come. But the Potentiall
Mood hath neither any Adverb nor Conjunction joyned unto it.
But the Subjunctive Mood hath alwaies some Conjunction
joyned

joyne with it: as, Si venero: If I shall come. Ut exeat: That
thou be silent. Cum cenavero: When I shall sup.

The Infinitive Mood signifieth to do, to suffer, or, to be, and
hath neither Number nor Person, nor Dominative Case before
him, and is knowne commonly by this signe, to. Also when two
Verbs come together without any Dominative Case betweene
them, then the latter shall be the Infinitive Mood: as, Cupio
discere, I desire to learne.

The Infinitive Mood signifieth to do, or to suffer, without
any certaine difference of Number and Person: as, Malim pro-
bou esse, quam haereri: I had rather to be honest, then to be so
accounted.

There be moreover belonging to the Infinitive Mood, of
Verbs, certaine voices called Gerunds, ending in di, do, and dam:
which have both the Active and Passive signification: as, Amandi,
of loving, or of being loved: amando, in loving, or in being loved:
amandum, to love, or to be loved.

There be also pertaining unto Verbs, two Supines, the one
ending in um, which is called the first Supine, because it hath
the signification of the Verb Active: as, Eo amatum, I go to love.
And the other in u, which is called the latter Supine, because it
hath for the most part the signification Passive: as, Difficilis amatu,
hard to be loved.

Gerunds three,
di, do, dam.

Supines two,
um, u.

TENSES.

There be five Tenses or Times. The Present Tense, the
Preterimperfect Tense, the Preterperfect, the Preterplu-
perfect, and the Future tense.

Tenses five.

The Present tense speaketh of the time that now is: as, Amo,
I love.

The Present
tense.

By the Present tense is signified, an action, now in doing: as,
Scribo, I write.

The Preterimperfect tense, speaketh of the time not perfectly
past: as, Amabam, I loved or did love.

The Preterimper-
fect tense.

By this Tense is signified some thing, to have been in doing
before, and not to be now finished: as, Virg.

Hic templum Junoni ingens Sydonia Dido
Condebat. Here Dido of Sydon did build a very great tem-
ple to Juno. For, it was yet in hand.

The Preterperfect tense speaketh of the time perfectly past,
with this signe, Have: as, Amavi, I have loved. By this Tense,
an action perfectly past and finished, is signified. This Tense
in Verbs Passives, Deponents and Communes, is double: and
therefore is by a double circuition declared. The one, whereby
is expressed a thing but immediately past: as, Pransus sum I have
dined. The other, whereby is declared a thing longer ago past:
as, Pransus fui, I have dined long ago. For, if thou hast
but now newly dined, thou canst not say fitly and aptly: Pran-
sus fui.

The Preterperfect
tense.

The Preterpluperfect tense speaketh of the time more then
perfectly past, with this signe Had: as, Amaveram, I had loved.
By this Tense is signified an action, now long since past.

The Preterplu-
perfect tense.

The Future tense.

The Future tense speaks of the time to come with this Verb shall, or Will: as, Amabo I shall or will love. By this tense is signified, a thing to be done in time to come. This is of time called the promissive Tense, because it seemeth to promise, as he willing to doe something: as Ovid.

Promissive.

Ianus & Nympha, munditque sacro petens:

We will go od Nympha, and resort to the stones sacred.

Fut.

Of this Tense, there is another kind, which they do call, *Tempus* as, *Videro*, I may hereafter see: *Abiero*, I may hereafter goe. *Tempus* is *te aquo animo ferre accipit, negligentem fieris*: If he shall hence the thou takest it well, thou maiest make him hereafter negligent. Which grace Future tense is also found in the Subjunctive Mood: as, *Ers securus dum legam, statimque tunc ero quam legem*: I shall be more secure whiles I read, and presently I shall then when I shall read.

OF FIGURE.

Figure.

Figure is double. Simple, as, *Facio*, I doe: and compound, as, *Calefacio*, I make hot.

Verbs Compound, whose simples are growne out of use, as these: *Defendo*, I defend: *offendo*, I offend: *aspicio*, I behold: *aspicio* I see: *adipiscor*, I obtaine: *experior*, I prove: *comperior*, I find by diligent search: *expedio*, I dispatch: *impedio*, I hinder: *defleo*, I blot out: *imbuo*, I infect: *compello*, I compell: *appello*, I arrive: *incendo*, I set on fire: *accendo*, I kindle: *ingruo*, I invade: *infigo*, I inflict: *infrigo*, I inflige: *infigo*, I move: or prick for ward: *impleo*, I fill: *compleo*, I fulfill: and the like. Some also seeme to come from the Greek: as, *impleo*, I fill: of *πλην*, to fill: *percello*, I strike of *παρα*.

Of the Species, or Forme.

Forme Primitive.

Derivative.

The Species is double. Primitive: which is the first position of the Verb: as, *Ferveo*, I am hot: and Derivative, which is deduced of the Primitive: as, *Ferveo*, I war heat.

Of Derivatives there be five kinds: Inchoative, Frequentative, Desiderative, Diminutive, and Imitative.

Inchoative.

A Verb Inchoative so called of Grammarians (which also calleth Imperative, or rather Augmentative) endeth in *eo*: as, *Labasco*, I faile: *caleo*, I grow hot: *ingemisco*, I sigh and *edormisco*, I take a nap. These Verbs either signifie inchoatives as, *lucet*, that is, it beginneth to be light: or increasing, and augmenting: as, with Virg. *Expleri mentem inquit, quæ sitque tuam*: The minde cannot be filled, and it kindleth in beholding: that it heateth more and more. The most of these are used for the primitive themes: as, *Timeo*, *fo*, *timeo*, I feare: *hæreo*, *fo*, *hæreo*, I pawne: or chapper: *comisco*, *fo*, *taceo*, I am silent.

Frequentative.

A Verb Frequentative endeth in *o*, *so*, *xo*, or *tor*: as, *Visto*, I visit: *assideo*, I affect, or earnestly desire: *scripsito*, I write often: *pulso*, I knocke: *viso*, I go to see: *quasso*, I brandish: *necto*, I knit often: *texo*, I weave: *vezo*, I vex: *sedor*, I follow: *scisor*, I cut: *seiscior*, I inquire. And they signifie either a con-

non diligendo; as endethen: as, Dico, that is, I speak often: as, that is, I go to see.

Hitherto also appertaine these Verbs: vellico, I pluck: fodico, I pierce: abico, I wipe somewhat white: and such like: which of the Grammarians are wont to be called Apparatives.

A Verb Desiderative endeth in urio: as, Lecturio, I desire to read: Parturio, I am towards labour: Esurio, I hunger: Coniurio; I have an appetite to supper. These do adde to the signification of their Primitives, a certaine desire and appetite: as, Lecturio, that is, I desire to read: Coniurio, I desire to suppe.

A Verb Diminutive endeth in lo, or so: as, Sorbillo, I suppe often: Camillo I chirpe or chaunt: Picillo, I taste, or suppe by little and little: that is, sorbeo, cano, bibo, I sup, sing, and drinke, a little, and moderately.

A Verb Imitative is that which betokeneth imitation: as, Parriso, I resemble my father: Atticisco, I imitate the Athenian speech: Placonisso, I followe Plato. But the Latines do not so much delight in this forme: whereof, for, Gracisco, they use Gracior, I followe the Greekes in riot and daunce: as, Cornicor, I eat like a crow of Hec Cornix, cornicis, a Crow: Vulpinor I play the sort, of Hec Vulpes vulpis, a Fox: Bacchor, I imitate Bacchus in drunkenness and dissolucency, of Hec Bacchus, racchi, the God of wine.

OF PERSONS.

There be also in Verbs three Persons, in both Numbers: as, Singulariter, Ego amo, I love: Tu amas, Thou lovest: Ille amat, He loveth. Pluraliter, Nos amamus, We love: Vos amatis, Ye love: Illi amant, They love. Persons three.

NUMBER.

There be also in Verbs two Numbers: the Singular, as, Lego, I read: and the Plurall, as, Legimus, We read. Numbers two.

CONJUGATION.

Verbs have foure Conjugations, which be knowne after this manner. Conjugations foure.

The first Conjugation hath a long before re and ris: as, Amare, To love: Amas, Thou art loved.

The second Conjugation hath e long before re and ris: as, Docere, To teach: Doceris, Thou art taught.

The third Conjugation hath e short before re and ris: as, Legere, To read: Legeris, Thou art read.

The fourth Conjugation hath i long before re and ris: as, Audire, To heare: Audiris, Thou art heard.

Verbs in O, of the four Conjugations, be declined after these Examples.

A Mo, amas, amavi, amare: amandi, amando, amandum: amatus, amata: amans, amaturus. **To Love.**

Doces, docet, docui, docere: docendi, docendo, docendum: doctus, docta: docens, docturus. **To Teach.**

Lego, legis, legi, legere: legendi, legendo, legendum: lectus, lecta: legens, lecturus. **To Read.**

Audis, audis, audiui, audire: audiendi, audiendo, audiendum: auditus, audita: audiens, auditorus. **To Hear.**

Indicative Mood, Present Tense, Singular.

I love, Thou lovest, He loveth, We love, Ye love, They love.
or *do love, dost love, doth love, do love, do love, do love.*

A Mo, amas, amat. } **Amamus, amatis, amant.**
Doces, docet, docet. } **Docemus, docetis, docent.**
Lego, legis, legit. } **Legimus, legitis, legunt.**
Audis, audis, audit. } **Audimus, auditis, audiunt.**

Preterimperfect tense, Singular, { **Amabam, Docebam, Legebam, Audiebam,** } **I loved, or did love.**
bas, bat. **Plural. bamus, batis, bu-**

Preterperfect tense, Singular, { **Amavi, Docui, Legi, Audiui,** } **I have loved.**
isti, it. **Plural. imus, istis, erunt, vel er-**

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, { **Amaveram, Docueram, Legeram, Audiveram,** } **I had loved.**
ras, rat. **Plural. ramus, ratis, ran-**

Futurs tense, Singular, { **Amabo, Docebo, Legam, Audiam,** } **I shall, or will love.**
bis, bit. **Plural. bimus, bitis, bunt.**
es, et. **Plural. emus, etis, ent.**

Imperative Mood.

Love Love he, or Love we, or Love Love they, or
thou, let him love, let us love. ye. let them love.

Present tense, Singular, { **Amo, amec, Docet, doceat, doceto: doceto. Lege, legat, legito: legito. Audi, audiat, audito: audito.** } **Pl. amemus, Pl. doceamus, Pl. legamus, Pl. audiamus,** } **Amate, amec, amato: amato. Docete, doceat, docetote: docetote. Legite, legat, legitote: legitote. Audite, audiat, audite: audite.**

Optatis

Optative Mood.

God grant I love.

Amem, ames, amet. Plural. amemus, amenis, ametur.

Present tense, Singular, Utinam

Doceam,	} as, at. Plural. amas, atis, ant.
Legam,	
Audiam,	

Should God I loved, or did love.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular, Utinam

Amarem,	} res, ret. Plural. remus, retis, rent.
Docerem,	
Legerem,	
Audirem,	

I pray God I have loved.

Preterperfect tense, Singular, Utinam

Amaverim,	} ris, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.
Docuerim,	
Legerim,	
Audiverim,	

Should God I had loved.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, Utinam

Amavissim,	} ses, set. Plural. semus, setis, sent.
Docuissim,	
Legissim,	
Audivissim,	

God grant I shall or will love.

Future tense, Singular, Utinam

Amavero,	} tis, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.
Docuero,	
Legero,	
Audivero,	

Potentiall Mood.

I may or can love.

Amem, ames, amet. Plural. amemus, amenis, ametur.

Present tense, Singular,

Doceam,	} as, at. Plural. amas, atis, ant.
Legam,	
Audiam,	

I might, would, should, ought, or (could) love.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular,

Amarem,	} res, ret. Plural. remus, retis, rent.
Docerem,	
Legerem,	
Audirem,	

I might, would, should, or ought (to have) loved.

Preterperfect tense, Singular,

Amaverim,	} ris, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.
Docuerim,	
Legerim,	
Audiverim,	

I might, would, should, or ought (to have) loved.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular,

Amavissim,	} ses, set. Plural. semus, setis, sent.
Docuissim,	
Legissim,	
Audivissim,	

I may or can love hereafter.

Future tense, Singular,

Amavero,	} tis, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.
Docuero,	
Legero,	
Audivero,	

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mood.

		When I love.	
<i>Present tense, Singular. Cū</i>	Amem, ames, amet.	<i>Plural. amemus, ameis, amet.</i>	
	Doccam,		
	Legam,	at, at. <i>Plural. amis, atis, ant.</i>	
<i>Preterimperfect tense, Sing. Cū</i>	Amarem,		
	Doccerem,		
	Legerem,	res, ret. <i>Plural. semus, retis, res.</i>	
<i>Preterperfect tense, Singular. Cū</i>	Amaverim,		
	Docuissim,		
	Legissim,	ris, rit. <i>Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.</i>	
<i>Preterpluperfect tense, Sing. Cū</i>	Amavissim,		
	Docuissim,		
	Legissim,	ses, set. <i>Plur. semus, setis, sent.</i>	
<i>Future tense, Singular. Cū</i>	Amavero,		
	Docuero,		
	Legero,	ris, rit. <i>Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.</i>	
	Audirem,		
	Audiverim,		
	Audivissim,		

Infinitive Mood.

<i>Present tense, and Preterimperfect,</i>	Amare, to Love.		
	Docere, to Teach.		
	Legere, to Read.		
<i>Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect tense</i>	Amavisse, to have or had loved.		
	Docuisse, to have or had taught.		
	Legisse, to have or had read.		
<i>Future tense,</i>	Audivisse, to have or had heard.		
	Amaturum esse, to love hereafter.		
	Dociturum esse, to teach hereafter.		
<i>Gerunds,</i>	Audireum esse, to hear hereafter.		
	Amandi, of loving:	do, in loving:	dum, to love
	Docendi, of teaching:	do, in teaching:	dum, to teach
<i>Supines,</i>	Legendi, of reading:	do, in reading:	dum, to read
	Audiendi, of hearing:	do, in hearing:	dum, to hear
	Amatum, to love.	Amatu, to be loved.	<i>A Participle of the Present tense,</i>
	Docum, to teach.	Docu, to be taught.	
	Lectum, to read.	Lectu, to be read.	
	Audium, to hear.	Audiu, to be heard.	

Future tense, in rum, { Amarus, to love, or about to love.
 { Docturus, to teach, or about to teach.
 { Lecturus, to read, or about to read.
 { Audurus, to hear, or about to hear.

Before we decline any Verbs in Or; for the supplying of many Tenses, lacking in all such Verbs; we must learn to decline this Verb Sum, in this wise following:

Sum, es, fui, esse, sumus: to be.

Indicative Mood, Present Tense, Singular.

Present tense, Singular, { Sum, I am: es, est. Pluraliter, sumus, estis, sunt.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular, { Eram, I was: eras, erat. Pluraliter, eramus, eratis, erant.

Preterperfect tense, Singular, { Fui, I have been: fuisti, fuit. Pluraliter, fuimus, fuistis, fuerunt, vel fuer.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, { Fueram, I had been: fueras, rat. Pluraliter, fueramus, ratis, rant.

Future tense, Singular, { Ero, I shall or will be: ris, rit. Pluraliter, erimus, ritis, erunt.

Imperative Mood.

Present tense, Singular, { Sis, { de thou. { Sit, { Sitis, { Sine,
 { Es, { Esto. { Pl. Simus. { Estis, { Estote, { Sumus.

Oprative Mood.

Present tense, Singular, Utinam { Sim, I pray God I be: sis, sit. Plur. utinam sumus, sitis, sint.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular, Utinam { Essem, Would God I were: ses, set. Plur. utinam essemus, setis, sint.

Preterperfect tense, Singular, Utinam { Fuerim, I pray God I have been: ris, rit. Plur. utinam fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, Utinam { Fuisssem, Would God I had been: ses, set. Plur. utinam fuisssemus, setis, sent.

Future tense, Singular, Utinam { Pucro, God grant I be hereafter: ris, rit. Plur. utinam rimus, ritis, rint.



Potentiall

Potentiall Mood.

<i>Present tense, Singular,</i>	Sim, I may or can be: es, es. Plural, simus, sint.
<i>Presentimperfect tense, Singular,</i>	Essem, I might or could be: es, es. Plural, essemus, essetis, essent.
<i>Preterperfect tense, Singular,</i>	Fuissim, I might, could, should, or ought to have been: ris, rit. Plur. fuissimus, fuissetis, fuissent.
<i>Preterpluperfect tense, Singular,</i>	Fuissem, I might, could, should, or ought to have been: es, es. Plur. fuissemus, fuissetis, fuissent.
<i>Future tense, Singular,</i>	Fuero, I may or can be hereafter: ris, rit. Plural, fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Present tense, Singular, Cum</i>	Sim, When I am: es, sit. Plural, simus, sint.
<i>Preterimperfect tense, Singular, Cum</i>	Essem, When I was: es, esset. Plural, essemus, essetis, essent.
<i>Preterperfect tense, Singular, Cum</i>	Fuissim, When I have been: ris, rit. Plur. fuissimus, fuissetis, fuissent.
<i>Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, Cum</i>	Fuissem, When I had been: es, esset. Plural, fuissemus, fuissetis, fuissent.
<i>Future tense, Singular, Cum</i>	Fuero, When I shall or will be: ris, rit. Plural, fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.

Infinitive Mood.

<i>Present tense, and Preterimperfect tense,</i>	Esse, to be.	<i>Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect tense,</i>	Fuisse, to have been.
<i>Future tense,</i>	(Fore, vel futurum esse, to be hereafter.		

Verbs in *Or*, of the four Conjugations, be declined after these Examples.

A Mor, amāris, vel amāre: amatus sum vel fui, amāri: amatus, amandus. **To be loved.**
 Doccor, doceris, vel docere: doctus sum vel fui, doceri: doctus, docendus. **To be taught.**
 Legor, legēris, vel legere: lectus sum vel fui, legi: lectus, legendus. **To be read.**
 Audior, audiris, vel audire: auditus sum vel fui, audiri: auditus, audiendus. **To be heard.**

Indicatio

Indicative Mood.

I am loved.

Present tense, Singular,	{	Amor, amaris vel amare, amatur,	{	amur, amini, amur
		Doceor, doceris vel docere, docetur		emur, emini, entur.
		Legor, legeris vel legere, legitur,		imur, imini, untur.
		Audior, audiris vel audire, auditur,		imur, imini, untur.

I was loved.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular,	{	Amabar,	{	baris, vel bare, barur. Pl. bamur, bami-
		Docebar,		(ni), bantur.
		Legebar,		
		Audibar,		

I have been loved.

Preterperfect tense, Singular,	{	Amatus,	{	tus es vel fuisti, tus est vel
		Doctus,		fuit. Pl. ti sumus vel fui-
		Lectus,		mus, ti estis vel fuistis, ti
		Auditus,		sunt, fuerant vel fuere.

I had been loved.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular,	{	Amatus,	{	eram vel fueram, tus eras vel fueras,
		Doctus,		tus erat vel fuerat Pl. ti eramus vel fue-
		Lectus,		ramus, ti eratis vel fueratis, ti erant
		Auditus,		vel fuerant.

I shall or will be loved.

Future tense, Singular,	{	Amabor,	{	beris vel bere, bitur. Pl. bimus, bimini, buntur.
		Docebor,		
		Legar,		
		Audiar,		eris vel ere, erur. Pl. emur, emini, entur.

Imperative Mood.

Thou	Let him	Let us be	Ye ye	Let them
loved.	be loved.	loved.	loved.	be loved.

Present tense, Singular,	{	Amare, Ametur,	{	Plur. Amemur,	{	emini, entur,
		amator, amator,				emino, antor,
		Docere, Doceatur,		Plur. Doceamur,		emini, cantur,
		docetor, docetor,				emino, entor,
		Legere, Legatur,		Plur. Legamur,		imini, antur,
		legitor, legitor,				iminor, untor,
		Audire, Audiatur,		Plur. Audiamur,		imini, iantur,
		auditor, auditor,				iminor, iuntor.

Optative Mood.

God grant I be loved.

Present tense, Singular, Utinam	{	Amer, aris vel ere, arur. Pl. Utin. emur, emini, entur.	{	aris vel are, atur. Pl. Uti. amur, amini, antur.
		Docer,		
		Legar,		
		Audiar,		

Preterimperfect tense, Sing. Utinam { Amarer, Docerer, Legerer, Audirer, } **Would God I were loved.**
reris vel rere, retur. Pl. Uti. remur, re-
(min, temp)

Preterperfect tense, Sing. Utinam { Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, } **I pray God I have been loved.**
sim vel fuissim, tus sis vel fueris, tus
vel fuerit. Plural. Utinam, ti finis
vel fuissimus, ti sis vel fueritis, ti
vel fuerim.

Preterpluperfect tense, Sing. Utinam { Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, } **Would God I had been loved.**
essem vel fuisssem, tus esses vel fuisset, tus
esset vel fuisset. Plural. Utinam, ti
essemus vel fuisssemus, ti essetis vel
fuissetis, ti essent vel fuissent.

Future tense, Sing. Utinam { Amarus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, } **God grant I be loved hereafter.**
ero vel fuero, eris vel fueris, tus es
vel fuerit. Plural. Utinam, ti erimus
vel fuissimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti
erunt vel fuerint.

Potentiall Mood.

Present tense, Singular. { Amer, eris vel ere, cur. Pl. emur, amini, entur. } **I may or can be loved.**
aris vel are, anur. Pl. amur, amini, antur.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular. { Amarer, Docerer, Legerer, Audirer, } **I would, should, or ought to be loved.**
reris vel rere, retur. Pl. remur, remini, re-

Preterperfect tense, Singular. { Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, } **I would, should, or ought to have been loved.**
sim vel fuissim, tus sis vel fueris, tus
vel fuerit. Pl. ti finis vel fuissimus, ti
finis vel fueritis, ti sint vel fu-

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular. { Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, } **I would, should, or ought to have been loved.**
essem vel fuisssem, tus esses vel fuisset, tus
esset vel fuisset. Pl. ti
essemus vel fuisssemus, ti essetis vel fuissetis, ti
essent vel fuissent.

Future tense, Singular. { Amarus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, } **I may or can be loved hereafter.**
ero vel fuero, tus eris vel fueris, tus es
vel fuerit. Pl. ti erimus vel fuissimus, ti
eritis vel fueritis, ti erunt vel fuerint.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mood.

When I am loved.

Present tense.
Singular. Cùm } Amer, eris vel erē, etur. Pl. Cùm, emur, emini, entur.
 } Docer, }
 } Legar, } aris vel are, atur. Pl. cùm amur, amini, antur
 } Audiar, }

When I was loved.

Preterimperfect tense. Cùm } Amarer, }
 } Docerer, } reris vel rere, retur. Pl. Cùm remur, remi-
 } Legerer, } (ni, rentur.
 } Audirer, }

When I have been loved.

Preterperfect tense. Cùm } Amatus, } sum vel fuerim, sis vel fueris, sit vel fue-
 } Doctus, } rit. Plur. Cùm ti simus vel fuerimus,
 } Lectus, } ti sitis vel fueritis, ti sint vel fue-
 } Auditus, } rint.

When I had been loved.

Preterpluperfect tense. Cùm } Amatus, } essem vel fuisset, tus esses vel fuisset, tus
 } Doctus, } esses vel fuisset. Plur. Cùm ei
 } Lectus, } essemus vel fuisset, ti essetis vel
 } Auditus, } fuissetis, ti essent vel fuissent.

When I shall or will be loved.

Future tense. Cùm } Amatus, } ero vel fuero, tus eris vel fueris, tus
 } Doctus, } erit vel fuerit. Plur. Cùm ti erimus
 } Lectus, } vel fuerimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti
 } Auditus, } erint vel fuerint.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, and Preterimperfect tense. } Amari, }
 } Doceri, } To be } Loved.
 } Legi, } Taught.
 } Audiri, } Read.
 } Heard.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect tense. } Amatum esse vel fuisse, To have or had been loved.
 } Doctum esse vel fuisse, To have or had been taught.
 } Lectum esse vel fuisse, To have or had been read.
 } Auditum esse vel fuisse, To have or had been heard.

Future tense. } Amatum iri vel amandum esse, to be loved }
 } Doctum iri vel docendum esse, to be taught } hereafter.
 } Lectum iri vel legendum esse, to be read }
 } Auditum iri vel audiendum esse, to be heard }

A Participle of the Preterperfect tense. } Amatus, loved.
 } Doctus, taught.
 } Lectus, read.
 } Auditus, heard.

A Paraphrase of the Future in dus, { *Amandus, Docendus, Legendus, Audiendus,* } *To be* { *taught, read, heard.*

Of certaine Verbs going out of Rule, which are declined and formed in manner following.

Possūm, potes, potui, posse, potens : *To may, or can, or, to be able.*

Volo, vis, volui, velle, volendi, volendo, volendum; Supinis cartulens : *To will, or to be willing.*

Nolo, non vis, nolui, nolle, nolendi, nolendo, nolendum; Supinis carnolens : *To nill, or to be unwilling.*

Malo, mavis, malui, malle; malendi, malendo, malendum; Supinis carcer, malens : *To have rather, or, to be more willing.*

Edo, edis vel es, edi, edere vel esse; edendi, edendo, edendum; esum vel esum estu, edens, edens, vel edens : *To eat.*

Fio, es, factus sum vel fui, fieri; factus, faciendus : *To be made, or done.*

Fero, fers, tuli, ferre; ferendi, ferendo, ferendum; lacum, lacu; ferelacurus : *To beate or suffer.*

Fetor, fetris vel ferre, lacus sum vel fui, ferri; lacus, ferendus : *To be doyme or suffered.*

Indicative Mood.

I may or can, or am able.

<i>Present tense, Sing.</i>	P ossūm, potes, potest. Volo, vis, vult. Nolo, non vis, non vult. Malo, mavis, mavult. Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est. Fio, es, fit. Fero, fers, fert. Feror, fetris vel ferre, fertur.	<i>Pluraliter.</i>	Possūmus, potestis, possūmus. Volumus, vultis, volunt. Nolumus, non vultis, nolumus. Malumus, mavultis, malumus. Edimus, edeis vel estis, edunt. Firmus, fitis, fiunt. Ferimus, fertis, ferunt. Ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
-----------------------------	---	--------------------	---

<i>Preterimperfect tense, Singular.</i>	Poteram, Volebam, Nolebam, Malebam, Edebam, Fiebam, Perebam, Ferebam, baris, vel bare, batur.	<i>Pluraliter.</i>	<i>I was able.</i>	<i>as, or. Pluraliter, amas, atis, ant;</i>
---	--	--------------------	--------------------	---

Present Imperfect Singular.	Potui,	Malui,	I have been able: isti, it. <i>Plural.</i> imus, istis, erant vel ere.
	Volui,	Edi,	
	Nolui,	Tali,	
	Factus,	sum vel fui, es vel fuisti, est vel fuit. <i>Plur.</i> ti sumus vel fuimus, ti estis vel fuistis, ti super factum vel fuisse.	
	Latus,		

Present Imperfect Singular.	Potueram,	Malueram,	I had been able. ras, ras. <i>Plur.</i> ramus, ratis, rami
	Volueram,	Ederam,	
	Nolueram,	Tuleram,	
	Factus,	eram vel fueram, tus eras vel fueras, tus erat vel fuerat. <i>Plural.</i> ti eramus vel fueramus, ti eratis vel fueratis, ti erant vel fuerant.	
	Latus,		

Present Imperfect Singular.	Potero,	poteris, poterit.	I shall or will be able. <i>Plur.</i> erimus, eritis, erunt
	Volam,	Edam,	
	Nolam,	Fiam,	
	Malam,	Feram,	
	Ferat,	rêris vel rêre, rêtur. <i>Plural.</i> rêtur, rêmini, rêntur.	
	Possim, Volo, Malo, habet no	Imperative Mood.	

Imperative Mood.

Be thou unwilling. Be ye unwilling. or will ye.				
Present tense, Singular.	Noli, nolito.		Pluraliter, Nolite, nolitote.	
	Eat thou.			
	Es, esto,	Edam,	Pl. edamus,	Edite, edite,
	ede,	esto,		Edant, edunt.
	edite,	edito.	Pl. fiamus,	Fite,
	Fito tu,	fito.		fiunt;
	Fer,	Ferat,	Pl. feramus,	Ferte,
	ferto:	ferto.		ferote:
	Ferre,	Feratur,	Pl. feramur,	Ferimini,
	fertor:	fertor.		ferimur,

Optative Mood.

ruum.		Possim,	Nolim,	} God grant I be able. is, it <i>Plural.</i> Uinam imus, icis, im.
Present	{	Velim,	Malim,	
Imperf.		Edam,		
Singular.		Fiam,	as, at. <i>Plur.</i> Uinam amus, acis, ant.	
Uinam		Feram,		
		Ferat, raris vel rare, raretur. <i>Plur.</i> Uinam raretur, raremini, rarentur.		
		Possim,	Ederem,	} Would God I were able. es, et. <i>Plur.</i> Uinam emus, etis, em.
Present	{	Vellem,	vel edem,	
Imperfect		Nollem,	Fierem,	
Imperf.		Mallem,	Ferrem,	
Singular.		Ferrer,	rêris vel rêre, rêtur. <i>Pl.</i> Uinam rêtur, rêmini, rêntur.	
Uinam				

Present

I may God I have been able.

<i>Præter- perfect tense, Singular. Utinam</i>	Potuerim,	Maluerim,	<i>ris, rit. Plur. Utinam, rimus, ritus, ris, ritus. Plur. Utinam, ti sinus vel fuerimus, ti fueritis, ti sint vel fuerint.</i>
	Voluerim,	Ediderim,	
	Noluerim,	Tulerim,	
	Factus,	essim vel fuissim,	
	Latus,	fuisset. Plur. Utinam, ti fueritis, ti fueritis, ti fueritis, ti fueritis, ti fueritis, ti fueritis.	

Utinam God I had been able.

<i>Præter- pluperfect tense, Singular. Utinam</i>	Potuissem,	Maluissem,	<i>ses, set. Plur. Utinam, semus, setis, setis.</i>
	Voluissem,	Edissem,	
	Noluissem,	Tuluissem,	
	Factus,	essim vel fuissim,	
	Latus,	fuisset. Plur. Utinam, ti essemus vel fuissimus, ti essetis vel fuissetis, ti essemus vel fuissimus, ti essetis vel fuissetis, ti essemus vel fuissimus, ti essetis vel fuissetis.	

God grant I be able.

<i>Future tense, Singular. Utinam</i>	Potero,	Malero,	<i>ris, rit. Pl. Utinam, rimus, ritus, ris, ritus. Plur. Utinam, ti orimus vel fuerimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti erunt vel fuerint.</i>
	Volero,	Edero,	
	Nolero,	Tulero,	
	Factus,	ero vel fuero,	
	Latus,	fuisset. Plur. Utinam, ti orimus vel fuerimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti erunt vel fuerint.	

The Potentiall and the Subjunctive Mood, be formed like the Optative in voice, and do differ only in signification, and sign of the Moods.

Infinitive Mood.

<i>Present, and Præter- imperfect tense,</i>	To be able.		<i>Præter- perfect, and Præter- pluperfect tense,</i>	To have or had been able.	
	Poss,	Potuisse,		Potuisse,	
	Velle,	Voluisse,		Voluisse,	
	Nolle,	Noluisse,		Noluisse,	
<i>Future tense,</i>	Malle,	Maluisse,	<i>Præter- pluperfect tense,</i>	Edisse,	
	Edere, vel esse,	Edisse,		Tulisse,	
	Ferre,	Factum esse vel fuisse,		Factum esse vel fuisse,	
	Fieri,	Latum esse vel fuisse,		Latum esse vel fuisse,	
	Ferri,				

Esse, to eat hereafter.
Lanum esse.
Factum iri, vel faciendum esse.
Latum iri, vel ferendum esse.

Et and Queo, make Ibam and Quibam, in the Præterimperfect tense of the Indicative Mood, and Ibo and Quibo in the Future tense: and in all other Moods and Tenses are varied like Verbs in o, of the fourth Conjugation; saying that they make their Gerunds, Eundi, eundo, eundum; Queundi, queundo, queundum.

Of the Præterperfect tense of the Indicative Mood, be formed the Præterpluperfect tense of the same Mood; the Præterperfect

tenk, the Pluperfect tense, and the Future tense of the
 Preterite Mood, the Potential Mood, and the Subjunctive
 Mood; the Pluperfect tense, and the Pluperfect tense of
 the Infinitive Mood: as, of Amavi, are formed, Amaveram, ama-
 verim, amavero, by changing i into e short; as, Amavisse, amavis-
 se, by changing i into e short; as, Amavisse, amavis-

Tenses formed of
 the Preterite
 tense.

A Type of the CONJUGATIONS.

Active and Neuter.

Singulariter. *Indicative.* *Pluraliter.*

Present tense.

I love. } } } } }
 am, as, } } } } }
 es, er, } } } } }
 is, it, } } } } }
 itur, } } } } }

Preterimperfect tense.

I loved or did love. } } } } }
 bam, bas, bat, } } } } }
 eris, eris, eris, } } } } }

Preterperfect tense.

I have loved. } } } } }
 isti, it, } } } } }
 erant, erant, erant, } } } } }

Preterpluperfect tense.

I had loved. } } } } }
 eram, eras, erat, } } } } }
 erant, erant, erant, } } } } }

Future tense.

I shall or will love. } } } } }
 bo, bis, bit, } } } } }
 eris, eris, eris, } } } } }
 eris, eris, eris, } } } } }

Imperative.

am, as, to, love thou. } } } } }
 es, er, to, } } } } }
 is, it, to, } } } } }
 itur, to, } } } } }

*Singulariter.**Operative: Utinam, Pluraliter.*

God grant I love.

am es est.

eam

am as at.

iam,

Would God I loved.

rem res rer.

I pray God I have loved.

rim kis rit.

Would God I had loved.

issem isset isset.

God grant I love hereafter.

to ris rit.

Present tense.

amus esis erit.

amur aris erit.

Preterimperfect tense.

remus renis rent.

Preterperfect tense.

rimus ritis rint.

Preterpluperfect tense.

issemus issetis isissent.

Future tense.

rimus ritis rint.

The Potentiall and Subjunctive Moods, both in the Active and Passive voices, and also in all Verbs, Aenter, Deponent and Commune, are in all Tenses like unto the Operative.

The Potentiall Mood is that, whereby we signifie, that a thing may, should, or ought to be done: and hath neither Verb nor Conjunction.

The Subjunctive Mood hath attributes some Conjunctions joyned with it: as, Si, if: Ut, that: Quam, whereas: Cum, when, &c.

In English, these Moods are thus expressed.

Potentiall Mood.

I may or can love.

I might or could love.

I might, would, should, or ought to have loved.

I might, would, should, or ought to had loved.

I may or can love hereafter.

Infinitive Mood.

Present tense, and Preterimperfect.

a } to love.

e } re, } to reach.

c } to read.

i } to hear.

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect.

isse, } to have or had loved.

to have or had taught.

to have or had read.

to have or had heard.

Future tense.

urum esse, } to love hereafter.

to reach hereafter.

to read hereafter.

to hear hereafter.

Subjunctive Mood.

When I loved.

When I loved or did love.

When I have loved.

When I had loved.

When I shall or will love.

Active, Neuter, Deponent, and Commune: Go

ronds; Di. of loving: Da. in loving: Dm. to love.

Participles, *Present tense*, of Active and Neuter.

Am, } loving.

ens,

ens,

ien.

urus, to love, or about to love.

a,

um,

Participles of Deponent and Commune.

Present tense, { ans, ens, ent, igit, } Preter-tense, { us, a, um, }

Future is res { urus, a, um, } Verbs Commune, have also a Participle of the Future tense in *du*.

Passive, Deponent, and Commune.

Singularis, Indicative, Pluralis.

Present tense, I am loved.

{ a, e, i, } { ris, re, } { a, e, i, } { ur, } { a, e, i, } { ur, } { a, e, i, } { ur, }

Preterimperf. tense, I was loved.

{ a, e, i, } { bar, } { a, e, i, } { bar, } { a, e, i, } { bar, } { a, e, i, } { bar, } { a, e, i, } { bar, }

Preterperf. tense, I have bin loved.

{ a, e, i, } { fui, } { a, e, i, } { fui, } { a, e, i, } { fui, } { a, e, i, } { fui, } { a, e, i, } { fui, }

Preterimperf. tense, I had been loved.

{ a, e, i, } { eram, } { a, e, i, } { eram, } { a, e, i, } { eram, } { a, e, i, } { eram, } { a, e, i, } { eram, }

Future, I shall or will be loved.

{ a, e, i, } { ero, } { a, e, i, } { ero, } { a, e, i, } { ero, } { a, e, i, } { ero, } { a, e, i, } { ero, }

{ a, e, i, } { eris, } { a, e, i, } { eris, } { a, e, i, } { eris, } { a, e, i, } { eris, } { a, e, i, } { eris, }

{ a, e, i, } { erit, } { a, e, i, } { erit, } { a, e, i, } { erit, } { a, e, i, } { erit, } { a, e, i, } { erit, }

Imperative, Present tense.

{ a, e, i, } { re, } { a, e, i, } { re, } { a, e, i, } { re, } { a, e, i, } { re, } { a, e, i, } { re, }

Optative, Utinam.

Present tense, God grant I be loved.

{ a, e, i, } { eris, } { a, e, i, } { eris, } { a, e, i, } { eris, } { a, e, i, } { eris, } { a, e, i, } { eris, }

{ a, e, i, } { ere, } { a, e, i, } { ere, } { a, e, i, } { ere, } { a, e, i, } { ere, } { a, e, i, } { ere, }

ar, { aris vel } atur.	amur, amini, amitur.
Præterimperfect tense.	
Wouldst thou I were loved.	
er, { eris, } eretur.	remur, romini, rentur.
Præterperfect tense.	
I pray God I have been loved.	
us { sum vel fu, } sit.	{ sumus, sitis, sint.
rim, ris, rit.	{ rimus, ritis, rint.
Præterperfect tense.	
Wouldst thou I had been loved.	
us { essem vel ees, } esset.	{ essemus, essetis, essent.
fuisset, fuisset, fuisset.	{ fuissetis, fuissetis, fuissetis.
Future tense.	
God grant I be loved hereafter.	
us { ero vel eris, } erit.	{ erimus, eritis, erunt.
fuero, fueris, fuerit.	{ fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.

Potentiall Mood.

Both these Moods are all one in voice, with the Optative; as besoye.

Subjunctive Mood.

I may or can be loved.	When I am loved.
I would, should, or ought to be loved.	When I was loved.
I would, should, or ought to have been loved.	When I have been loved.
I would, should, or ought to had been loved.	When I had been loved.
I may or can be loved hereafter.	When I shall or will be loved.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, and Præterimperfect tense.	Præterperfect, and Præterpluperfect tense.	Future tense.
a { risto be loved.	To have or had been loved.	To be loved hereafter.
i	um esse vel fuisset.	um iri vel duri

Participles of the Prætertense,	{ us	Participles of the Future	{ andus.
	{ us	in dus,	endus.
	um		endus.

Of Gerunds, Supines, and Participles, of Verbs Dependent and Commune, see besoye.

Most plaine briefe and profitable Rules of WILLIAM LILIE,
concerning the Preterperfect tenses and Supines of
the Verbs. And first of the common Preterper-
fect tense of simple Verbs, of the first
Conjugation.

As in the Present tense is *avi* in the Preterperfect tense;
as, No, *nas*, *navi*, *nare*, *navum*, to swimme: *Vocito*, *vocitas*,
avocitavi, *vocitare*, *vocitatum*, to call often: Except *Lavo*,
lavis, *lavi*, *lavare*, *locum lautum* and *lavatum*, to wash: *Juvo*, *juvas*,
juvi, *juvare*, *jutum*, to helpe: *Nexo*, *nexas*, *nexu*, *nexare*, *nexum*, to
knit: *Seco*, *secas*, *secui*, *secare*, *secum*, to cut: *Neco*, *necas*, *nequi*,
necare, *nectum*, to kill: *Mico*, *micas*, *micui*, *micare*, to shine
often, to glister: *Plico*, *plieas*, *plieui*, *plicare*, *plieatum* or *plucitum*,
to fold or pleat: *Frico*, *fricas*, *fricui*, or *fricavi*, *fricare*, *fricatum*,
or *fricatum*, to rub: *Domo*, *domas*, *domui*, or *domavi*, *domare*,
domum, or *domatum*, to tame: *Tono*, *tonas*, *tonui*, *tonare*, *tonitum*,
to thunder: *Sono*, *sonas*, *sonui*, *sonare*, *sonitum*, to sound: *Crepeo*,
crepas, *crepul*, *crepare*, *crepitum*, to crack: *Veto*, *vetas*, *vetui*, or
vetavi, *vetare*, *vetitum* or *vetatum*, to forbid: *Cubo*, *cubas*, *cubui*,
cubare, *cubitum*, to lie downe: all which do selborne end in
avi. *Do*, *das*, *dedi*, *dare*, *datum*, to give: *Sto*, *stas*, *steti*, *stare*, *statum*,
to stand.

The common Preterperfect tense of Verbs of the
second Conjugation.

Es in the Present tense, is *ui* in the Preterperfect tense:
as, *Nigreo*, *nigres*, *nigui*, *nigrere*, to wax black: Except,
Jubeo, *jubes*, *jussi*, *jubere*, *jussum*, to command: *Sorbeo*, *sorbes*, *sor-
tui*, and *sorps*, *sorbere*, *sorptum*, to sup up: *Mulceo*, *mulecs*, *mulsi*,
mulcere, *mulsum*, to assuage: *Luco*, *lucet*, *luxi*, *luere*, to shine:
Sedeo, *sedes*, *sedui*, *sedere*, *lectum*, to sit: *Video*, *vides*, *vidi*, *videre*,
visum, to see: *Prandeo*, *prander*, *prandi* or *pransum* *sum* vel *lui*,
prandere, to dine: *Strideo*, *strides*, *stridi*, *stridere*, to make a noise
or whizzing. These four do double the first syllable: *as*,
Pendeo, *pendes*, *pendui*, *pendere*, *pensum*, to hang or to be har-
ged: *Mordeo*, *mordes*, *memordi*, *mordere*, *mortum*, to bite: *Spon-
deo*, *spondes*, *spospondi*, *spondere* *sponsum*, to promise: *Tondeo*,
tondes, *tondi*, *tondere*, *tonsum* to clip or sheare, to reave or
mowe: *Suadeo*, *suades*, *suasi*, *suadere*, *lustrum* to counsell: *Rideo*,
rides, *risi*, *ridere*, *risum*, to laugh: *Ardeo*, *ardet*, *arsi*, *ardere*, *arsum*, to
burne, or to be hot.

Geo, *Geo*, in the Present tense, having *i* or *r* before it, is turned
into *si* in the Preterperfect tense: *as*, *Urgeo*, *urges*, *urxi*, *urgere*,
ursum, to urge: *Mulgeo*, *malges*, *mulsi* or *mulxi*, *mulgere*, *mulsi* or
mulsum, to milke: *Frigeo*, *figes*, *frixi*, *frigere*, to be cold:
Lugeo, *luges*, *luxi*, *lugere*, *lucum*, to lament: *Augeo*, *auges*, *auxi*,
augere, *auxum*, to increase.

L

Pleo,

As, in the Present
tense, is *avi* in the
Preterperfect
tense: *as*, *No nas*,
navi, *nare*, *navi*,
tai, *vocitavi*: ex-
cept *Lavo*, *lavis*,
juvo, *juvi*, *nexo*,
nexas, *secu*, *secui*,
neco, *nequi*, *mico*,
micui, *plico*, *plieui*,
frico, *fricui*, *domo*,
domui, *tono*, *tonui*,
sono, *sonui*, *crepeo*,
crepit, *crepui*,
& *cubo*, *cubi*, which
selborne end in
avi. *Do*, *das* *dedi*,
dedi, and *sto* *stas*,
steti.

Es is *vix* *Nigreo*,
nigres, *nigui*; ex-
cept *jubeo*, *jussi*,
sorbeo, *sorbus*, and
mulceo, *mulsi*,
mulsi, *mulsi*, *sedes*,
sedui, *video*, *vidi*,
prandeo, *prandi*, and
strideo, *stridi*. These
four doe double
the first syllable:
as, *Pendeo*, *pendui*,
pendui, *pendui*,
spondeo, *spondui*,
and *tondeo*, *tondi*,
frigeo, *fruxi*, *lugeo*,
luxi, and *ardeo*, *arsi*.

Geo with *i* or *r*
before it is *si*: *as*,
Urgeo, *urxi*, *mulgeo*,
mulsi, and *mulxi*,
frigeo, *fruxi*, *lugeo*,
luxi, & *augeo*, *auxi*.

*Leo, levi, les, levi,
deleo, deleui, and
pleo, pleui.*

*Leo, levi, man-
ne, manfi.*

Torqueo, torxi.

Harco, hafi.

*Paruo, parui, mi-
uo, and cornuuo,
parui, and cornu-
erui, and uisui, vi-*

Leo. *Fleo, fleo, fleui, flere, flenum, to weep: Leo, les, levi, leui, to annoint or baptize: and Deleo, the compound thereof, deleui, delere, deleum, to blot out: Pleo, plex, pleui, plere, to fill.*

Nco. *Maneo, maneo, mansi, manere, mansum, to tarry for: Ne-
nes, nevi, nere, nitum, to spume.*

Queo. *Torqueo, torques, torxi, torquere, torxum & torcum, to twist.*

Rco. *Harco, hares, hafi, harere, hafum, to stick fast unto.*

Vco. *Veo, is vi: as, Feruo, fervo, ferui, fervere, to be hot: Ne-
veo, niver, nivi & nixi, nivere, to winke or beckon: Connive,
connives, connivi & connixi, connivere, to wink, or close y open
Cico, cies, civi, ciere, citum, to trouble or provoke: Vico, vi-
vici, viere, vietum, to dine with others.*

The third Conjugation.

*Bo is bi: as, Lam-
bo, lambi, Except
Scribo, scripsi, audivi,
scripsi, and Cumbo,
cumbi.*

*Co is ci: as, Vinc-
o, vici, But Parco,
will have pepper,
and possideo, divi,
and duco, duci.*

*Do is di: as,
Mando, mudi, But
Findo is fidi, fundo
fudi, fundo, mudi,
pendo, pendi, u-
do, extendi, podo, pe-
podi, cado, cecidi;
cedo, to depart, or
give place hath
cessi: also Vado, va-
do, ludo, ludis, divi-
do, trudo, clauda,
plando, and rado
have fi.*

*Go is xi: as, Jun-
go, juxi, But be-
fore go is si: as,
spargo, sparsi. But
Lego hath legi, ego,
ego, tango, tetigi,
pungo, punxi, and
frango, frangi, and
frango, frangi, to
bargaine, hath pe-
pigit, to joyne pe-
o ang, pauxi.*

The third Conjugation formeth the **Preterperfect** tense as followeth. **Bo**, in the **Present** tense is **bi** in the **Preterperfect** tense: **as**, *Lambo, lambis, lambi, lambere to lick. Scribo, scribis, scripsi, scribere, scriptum, to write: Nubui, nupsi and nuptus sum vel fui, nubere, nuptum, to be married to a man: and this old Verb, Cumbo, cumbis, cumbi, cumbere, cubitum, to lie downe.*

Co. *Co is ci: as, Vincio, vincis, vici, vincere, victum, to overcome: Parco, parcis, peperci, and parsi, parcere, parsum, to spare: Dicis, dixi, dicere, dictum, to say: Duco, ducis, duxi, ducere, ductum, to lead, or marrie.*

Do. *Do is di: as, Mando, mandis, mandi, mudere, mansum, to order: But, Scindo, sciendis, is scidi, scindere, scissum, to cut or divide: Findo, findis, fidi, findere, fissum, to cleave: Fundo, fundis, fudi, fundere, fufum, to melt or pour out: Tundo, tundis, nudi, tundere, nufum, to beat or knock: Pendo, pendis, pendi, pendere, pensum, to hang, weigh, or pace: Tendo, tendis, extendi, tendere, tensum and tensum, to stretch or draw: Podo, pedis, pepodi, pedere, pedatum, to fart: Cado, cadis, cecidi, cadere, casum, to fall or happen: Cedo, cedis, cecidi, cedere, casum, to bear: Cedo, cedis, cessi, cedere, cessum, to depart or give place: These following doe turne do into fi: as, Vado, vadis, vasi, vadere, vasum, to go: Rado, radis, rasi, radere, rasum, to shave: Ludo, ludis, ludi, ludere, lufum, to play: Divido, dividis, divisi, dividere, divisum, to divide: Trudo, trudas, trudi, trudere, trufum, to thrust: C audio, claudis, clausi, claudere, clausum, to shut or stop: Plaudo, plaudis, plausi, plaudere, plausum, to clap hands for joy: Rudo, rodus, rosi, rodere, rosum, to gnaw.*

G. *Go is xi: as, Jungo, jungis, junxi, jungere, junctum, to joyne: But if it come before go, it is si: as, spargo, spargis, sparsi, spargere, sparum, to sprinkle: But Lego, legis hath legi, legere, lectum, to read: Ago, agis, egi, agere, actum, to doe: Tango, tangis, tetigi, tangere, tactum, to touch: Pungo, pungis, punxi, and pungi, pungere, punctum, to prick or sting: Pango, pangis, pepigi, pangere, pactum, to bargain: Pango, pangis, pegi, pangere, pactum, to joyne: Pango, pangis, panxi, pangere, pactum, to sing.*

Ho [xi] : **as**, Traho, trahis, traxi, trahere, tractum, to draw : and Veho, vehis, vixi, vehere, vectum, to carry.

Lo [si] : **as**, Colo, colis, colui, colere, cultum, to worship : **Ex-**
cept, Psallo, psallis, psalli, psallere, to sing : and Sallo, salis, salii,
salere, salum, to season with salt : Vello, vellis, hach velli and
vulsi, vellere, vulsum, to pluck up : Fallo, fallis, fefelli, fallere, falsum,
to deceive : Cello, cellis, ceculi, cellere, cullum, to break : and
Pello, pellis, pepuli, pellere, pulsus, to drive out, or away.

Mo [si] : **as**, Vomo, vomis, vomui, vomere, vomitum, to vomit :
But, Emo, emis, hach emi, emere, emptum, to buy : Como, comis,
compsi, comere, comptum, to combe, or argue : Promo, promis,
prompsi, promere, promptum, to draw, set a breath, or utter : De-
mo, demis, dempsi, demere, demptum, to take away : Sumo, sumis,
sumpsi, sumere, sumptum, to take : and Premo, premis, pressi, premere,
pressum, to press, or beat.

No [si] : **as**, Sino, finis, fini, sinere, finitum, to suffer : **Except**,
Temo, temis, tempfi, temere, temptum, to concern : Serno, ser-
naris, stravi, sternere, stratum, to strew : Spero, spernis, sprevi,
spenere, spretum, to despise : Lino, linis, sevi, lini & livi, linere,
litum, to smear over or dabbe : Cerno, cernis, crevi, cerne, cere-
rum to discern : Gigno, gignis, genui, gignere, genitum, to beget :
Pono, ponis, posui, ponere, positum, to put, or set : Cano, canis,
cecini, canere, carum, to sing, indite poetically, or play upon
instruments, to praise or prophesie.

Po [si] : **as** scalpo, scalpis, scalpsi, scalpere, scalptum, to
scratch : **Except**, Rumpo, rumpis, habing rupi, rumpere, ruptum,
to break : Strepo, strepis, strexi, strepere, strepitum, to make a
noise with hands and feet : and Crepo, crepis, crexi, crepere,
crepitum, to give a crack, or crash.

Quo [si] : **as**, Linguo, linguis, liqui, lingvere, licum, to leave,
or trespass : **Except**, Coquo, coquis, coxi, coquere, coctum, to seeth,
play the cooke, or prepare to beate and connect.

Ro [si] : **as**, Sero, seris, sevi, serere, satum, to plant and sow :
Sero seris, sevi, serere, sertum, to approach to, set by, or lay in or-
der : Vero, veris, verri, and verfi, verrere, versum, to brush, or
sweep : Uro, uris, uffi, urere, ultum, to burne or torment : Gero,
geris, gessi, gerere, gestum, to beare : Quero, quaris, quaxi, quere-
re, quaxum, to seeke : Tero, teris, trivi, terere, tritum, to trare, or
weare by diminishing : and Curro, curris, cucurri, currere, cursum,
to runne or slow.

So [si] : **as**, Accerso, accersis, accersivi, accersere, accersitum,
to goe to call : Arcesso, arcessis, arcessivi, arcessere, arcessitum,
to go to call : Incesso, incellis, incelsivi, incelsere, incelsitum, to re-
vile : and Laccio, lacciois, laccioivi, laccioere, laccioitum, to pro-
voke in speech : **But**, Capesso, capellis, hach capessi, and capessi-
vi, capessere, capessitum, to take : Facesso, facellis, facessi, facesse-
re, facessitum, to see about to do : Viso, visis, visi, visere, visum,
to goe to see : and Pingo, pinxis, pinsui, and pinxi, pinere, pinsum,
pinsum, and pistum, to bake.

Seo [si] : **as**, Pasci, pascis, pavi, pascere, pastum, to feed :
But Posco posseis, hach poscei, poscere, to require : Disco, discis,
didici, discere, to learne : and Quinisco, quiniscis, quexi, quiniscere,
to nod with the head.

Ho [si] : **as**, Traho, trahis, traxi, trahere, tractum, to draw :
Veho, vehis, vixi, vehere, vectum, to carry.

Lo [si] : **as**, Colo, colis, colui, colere, cultum, to worship : **Ex-**
cept, Psallo, psallis, psalli, psallere, to sing : and Sallo, salis, salii,
salere, salum, both which have salii : Vello hach velli, de
vulsi, fallo, fefelli, cello, to break, ce-
culi, & pello, pepuli.
Mo [si] : **as**, Vomo, vomis, vomui, vomere, vomitum, to vomit :
But, Emo, emis, hach emi, emere, emptum, to buy : Como, comis,
compsi, comere, comptum, to combe, or argue : Promo, promis,
prompsi, promere, promptum, to draw, set a breath, or utter : De-
mo, demis, dempsi, demere, demptum, to take away : Sumo, sumis,
sumpsi, sumere, sumptum, to take : and Premo, premis, pressi, premere,
pressum, to press, or beat.

No [si] : **as**, Sino, finis, fini, sinere, finitum, to suffer : **Except**,
Temo, temis, tempfi, temere, temptum, to concern : Serno, ser-
naris, stravi, sternere, stratum, to strew : Spero, spernis, sprevi,
spenere, spretum, to despise : Lino, linis, sevi, lini & livi, linere,
litum, to smear over or dabbe : Cerno, cernis, crevi, cerne, cere-
rum to discern : Gigno, gignis, genui, gignere, genitum, to beget :
Pono, ponis, posui, ponere, positum, to put, or set : Cano, canis,
cecini, canere, carum, to sing, indite poetically, or play upon
instruments, to praise or prophesie.

Quo [si] : **as**, Linguo, linguis, liqui, lingvere, licum, to leave,
or trespass : **Except**, Coquo, coquis, coxi, coquere, coctum, to seeth,
play the cooke, or prepare to beate and connect.

Ro [si] : **as**, Sero, seris, sevi, serere, satum, to plant and sow :
Sero seris, sevi, serere, sertum, to approach to, set by, or lay in or-
der : Vero, veris, verri, and verfi, verrere, versum, to brush, or
sweep : Uro, uris, uffi, urere, ultum, to burne or torment : Gero,
geris, gessi, gerere, gestum, to beare : Quero, quaris, quaxi, quere-
re, quaxum, to seeke : Tero, teris, trivi, terere, tritum, to trare, or
weare by diminishing : and Curro, curris, cucurri, currere, cursum,
to runne or slow.

So [si] : **as**, Accerso, accersis, accersivi, accersere, accersitum,
to goe to call : Arcesso, arcessis, arcessivi, arcessere, arcessitum, to go
to call : Incesso, incellis, incelsivi, incelsere, incelsitum, to re-
vile : and Laccio, lacciois, laccioivi, laccioere, laccioitum, to pro-
voke in speech : **But**, Capesso, capellis, hach capessi, and capessi-
vi, capessere, capessitum, to take : Facesso, facellis, facessi, facesse-
re, facessitum, to see about to do : Viso, visis, visi, visere, visum,
to goe to see : and Pingo, pinxis, pinsui, and pinxi, pinere, pinsum,
pinsum, and pistum, to bake.

Seo [si] : **as**, Pasci, pascis, pavi, pascere, pastum, to feed :
But Posco posseis, hach poscei, poscere, to require : Disco, discis,
didici, discere, to learne : and Quinisco, quiniscis, quexi, quiniscere,
to nod with the head.

To

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Compound Verbs.

The Simple Verb and the Compound, have both one Preterperfect tense: as, Doceo, doces, docui, docere, doctum, to teach: and, Edoceo, edoces, edocui, edocere, edoctum, to teach thoroughly. But the Syllable which is doubled in the Simple Verb, is not doubled in the Compound, except in these three: *Præcurro*, *præcurris*, *præcurri*, *præcurrere*, *præcursum*, to run before: *Excurro*, *excurris*, *excurri*, *excurrere*, *excursum*, to run out: and, *Repungo*, *repungis*, *repungi*, *repungi*, *repungere*, *repunctum*, to prick again: and in the Compounds of *Do*, *das*, *dedi*, *dare*, *datum*, to give; of *Sto*; *stas*, *stet*, *stare*, *statum*, to stand: and of *Posco*; *poscis*, *poposci*, *poscere*, to ask.

Plico, *plicas*, *placui*, *plicare*, *placitum*, to fold, being compounded with Subj. or with a Noun, will have *Plicavi*: as, *Supplico*, *supplicas*, *supplicavi*, *supplicare*, *supplicatum*, humbly to intreat: *Multiplico*, *multiplicas*, *multiplicavi*, *multiplicare*, *multiplicatum*, to multiply or increase. But, these have *ui*, or *avi*: as, *Applico*, *applicas*, *applicui*, or *applicavi*, *applicare*, *applicatum*, or *applicatum*, to apply unto, or arrive: *Complico*, *complicas*, *complicui*, or *complicavi*, *complicare*, *complicitum*, or *complicatum*, to fold up: *Replico*, *replicas*, *replicui*, or *replicavi*, *replicare*, *replicatum*, or *replicatum*, to unfold: and, *Explico*, *explicas*, *explicui*, or *explicavi*, *explicare*, *explicitum*, or *explicitum*, to stretch out, or declare.

Oleo, *oles*, *oleui*, *olere*, *olitum*, to labour well or ill: but the Compounds thereof have *Oleui*: as, *Aboleo*, *aboles*, *aboleui*, *abolere*, *abolutum*, to abolish: *Adoleo*, *adoles*, *adoleui*, *adolere*, *adolutum*, to burn sweet things: *Exoleo*, *exoles*, *exoleui*, *exolere*, *exoletum*, to wear old: *Inoleo*, *inoles*, *inolevi*, *inolere*, *inoletum*, to wear great: *Oboleo*, *oboles*, *oboleui*, *obolere*, to sink. But these are formed as the Simple Verb: as, *Redoleo*, *redoles*, *redolui*, *redolere*, *redolutum*, to labour strongly: and, *Suboleo*, *suboles*, *subolui*, *subolere*, *subolutum*, to labour a little.

All the Compounds of *Pungo*, *pungis*, *punxi*, & *pupugi*, *pungere*, *punctum*, to prick, have *punxi*. But, *Repungo*, *repungis*, *hath repupugi*, and sometimes *repunxi*, *repungere*, *repunctum*, to prick again.

The Compounds of *Do*, *das*, *dedi*, *dare*, *datum*, to give; being of the third Conjugation, will have *didi*: as, *Addo*, *addis*, *addidi*, *addere*, *additum*, to add: *Credo*, *credis*, *credidi*, *credere*, *credidum*, to believe: *Edo*, *edis*, *edidi*, *edere*, *editum*, to set out, or to divulgate: *Dedo*, *dedis*, *dedidi*, *dedere*, *deditum*, to yield: *Reddo*, *reddis*, *reddidi*, *reddere*, *redditum*, to restore: *Perdo*, *perdis*, *perdidi*, *perdere*, *perditum*, to lose: *Abdo*, *abdis*, *abdidi*, *abdere*, *abditum*, to hide: *Obdo*, *obdis*, *obdidi*, *obdere*, *obditum*, to set against: *Condo*, *condis*, *condidi*, *condere*, *conditum*, to hide, or build: *Indo*, *indis*, *indidi*, *indere*, *inditum*, to put in: *Trado*, *tradis*, *tradidi*, *tradere*, *traditum*, to deliver: *Prodo*, *prodidi*, *prodere*, *proditum*, to betray: and, *Vendo*, *vendis*, *vendidi*, *vendere*, *venditum*, to sell. But, *Abcondo*, *abcondis*, *hath abscondi*, *abscondere*, *absconditum*, to hide.

The Compounds of *Sto*, *stas*, *stet*, *stare*, *statum*, to stand, have

The Simple and Compound Verbs have both one Preterperfect tense: as, *Docui*, & *edocui*; But the Syllable doubled in the Simple, is not so in the Compound; except in these three; *Præcurro*, *excurro*, *repungo*: and in the Compounds of *Do*, *dis*, *seo*, & *posco*. *Plico*, compounded with sub, or with a Noun, *hath plicavi*: as, *Supplico*, & *multiplico*. But these following have *ui*, or *avi*: as, *Applico*; *complico*, *replico*, & *explico*.

Though the Simple Verb, *Oleo*, have *oleui*; yet every Compound thereof will rather have *oleui*. But *Redoles*, & *suboles*, are formed like the Simple Verb. All the Compounds of *Pungo*; have *punxi*: but *repungo*, *hath repupugi*, & *repunxi*. The Compounds of *Do*, of the third Conjugation, have *didi*: as, *Addo*, *credo*, *edo*, *dedo*, *reddo*, *perdo*, *abdo*, *obdo*, *condo*, *indo*, *trado*, *prodo*, & *vendo* but *abscondo*, *hath abscondi*.

The Compounds of *Sto*, *stas*, have *stet*.

These Simple Verbs, being compounded, do turn the first Vowel of the Present, and of the Preterperfect tense, into *e*: as, *Dampno, dampno, dampnavi, dampnare, dampnatum, to condemn*: *Lactis, lactis, lactavi, lactare, lactatum, to give milk, or to deceive with the words*: *Sacro, sacras, sacravi, sacrare, sacratum, to dedicate*: *Fallis, fellis, fallere, falsum, to deceive*: *Arceo, arces, arcui, arcere, to keep away*: *Tractio, tractas, tractavi, tractare, tractatum, to handle, or to treat*: *Fatiscor, fatisceris, vel fatiscere, fessus sum vel fui, fatisci, to be weary*: *Partio, partis, partivi, partire, partitum, to part*: *Carpo, carpi, carpere, carptum, to gather, or crop*: *Patro, patras, patravi, patrare, patratum, to commit some evil*: *Scando, scandis, scandi, scandere, scandum, to climb*: *Spargo, spargis, sparsi, spargere, sparsum, to sprinkle, or sparkle*: *Pario, paris, peperis, parere, partum, to bring forth*. The two Compounds of which *Pario*, have *peri*: as, *Comperio, comperis, comperi, comperire, compectum, to find by diligent search*: and, *Reperio, reperis, reperi, reperire, reptum, to find*: but the other have *Peri*: as, *Aperio, aperis, apertum, aperire, apertum, to open*: and, *Operio, operis, operui, operire, opertum, to cover*.

These two Compounds of *Pisco*, *pascis, pavi, pascere, pastum, to feed*, will have *Pesci*: namely, *Compesco, compescis, compescui, compescere, to repress*: and, *Dispesco, dispescis, dispescui, dispescere, to devour*: but the other do follow the simple Verbs, as, *Epasco, epascis, epavi, epascere, epasum, to eat up*.

Verbs, changing the first vowel every where, into *i*.

These Verbs being compounded, do change the first vowel into *i*: namely, *Habeo, habes, habui, habere, habitum, to have*: *lateo, latet, latui, latere, latitum, to be hid*: *Salio, salis, salii, salire, saltum, to leap, or dance*: *Suavis, statuis, statui, statuer, statutum, to place*: *Cado, cadis, cecidi, cadere, casum, to fall, or happen*: *Ledo, laedis, laesi, ledere, laesum, to hurt*: *Pango, pangis, habui, pangi, pangere, pactum, to join*: *Cano, canis, cecini, canere, cantum, to sing*: *Quaeris, quaerivi, quaerere, quaeritum, to seek*: *Cado, cadis, cecidi, cadere, casum, to beat*: *Tango, tangis, tetigi, tangere, tactum, to touch*: *Egero, egere, egui, egere, to need*: *Teneo, tenes, tenui, tenere, tentum, to hold*: *Taceo, tacet, tacui, tacere, tacitum, to keep silence*: and, *Rapio, rapis, rapui, rapere, rapitum, to snatch away*: as, of *Rapio, rapui* & *Eripio, eripis, eripui, eripere, ereptum, to pull out*.

The Compounds of *Cano*, *ca. i. cecini, canere, cantum, to sing*; have *ui*: as, *Concino, concinis, concinui, concinere, concinentum, to agree together in one tune, to sing*.

So of *Placeo*, *places, placeui, placere, placitum, cometh by composition*, *Displaceo, displacis, displacui, displacere, displacitum, to displease*. But these do follow the simple Verb: as, *Complaceo, complacis, complacui, complacere, complacitum, to please, or like well*: and, *Perplaceo, perplaces, perplacui, perplacere, perplacitum, to please thoroughly*.

These four Compounds of *Pango*, *pangis, pangi, pangere, pactum, to keep, or still*: as, *Depango, depangis, depangi, depangere, depactum, to sit ten down, to plant*: *Oppango, oppangis, oppangi, oppangere, oppactum, to sit ten down, to plant*: *Oppango, oppangis, oppangi, oppangere, oppactum, to sit ten down, to plant*.

These Verbs being compounded, do change the first vowel into *i*; namely, *Habeo, habes, habui, habere, habitum, to have*: *lateo, latet, latui, latere, latitum, to be hid*: *Salio, salis, salii, salire, saltum, to leap, or dance*: *Suavis, statuis, statui, statuer, statutum, to place*: *Cado, cadis, cecidi, cadere, casum, to fall, or happen*: *Ledo, laedis, laesi, ledere, laesum, to hurt*: *Pango, pangis, habui, pangi, pangere, pactum, to join*: *Cano, canis, cecini, canere, cantum, to sing*: *Quaeris, quaerivi, quaerere, quaeritum, to seek*: *Cado, cadis, cecidi, cadere, casum, to beat*: *Tango, tangis, tetigi, tangere, tactum, to touch*: *Egero, egere, egui, egere, to need*: *Teneo, tenes, tenui, tenere, tentum, to hold*: *Taceo, tacet, tacui, tacere, tacitum, to keep silence*: and, *Rapio, rapis, rapui, rapere, rapitum, to snatch away*: as, of *Rapio, rapui* & *Eripio, eripis, eripui, eripere, ereptum, to pull out*.

The Compounds of *Cano*, *ca. i. cecini, canere, cantum, to sing*; have *ui*: as, *Concino, concinis, concinui, concinere, concinentum, to agree together in one tune, to sing*.

So of *Placeo*, *places, placeui, placere, placitum, cometh by composition*, *Displaceo, displacis, displacui, displacere, displacitum, to displease*. But these do follow the simple Verb: as, *Complaceo, complacis, complacui, complacere, complacitum, to please, or like well*: and, *Perplaceo, perplaces, perplacui, perplacere, perplacitum, to please thoroughly*.

These four Compounds of *Pango*, *pangis, pangi, pangere, pactum, to keep, or still*: as, *Depango, depangis, depangi, depangere, depactum, to sit ten down, to plant*: *Oppango, oppangis, oppangi, oppangere, oppactum, to sit ten down, to plant*: *Oppango, oppangis, oppangi, oppangere, oppactum, to sit ten down, to plant*.

are, oppadum, to fasten, or joyn unto, to plant about: Circumpango, circumpanis circumpegi, circumpangere, circumpackum, to fasten about with earth: and, Repango, repangis, repegi, repangere, repadum, to unite, or disjoyn.

These four Compounds, of Manco, manes, mansi, manere, mansum, to carry for; have minui: namely, Præminco, præminco, præminui, præminere, to exceed others: Eminco, emines, eminui, eminere, to appear before others, to passe others: Promineo, promines, prominui, prominerere, to hang out in sight: and, Imminco, immines, imminui, imminere, to hang over. But the rest do follow the Simple Verb.

The Compounds of Scalpo, scalpis, scalpui, scalpere, scalpum, to claw, or scratch, of Calco, calcas, calcavi, calcare, calcatum, to tread upon; and of Salco, sales, saltavi, saltare, saltatum, to leap, or dance: do turn a into u; as, Exculpo, exculpis, exculpui, exculpere, exculpum, to carve: Inculco, inculcas, inculcavi, inculcare, inculcatum, to repeat often: and, Resulto, resultas, resultavi, resultare, resultatum, to rebound.

The Compounds of Claudio, claudis, clausi, cludere, clausum, to shut; of Quasco, quatis, quassi, quæere, quassum, to shake; and of Lavo, lava, lavi, lavare, lotum, lautum, & lavatum, to wash; do reject a: as, of Claudio, occludo, occludis, occlusi, occludere, occlusum, to shut fast: Excludo, excludis, exclusi, excludere, exclusum, to shut out; of Quatio, percutio, percutis, percussui, percutere, percussum, to smite: Executio, executio, executi, executum, to smite out: and of Lavo, proluo, proluo, proluere, prolutum, all to wash; Diluo, diluis, dilui, diluere, dilutum, to purge with washing.

Verbs changing the first Vowell every where into i,
except in the Preterperfect tense.

These Verbs being compounded, do alwayes change the first Vowell of the Present tense into i; but never of the Preterperfect tense: Ago, agis, egi, agere, actum, to do: Emo, emis, emi, emere, emptum, to buy: Sedeo, sedes, sedi, sedere, sessum, to sit: Rego, regis, rexi, regere, redum, to rule: Frango, frangis, fregi, frangere, fractum, to break: Capió, capis, cepi, capere, capum, to take: Jacio, jacis, jeci, jacere, jadum, to cast: Lateo, latet, latui, latere, latum, to be hidden: Lacio, lacis, lexi, & lacui, lacere, lectum, & lacinum, to allure: Specio, specis, spexi, specere, spectum, to behold: and, Pileo, pileis, pili, pileare, pressum, to presse: as, Frango, refringo, refringis, reilegi, refringere, refractum, to break open: and, Capio, incipio, incipis, incepi, incipere, inceptum, to begin. But, Perago, peragis, peregi, peragere, peractum, to finish: Satago, satagis, satagi, satagere, to be busy: or to do with speed to endeavour: and, Coëno, coënis, coëni, coëhere, coëntum, to buy with other: do follow the simple Verbs.

And of Ago, dego, degis, hath degi, degener, to lbe: and, Cogó, cogis, hath coëgi, coagere, coactum, to compell, or gather together. So also, of Rego, pergo, pergis, hath perrexi, peregere, perredum, to go forward: and, Surgo, surgis, hath surrexi, surgere, surretum, to arise: the middle Syllable of the Present tense being taken away.

Facio, facis, feci, facere, factum, to do; varieth nothing, unless it

oppango, circumpanco, & repango, do keep a still.

These four Compounds of Manco, mansi, have minui, namely, Præminco, emineo, promineo, & imminco. But the rest do follow the Simple Verb. The Compounds of Scalpo, calco, salco, do turn a into u; as, Exculpo, inculco, & resulto.

The Compounds of Claudio, quatio, & lavo, do reject a: as, of Claudio, occludo, excludo; of quatio, percutio, executio; and of Lavo, proluo, diluo.

These Verbs, Ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango, capio, jacio, lateo, specio, & pileo, do ever in composition, change the first vowell of the Present tense into i; but never of the Preterperfect tense: as, Frango, refringo, refrigi, & capio, incipio, incepi. But Perago, & satago, do follow the simple Verbs. And of Ago, dego, hath degi, & cogó, coëgi. So also, of rego, pergo, hath perrexi, & surgo, surrexi, the middle syllable of the Present tense, being taken away.

Facio, varieth nothing, unless it

be compounded with a Preposition: as, *Olfacio, olfacis, olfecit, olfacere, olfactum, to smell*: *Calfacio, calfacis, calfeci, calfacere, calfactum, to make hot*: and, *Infacio, infacis, infeci, infacere, infactum, to dye with colours*.

Lego, being compounded with Re, se, per, pra, sub & trans, keepeth the vowel of the Present tense: but otherwise, it is turned into i: of which, these three only, Intelligo, diligo, & negligo, have lexi, and all the rest, legi.

The Supines come of the Preterperfect tenses, *Bi* is sum: as, *Bibi, bibitum*.

Ci is sum: as, *Vici, victum, icti, ictum, feci, factum, & jeci, jactum*.

Di is sum: as, *Vidi, visum*. And some do double the *is*, *Pandi, pissum, sedi, sessum, scidi, scissum, fidi, fissum & fodi, fossum*.

Not: here, that the first Syllable which is doubled in the Preterperfect tense, is not doubled in the Supine: as, *Torondi, consum, cae di, casum, et cidi, casum, tetendi, trassum, & tentum, truxi, truxum, pepedi, pedatum, & dedi, datum*.

Gi is sum: as, *Legi, lectum, pegi, & peger, pactum, fregi, fractum, revigi, victum, & fugi, fugitum, palium, & tuli, latum, ruptum, & cetera, cantum, cepi, capum, capi, coctum,*

be compounded with a Preposition: as, *Olfacio, olfacis, olfecit, olfacere, olfactum, to smell*: *Calfacio, calfacis, calfeci, calfacere, calfactum, to make hot*: and, *Infacio, infacis, infeci, infacere, infactum, to dye with colours*.

Lego legis, legi, legere, lectum, to read; being compounded with re, se, per, pra, sub, and trans, keepeth the vowel of the Present tense: but otherwise it is turned into i: of which, these three only have in the Preterperfect tense, lexi; namely, Intelligo, intelligis, intellexi, intelligere, intellectum, to understand: Diligo, diligis, dilexi, diligere, dilectum, to love: and, Negligo, negligis, neglexi, negligere, neglectum, to neglect: and all the rest, legi.

Of the Supines of Simple Verbs.

Bi. The Supines are formed of the Preterperfect tenses, as followeth. *Bi*, in the Preterperfect tense, is sum, in the Supine: as, *Bibo, bibis, bibi, bibere, bibitum, to drink*.

Ci. *Di.* *Ci* is sum: as, *Vincio, vincis, vici, vincere, victum, to overcome*: *Ico, icis, icti, ictum, to smite*: *Facio, facis, feci, facere, factum, to do*: *Jacio, jadis, jeci, jacere, jactum, to cast*. *Di* is sum: as, *Video, vides, vidi, videre, visum, to see*. Some do double the letter *c*: as, *Pando, pandis, pandi, pandere, passum, to open*: *Sedo, sedes, sedi, sedere, sessum, to sit*: *Scindo, scindis, scidi, scindere, scissum, to cut*: *Fodio, fodis, fodi, fodere, fossum, to dig*: *Findo, findis, fidi, findere, fissum, to cleave*.

Here also is to be noted, that the first Syllable, which is doubled in the Preterperfect tense, is not doubled in the Supine: as, *Tondeo, tondes, totondi, tondere, tonsum, to clip*: *Creo, credis, cecidi, credere, casum, to beat*: *Cado, cadis, cecidi, cadere, casum, to fall*: *Tendo, tendis, tetendi, tendere, tentum, to bend*: *Tundo, tundis, turudi, tundere, tunsum, to knock*: *Pedo, pedis, pepedi, pedere, pedum, to fart*: and, *Do, das, dedi, dare, datum, to give*.

Gi. *Gi* is sum: as, *Lego, legis, legi, legere, lectum, to read*: *Pango, pangis, pegi, to join*: and, *pepi, to bargain*, *pango, pactum*: *Fraugo, frangis, fregi, frangere, fractum, to break*: *Tango, tangis, tetigi, tangere, tactum, to touch*: *Agro, agis, egi, agere, actum, to do*: *Pungo, pungis, pupugi, pungere, punctum, to prick*: and, *Fugio, fugis, fugi, fugere, fugitum, to flee*.

Li. *Li* is sum: as, *Sallo, salis, salli, fallere, falsum, to scam with salt*: *Pello, pellis, pepuli, pellere, vulsum, to drive out*: *Cello, cellis, ceculi, cellere, culsum, to smite, or break*: *Fallo, fallis, fefelli, fallere, falsum, to deceive*: *Vello, vellis, velli, vellere, vulsum, to pluck up*: and, *Fero, fers, tuli, ferre, latum, to bear, or suffer*.

Mi, ni, Mi, ni, pi, qui, are tum: as, *Emo, emis, emi, emere, emptum, to buy*: *Venio, venis, veni, venire, ventum, to come*: *Cano, canis, cecini, canere, cantum, to sing*: *Capio, capis, cepi, capere, capum, to take*: *Cepio, cepis, cepi, capere, cepum, to begin*: *Rumpo*

Li is sum: as, *Sallo, salsum, pello, pulsum, cello, culsum, fello, falsum, & tuli, latum, Mi, ni, pi, qui, are tum*: as, *Emi, emptum, rumpi,*

*rumpis, rupi, rumpere, ruptum, to break: Linguo, linguis, liqui, lin-
quere, lictum, to leave.*

Ri is sum: *as, Verro, veris, verri, verrere, verum, to sweep, or
dunt: but Pario, paris, peperit, parere, hath partum, to bring
forth young.*

Si is sum: *as, Viso, visis, visi, visere, visum, to goe to see:
Mitto, mittis, misi, mittere, hath missum, the letter i being dou-
bled, to send: But Fulcio, fulcis, fulsi, fulcire hath fultum, to un-
derprop: Haurio, hauris, hauri, haurire, haurtum, to draw: Sarcio,
sarcis, sarcis, sarcire, sartum, to patch: Farcio, sarcis, farsis, sarcire,
sartum, to stuffe: Uro, uris, ussi, urere, ustum, to burne: Gero,
geris, gessi, gerere, gestum, to beare: Torqueo, torques, torxi,
torquere, tortum, and torsum, to twist: and Indulgeo, indulges,
indulsi, indulgere, indultum and indulsim, to let much by, or to
make too much of one.*

Psi is prum: *as, Scribo, scribis, scripsi, scribere, scriptum,
to write: Except Cambio, cambis, campsi, cambere, which hath
campsum, to exchange.*

Ti is tum: *as, Stet, stas, steti, stare, to stand: and Sisto, sistis,
stisi, sistere, to make to stand, have statum: except Verto, vertis,
verti, vertere, which hath verum to turne.*

Vi is tum: *as, Flo, flas, flavi, flare, statum, to blow: Except
Pasco, pascis, pavi, pascere, pastum, to feed: Lavo, lavas, lavi, lavare,
lotum, lautum & lavatum, to wash: Peto, potas, potavi, potare, po-
tum, & potatum, to drinke: Favco, faves, favi, favere, fautum, to fa-
vour: Caveo, caves, cavi, cavere, cautum, to beware: Sero, seris,
sevi, serere statum, to sow: Lino, linis, lini, livi & levi, linere, litum,
to dabble, or smear over: Solvo, solvis, solvi, solvere, solutum, to
loose: Volvo, volvis, volvi, volvere, volutum, to rotate: Singultio,
singultis, singultivi, singultire singultum, to sob: Vaneo, vanis, vz-
nivi, venire, vanum, to be sold: and Sepelio, sepelis, sepelivi, sepe-
lire, sepulcrum, to bury.*

Vi is tum: *as, Domo, domas, domui, domare, domitum, to
tame. Except Verbs in uo, which turne ui into utum: as, Ex-
uo, exuis, exui, exuere, exutum, to put off, or away: But Ruo, ruis,
rui, ruere hath ruinum, to rush or fall: Seco, secas, secui, secare, se-
ctum to cut: Neco, necas, necuinecare, nectum, to kill: Frico,
fricas, fricui, fricare, frictum, to rub: Misceo, misces, miscui, miscere
mistum, to mingle: Amicio, amicis, amicui, amicire, amictum, to
cloath: Torreo, torreo, torrei, tortere tostum, to roast: Doceo, do-
ces, docui, docere, doctum, to teach: Teneo, tenes, tenui, tenere, ten-
tum, to hold: Consulo, consulis, consului, consulere, consultum, to
aske counsell: Alo, alis,alui, alere, altum, & alicum, to nourish:
Salio, salis salui, salire, saltum, to leape: Colo, colis, colui, colere,
cultum, to worship: Occulo, oculis, ocului, oculere, occultum to
hide close: Pingo, pinis, pinsui, pinere, pistum, to bake: Rapio,
rapis, rapui, rapere, raptum, to snatch: Sero, seris, serui, serere, ser-
tum, to approach, or put to: and Texo, texis, texui, texere, textum,*

*rupi, ruptum, & li-
qui, lictum.*

*Ri is sum: as,
Verri, versum: but
peperi, hath par-
tum.*

*Si is sum: as,
Visi, visum, misi,
missum But, fulsi,
hath fultum, hauri,
haurtum, sarcis, sar-
tum, sarcis, sartum,
ussi, ustum, gessi, ge-
stum, torxi, tortum,
& torsum, & in-
dulsi, indultum, &
indulsim.*

*Psi is prum: as,
Scripsi, scriptum:
but campsi hath
campsum.*

*Ti is tum: as;
stati of sto, and sti-
si of sisto, statum;
but verti hath
versum.*

*Vi is tum: as,
Flavi, statum, but
prii hath pastum,
lavi, lotum, lau-
tum, & lavatum,
potavi, potum, &
potatum, favi, fau-
tum, cavi, cautum,
olivi, seris, statum,
livi & lini, litum,
of solvo, solvi, solu-
tum; of volvo,
volvi, volutum,
singultivi, singul-
tum, Vaneo, vanis,
vanui, vanum,
& sepelivi, sepul-
tum.*

*Vi is tum: as;
domui; domitum.
Except Verbs in
uo, because they
turn ui into utum;
as, Exui, exutum.*

But Rui of ruo, hath ruinum, secui, sectum, necui, nectum, fricui, frictum, miscui, mistum,
amicui, amictum, torui, tostum, docui, doctum, tenui, tentum, consului, consultum, alui, alium, &
alium, salui, saltum, colui, cultum, ocului, occultum, pinsui, pistum, rapui, raptum, ol seris, se-
rum, & texui, textum.

But these do
turn all into sum:
for, Censēs hath
censum, cellui, cel-
sion, mite, missui,
messum, nexui, ne-
cium, pexui, pexum,
pauui, pissum, &
cerui, cassum, & ca.
vium.

Xi is ſum : as,
Venci, victum .
Dat five do reject
m: as, ſinxi, ſictum,
mixinxi, miſtum ,
pixinxi piſtum ſtrin-
xi, ſtrictum, & vin-
xi, viſtum. Flexi

to weave or knit. But these do turne in three sum: for, Con-
cense, censui, censere, hath censum, to thinke: cello, collis, collis
cellere, celsum, to breake: Mero, medii, messui, metere, medium, in
reape or mowe: Necto, nectis, nexui, nectere, nexum, to knit, Pe-
ctis, pexui, pectere, pexum, to hembe: Pateo, pates, patui, pax-
psum, to be open: and Careo, cares, carui, carere, casum & car-
tum, to want.

Xi. Xi is *Sum*: as, *Vincio, vincis, vixi, vincere, victum* to bind. But these five next following do reject the letter, *n*: as, *ingo, fingis, finxi, fingere, fidum, to fashion*: *Mingo, mingis, mui, mingere, muium, to pisse*: *Pingo, pingis, pinxi, pingere, pidum, to paint*: *Stingo, stringis, strixi, stringere, stridum, to strain*: and *Ringo, ringis, rinxi, ringere, ridum, to grime, or vere*. *Allo, Flecto, flectis, flexi, flectere, hath flexum, to bend*: *Plecto, plecti, plexi, plectere, plexum, to punish*: *Figo, figis, fixi, figere, fixum, to fasten*: and *Fluo, fluo, fluxi, fluere, fluxum, to flow*.

Of the Supines of compound Verbs.

Compound Supines.

Every Compound Verb hath the same Supine with the Simple; though not always the same syllables. The Compound of *transum*, a being taken away is *transum*. Of *rauium* a being lost, is made *rauium*: of *salum* *salum*: of *fero*, *fatum*, *ficum*. *captum*, *factum*, *factum*, *raptum*, *captum*, *putum*, *sparsum*, *carptum*, & *fatum*, do in Composition turn a into e.

Eds being compounded hath not *citium*, but *nitium*. Only compounds hath both. Only two compounds of *nitie*, have *nitium*, which are *nitium*, and *nitium*, and all the rest have *nitium*: for, *nitium* is out of use.

Every Compound Supine is formed as the simple: though there is not alwayes the same syllable in them both. The Compounds of Tundo, tundis, tundi, tunder, tunsom, to knock, a fall, hath in Composition rutum, the middle letter i being taken away. So Salio, salis, salui, salire, saltum, to dance, hath saltum, being compounded. Sero, seris habing serui, serere, factum, to sow, hath in composition, sicutum. Also these Verbs following being compounded do in the Supine turne a into e: namely, Capio, capis, cepi, capere, caprum, to take: Facio, facis, feci, facere, factum to be: Jacio, jadis, jeci, jacere, jactum, to cast away: Rapio, rapis, rapui, rapere, raptum, to snatch: Cano, canis, cecini, canere, cantum, to sing: Pario, paris, peperci, parere, paritum, to bring forth: Spargo, spargis, sparsi, spargere, sparsum, to sprinkle: Carpo, carpi, carpsi, carper, carpum, to crop, or pluck up: Farcio, facis, farsis, farcire, farctum, to stuffe.

This Verb *Edo*, *edis* vel *es*, *edi*, *edere* vel *esse*, *esum*, *esu*, vel *estum*, *estu*, to *eate*: being compounded will not have in the Supine *estum*, but *esum*. But this one compound only, *Comedo*, *comedo*, vel comes, *comedi*, *comedere* vel *comesse*, hath both-as, *Comesum*, *comesu*, vel *comesum*, *comestu*, to *eate* up: Oneely two Compounds of *Nosco*, *noscis*, *novi*, *noscere*, *notum*, to *know*, have *nitum*: which are *Cognosco*, *cognoscis*, *cognovi*, *cognoscere* *cognitum*, to *know*: and *Agnosco*, *agnoscis*, *agnovi*, *agnoscere*, *agnitum*, to *know* by some token: to *acknowledge*: and all the rest have *notum*: for *noscitum*, is out of use.

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Verbs in Or.

The Preterperfect tenses of Verbs in or, are formed of the latter Supine, by turning u into us; and adding thereunto. Sum or fui: as, of *Lectus*, to be read: commeth *Lectus sum vel fui*: I have been reade. But of these Verbs, sometimes a Deponent, and sometimes a Commune is to be noted. For, Labor, laboris vel debere, hath lapsus sum vel fui, labi, to slide: Patior, pateris vel patere, passus sum vel fui, pati, to suffer; and his compounds, as, Compator, compateris, vel compatere, compassus sum vel fui, compaci, to suffer together, and Perpetior, perpetueris, vel perpetere, perpassus sum vel fui, perpeti, to suffer thoroughly: Fateor, fateris vel fatere, fassus sum vel fui, fateri, to confesse: and the Compounds thereof, as, Confiteor, confiteris, vel confitere, confessus sum vel fui, confiteri, to confesse, and Dissiteor, dissiteris vel dissitere, dississus sum vel fui, dissiteri, to deny: Gradior, graderis vel gradere, gressus sum vel fui, gradi, to goe by steps: and his Compounds, as, Digredior, digrederis vel digredere, digressus sum vel fui, digredi, to turn aside, or goe from: Fatisco, fatisceris vel fuisse, sessus sum vel fui, fatiscei, to be weary: Metior, metiris vel metire, mensus sum vel fui, metiri, to measure: Utor, uteris vel utere, usus sum vel fui, uri, to use: Ordior, ordiris vel ordire, orditus sum vel fui, to weave, and orsus sum vel fui, to begin a thing, ordiri: Nitor, niteris vel nitere, nitus sum vel fui, niti, to endeavour: Ulciscor, ulcisceris vel ulciscere, ultus sum vel fui, ulcisci, to revenge: Irascor, irasceris vel irascere, iratus sum vel fui, irasci, to be angry: Reor, reris vel rere, ratus sum vel fui, reri, to suppose: Obliviscor, oblivisceris vel obliviscere, oblitus sum vel fui, oblivisci, to forget: Fruor, fruieris vel fruire, fructus, or fruius sum vel fui, frui, to enjoy: Misceor, misereris vel misere, miseris sum vel fui, misceri, to have pity: Tuor, tueris vel tuere, tutus sum vel fui, tueri, though they have for their Supines both tutum and tuitum. Loquor, loqueris vel loquere, loquutus sum vel fui, loqui, to speake: Sequor, sequeris vel sequere, sequutus sum vel fui, sequi, to follow: Experior, experieris vel experire, expertus sum vel fui, experiri, to trie: Paciscor, pacisceris vel paciscere, pactus sum vel fui, pacisci, to make a bargain: Nanciscor, nancisceris vel nanciscere, natus sum vel fui, nancisci, to get or obtaine: Apiscor, an old Verb, apisceris vel apiscere, aptus sum vel fui, apisci, to obtaine, whereof, Adipiscor, adipisceris vel adipiscere, hath adeptus sum vel fui, adipisci, to obtaine: Queror, quereris vel querere, questus sum vel fui, queri, to complain: Prosciscor, proscisceris vel prosciscere, profectus sum vel fui, proscisci, to goe forth, or forward: Expergiscor, expergisceris vel expergiscere, expectatus sum vel fui, expergisci, to awake: Comminiscor, comminisceris vel comminiscere, commentus sum vel fui, comminisci, to invent, imagine, or faine: Nascor, nasceris vel nascere, natus sum vel fui, nasci, to be borne: Morior, moreris vel morere, mortuus sum vel fui, mori, to die: And Orior, oriris vel orire, ortus sum vel fui, oriri, to rise, spring, or beginne.

Verbs in or, have a Preterperfect tense from the latter Supine, by turning u into us, Sum or fui being added thereunto: as, of *lectus*, *lectus sum vel fui*. But of these Verbs, sometimes the Deponent, and sometimes the Commune is to be noted. For, Labor hath lapsus sum vel fui, patior, passus, and his compounds, as, compator, compassus, or perpetior, perpassus, Fateor, fassus, and the compounds thereof, as, confiteor, confessus, and dissiteor, dissessus. Gradior, gressus, & the compounds thereof, as, digredior, digressus. Fatisco, fassus; metior, mensus; uitor, usus; O dior, to weave, orditus, to begin a thing or sus. Nitor, nitus or nitus, ulciscor, ultus; irascor, iratus; Reor, ratus; Obliviscor, oblitus; Fruor, fructus or fruius; Misceor, mixtus; Tuor, tueror, not tutus, but tuitus, though tutum, and tuitum be Supines to them both. Loquor

loquutus; Sequor sequutus; Experior expertus; Paciscor pactus; Nanciscor natus; Apiscor aptus, of which, adipiscor hath adeptus; Queror questus; Prosciscor profectus; Expergiscor experatus; Comminiscor commentus; Nascor natus; Morior mortuus: and Orior ortus.

Of Verbs having a double Preterperfect tense.

These Verbs have the Preterperfect tense of the Active and Passive voice both: as, *Ceno, cenare, cenavi, & cenatus sum. Juro, juravi, & juratus sum. Poto, potavi, & potatus sum. Titubo, titubavi, & titubatus sum. Careo, carui, & caritus sum. Prandeo, prandi, & pransus sum. Placeo, placui, & placatus sum. Vaneo, venvi, & venditus sum. Nubo, nupsi, & nuptus sum. Mereor, merui, & meritus sum. Tædet, tædebat, & tæditum est. Pudet, pudebat, & puditum est. Piget, pigebat, & pigitum est.*

These Verbs have the Preterperfect Tense of the Actor and Passive voice both: as, *Ceno, cenare, cenavi, & cenatus sum vel fui, cenare, cenatum, to sup: Juro, juras, juravi, & juratus sum vel fui, jurare, juratum, to swear: Poto, potas, potavi, & potatus sum vel fui, potare, potum, to drink: Titubo, titubas, titubavi, & titubatus sum vel fui, titubare, titubatum, to stumble: Careo, cares, carui, & caritus sum vel fui, carere, caritum, & cassum, to want: Prandeo, prandes, prandi, & pransus sum vel fui, prandere, prantum, to dine: Pateo, patet, patui, & passus sum vel fui, patere, passum, to lie open: Placeo, placeo, placeo, & placitus sum vel fui, placere, placitum, to please: Suesco, suevi, & suetus sum vel fui, suescere, suetum, to accustom: Vaneo, vœnis, vœnivi, & venditus sum vel fui, vœnire, vœnum, to vend: Nubo, nubis, nupsi, & nupta sum vel fui, nubere, nuptum, to be married to a man: Mereor, mereris vel merere, merui, & meritus sum vel fui, mereri, meritum, to deserve: Liber, libebat, libuit, & libitum est vel fuit, it liketh: Licet, licebat, licuit, & licitum est vel fuit, it may, or it is lawfull: Tædet, tædebat, tæduit, & tæditum est vel fuit, it irketh: Pudet, pudebat, puduit, & puditum est vel fuit, it shames: Piget, pigebat, piguit, & pigitum est vel fuit, it irketh.*

Tades, taduit, & tæditum est. Pudet, puduit, & puditum est. Piget, piguit, & pigitum est.

A Verb Neuter Passive is thus formed in the Preterperfect tense. *Gaudeo, gavisus sum vel fui, fidere, fides, fidesum vel fui, fideri, to be made or done: Soleo, solus, solitum, to be wont: Mæreo, mæres, mæstus sum vel fui, mætere, mæstum, to be sad, or to mourne: But Phocas judgeth mæstus, sorrowfull, to be a Noun.*

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Neuter Passives.

A Verb Neuter Passive doth thus forme his Preterperfect tense: *Gaudeo, gaudes, gavisus sum vel fui, gaudere, gavisum, to be glad: Fido, fides, fidesum vel fui, fidere, fidesum, to trust: Audeo, audes, ausus sum vel fui, audere, ausum, to be bold: Fio, fis, factus sum vel fui, fieri, to be made or done: Soleo, soles, solitus sum vel fui, solere, solitum, to be wont: Mæreo, mæres, mæstus sum vel fui, mætere, mæstum, to be sad, or to mourne: But Phocas judgeth mæstus, sorrowfull, to be a Noun.*

Of Verbs which do borrow their Preterperfect tense of other Verbs.

Some Verbs do receive their Preterperfect tense of others: as, a Verb Inceptive, put for the Primitive, hath the Preterperfect tense of his Primitive: as, *Tepeo, tepui, & tepitum est. Ferveo, fervui, & fervitum est. Nigresco, nigresci, & nigrescitum est. Flavescio, flavesci, & flavescitum est.*

Some Verbs doe receive the Preterperfect tense from other Verbs: as, a Verb Inceptive ending in *eo*, standing for the Primitive Verb, taketh the Preterperfect tense of the same Primitive Verb: as, *Tepeo, tepesci, tepui, tepescere, to begin to be luke-warme, will have his Preterperfect tense of Tepeo, tepui, tepere, to be luke-warme: and Ferveo, fervesci, fervui, fervescere, to begin to be hot, of Ferveo, ferves, fervi, fervere, to be hot: Nigresco, nigresci, nigrui, nigrescere, to begin to be black: of Nigresco, nigresci, nigrui, nigrescere, to be made black: Flavescio, flavesci, flavui, flavescere, to begin to be yellow, of Flavescio, flaves, flavi, flavere, to be yellow.*

89

Videtur; Rubescere, rubescis, erubui, erubescere, to begin to blush; of *Luceo*, luceo, luxi, lucesce, to begin to be light; of *Luceo*, luceo, luxi, lucesce, to be light; Cerno, cernis, vidi, cernere, visum, to behold; of *Video*, video, vidi, videri, visum, to see; Quatio, quatis, concussi, quatere, concussum, to shake, of *Concutio*, concutis, concussi, concutere, concussum, to shake; Perio, feris, percussit, ferire, to strike, of Percutio, percutis, percussit, percutere, percussum, to strike; Meio, meis, minxi, mectere, mixtum, to sift, of Mingo, mingis, minxi, mingere, mixtum, to sift; Sido, fidis, sedi, federe, factum, to pitch upon, or alight; of Seden, sedes, sedi, federe, factum, to sit; Tollo, tollis, subuli, tollere, subulaui, to lift up; of Subfero, suffers, sustuli, sufferere, sub-
stulsi, to bear; Sum, es, misse, to be; of Suo, fui, fuisset, sumum, to be; Fer, fers, tuli, ferre, latine, to bear; of Tulo, tulis, tulisse, to bear; Sisto, sistis, steti, sistere, statum, to stand; of Sto, stas, steti, stare, statum, to stand; Furo, furis, infanxi, fure, to be made; of Infanio, infans, infans, infanie, infanium, to be mad; Vefcor, vesceris, vel vescere, pastus sum vel fui, vesci, to eat, of Pascor, pascaris, vel pascere, pastus sum vel fui, pasci, to be fed; Medeor, mederis vel medere, medicatus sum vel fui, moderi, to heal, of Medicor, medicaris vel medicare, medicatus sum vel fui, medicari, to be healed; Liquor, liquaris, vel liquare, liquefactus sum vel fui, liquari, to be melted, of Liquefacio, liquefis, liquefactus sum vel fui, liquefieri, to be melted; and, Reminiscor, reminisceris vel reminiscere, recordatus sum vel fui, reminisci, to remember, of Recordor, recordaris vel recordare, recordatus sum vel fui, recordari, to remember, or call to mind again.

[illegible]

Of Verbs, wanting the Preterperfect tense.

These Verbs do want the Preterperfect tense: as, *Verger, vergis, vergere, to bend: Ambigo ambigis, ambigere, to compass: Glisco, gliscis, gliscere, to desire greatly: Fatico, faticis, faticere, to chink: Pollor, poller, pollere, to be able: Nideo, nides, nidere, to shine. Ad. Verbs Inceptives: as, Puero, pueris, puerescere, to begin to be a child: Sylveo, sylveis, sylvescere, to begin to be woody, as bush: Frutisco, frutiscis, frutescere, to begin to spring into stalks, or shrubs: Sterileo, sterileis, sterilecere, to begin to be barren: Desco, diescis, discesce, to begin to be dry. And Verbs Passives, whose Actives want the Supines: as, *Metor, metoris, vel metere, metui, to be feared: Timor, timeris, vel timere, timeri, to be feared. With all Verbs Preteritives, except Parturio, partoris, parturivi, parturire, parturium, to bring forth, or to be towards labour: and, Esurio esuris, esurivi, esurire, esurium, to hunger. And Deliberatives: as, *Micurio, micuris, micurire, to have a desire to piss: Scripuro, scripulis, scripui, scripui, to desire to write: Iurio, iuratur, iurare, to have a desire to go: and, Cacurio, cacaturis, cacurire, to lust to go to stool.***

Verbs seldom admitting the Supine.

These Verbs seldom or never have the Supines; Lambo, lambis, lambi, lambere, to lick: Mico, micas, micul, micare, to sting with intermissions: Rudo, rudis, rudi, rudere, to play like an ass: Scabo, scabis, scabi, scabere, to claw: Parco, parcis, peparci, parcere, to spare.

These Verbs do want the Preter-perfect tense : *Vengo, combigo, glijifico, fastico, pallio, adeo.* Also, Verbs Inceptives ; as, *Puerasco.* And Verbs Passives, whose Actives want the Supines : as, *Metur, tingor.* With all Verbs Meditatives, except *Parturio, & c.*

These Verbs seldom or never have the Supines: *Lamborgendo, ruidos, scabro, parco, peperet,*

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Ave, aveto. *Plur.* Avete. *Ave, God speed.*
Infinitive Mood. Ave.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Cedo. *Plur.* Cedite. *Cedo, say, or give.*

Indicative Mood. Future tense Sing. Fazo, faxis, taxit. *Plur.* Fazo, I will do, or cause.

Optative, Potentiall, and Subjunctive Moods. **Præterperfect tense** Sing. Forem, fores, foret. *Plur.* Forent. **Infinitive** Forem, I should, or might be.

Moods. Future tense, Fore; for, fitem, esset, esset, & essent, and for, forent, esse.

Indicative Mood. Present tense Sing. Quæso. *Plur.* Quæsumus. *Quæso, I pray.*

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Inquis, inquam, inquit. *Plur.* Inquire, inquit, inquit. *Inquis, I say, or Inquam.*

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Inquis, inquit, inquit. *Plur.* Inquire, inquit, inquit.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Inquis, inquit, inquit. *Plur.* Inquire, inquit, inquit.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Inquis, inquit, inquit. *Plur.* Inquire, inquit, inquit.

Indicative Mood. Future tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

Imperative Mood. Present tense Sing. Valebis. **Imperative Mood.** Vale, farewell.

OF Verbs Impersonals.

A As hitherto, concerning Verbs Personals. Now of Verbs Impersonals, which receive not a Nominative case of a certain person; but the Nominative case of the person, is changed into the Oblique cases: as that which we say in English, I must read Virgil: is in Latin spoken impersonally; as, Oportet me legere Virgilium. It behooveth me to read Virgil.

Wherefore they are called Impersonals, not for that they want a person, (for many of them, as we see, have the voice of the third person, as well Active as Passive) but because they have the certain signification of no person or number, but by the Oblique case of the Noun or Pronoun joyned unto them, for, Oportet me, I must, seemeth to be of the first person, and Singular Number: Oportet nos, we must, of the first person Plural: Oportet te, thou must, of the second person Singular: Oportet vos, ye must, of the second person Plural: and so of the rest.

A Verb Impersonal.

Why they are called Impersonals.

**Impersonals of
of the Active
Voice.**

Impersonals therefore are of two sorts: of the Active voice, and of the Passive. Impersonals of the Active voice, are the following: Est, it is; Interest, it is profitable: Refert, it is expedient: Placeo, it pleaseth: Liber, it contenteth: Punitur, it punisheth: Tædæ, it wearyeth: Accidit, it falleth out: Contingit, it happeneth: Evenit, it chanceth: Expedi, it is expedient: Appareat, it appeareth: Licet, it is lawfull: Soleo, it is wont: Vae, it is superfluous: Præstat, it is better: Refert, it concerneth: Deceat, it becometh: Oportet, it behooveth: Poteo, it may: Juvat, it is lighteth: Constat, it is evident: Conducit, it is profitable: Mifert, it pisseth: Piger, it slacketh: Pudet, it shameth.

Further, there is almost no *Verbo Personali*, which may un-
become *Impersonali*, and contractive. Notwithstanding, *Impersonals* are used sometimes personally: as, *Virtus placeo* pro-
bis, *Arctus placebit* honesti: *Pecunia omnia potest*, *Omnia*
may do all things: *Ars juvat* evenus. Art behest the needy.

But some Imperfectionals do alwayes so remain: as Pudet, Pone-
ret, Oportet: though we may reade in Terence: Quæ ad solent, quæ
oportet signa ad salutem esse, huic omnia esse video: I see that be both
all the signes which are wont and which ought to be to health.

Impersonals declined in the third person.

Imperionals be declared throughout all Woods and Cities
in the voice of the third person Singular only; as, Delecta-
delectabat, delecta vir, delecta veras, delectabit : Deceat, decebat, deceat
euerat, decebit, degeat : Studere, studebat, studium est vel fuit, studium
erat vel fuerat, studebitur, it is endeavoured. And they have com-
monly before their English, this sign, It : as, It delecteth, de-
lectat : It deceiveth not, non deest.

Of Liquor, it appeareth, there is no Dieterperfect tense extant. Tader, it iskeneth, hard in the Dieterperfect tense Taduiz, & perisum est vel fuit. Miserez, & miserefcit, it yttireth: habe Misericordiam, & miserum est vel fuit. These Dieterperfect tenses also are in use. Placium est vel fuit, of placet, it pleaseth: Libium est vel fuit, of Libet, it contenteth: Pudum est vel fuit, of pudet, it shameth: Leticum est vel fuit, of licet, it islawfull: Pipium est vel fuit, of picez, it iskeneth.

Impersonals of the Passive voice, are made of all Verbs, Actives and Nenters: as, Curriat, it is runned: Turbat, it is troubled.

Impersonals do want the Supines, and the Gerunds.

OF GERUNDS.

Gerunds.

Gerunds may be called participiall voices, because they are like unto Participles: as we call those proverbiall sayings which are like unto Proverbs. Wherefore, because we see that Grammarians doe hardly agree amongst themselves; who the Gerunds & more properly belong to Verbs or unto Participles: here betwene these two parts, we leave it to their choice to follow which side they will.

October, they do receive from a **Flow**, **Tale**: and from a **Verb** the Signification of **Doing**, or **Suffering**, or of **neither**.

And because they receive by distinct voices, neither difference of Tenses or times, neither do admit Number, or Person: they can neither be right Verbs, nor Participles.

A PARTICIPLE 93

The terminations of Gerunds are three: Di, of the Gerundive; Terminations of
 Do, of the Nominative and Ablative; and Dum of the Nominative and Accusative.

But that for the most part, Gerunds have an Active signification, there is no doubt: although sometimes also, they signify passively: Whence, these shall be examples, Athenas quoque ad erudiendi causa: sent also to Athens for the cause of being instructed; that is, that he might be instructed. Urbeque videndo: and the woman burneth by being seen; that is, whilst he is seen. Satis ad cognoscendum illustria; clear enough to the being known: that is, that it may be known. Ars ad discendum facilis: an art easie to the being learned; that is, that it may be learned: or, to be learned.

OF SUPINES.

Supines also are worthily called Participial words, and have all things common with the voices of Gerunds. And the latter Supine both end in um: the latter in u: as, Visum, to lie, sit, to be seen. And the former doth most commonly signify actively; but the latter passively.

Supines.

OF A PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a part of speech derived of a Verb, and taketh part of a Noun, as, Gender, Case, and Declension; and part of a Verb, as, Tense and Signification; and part of both, as, Number and Figure.

A Participle.

Things belonging to a Participle.

Seven things do belong to a Participle: Case, Gender, Declension, Time, Signification, Number, and Figure. Concerning Gender, Case, and Declension, they are the same, as before we have spoken before in the Noun.

The Accidents of a Participle.

OF TIME.

The Times of Participles are four: or,

There be four kinds of Participles: one of the Present Tense, another of the Preter Tense; and one of the Future in du.

The Times of Participles four.

A Participle of the Present Tense hath his English ending ing; as, Loving: and his Latine in ens, as, Amans, docens; and it is formed of the Preterimperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood, by changing the last syllable into ns: as, Amamus, Audiebamus, Audiamus, Auxiliabamur, Auxiliamur, Poteram, potens.

Present Tense.

But the Participle iens, going, of eo, to go: is seldom read, simple in the Nominative Case: but, euntes, eunti, euntem, eunte, in Oblique Cases.

But the Compounds thereof have the Nominative ending in ens: but the Gerundive in untis: as, Abiens, going away; abeuntis, Rediens, returning; redeuntis. Except onely, Ambiens, going about, ambuntis, &c.

The Compounds in untis.

(N 3)

And,

- And their Gerunds doe also follow the same forme; as, *Abundandi, abundans, abundans. Except Abundandi, abundans, abundans.*
- Proter Tense.** A Participle of the Proter Tense hath his English in *d, t, o, n*; as, *Loyed, taught, slain*: and his Latine in *us, f, u, s*; as, *amatus, loquens, visus, lectus, nexus, knis*; and one in *us*: as, *moruus*; dead. And it is formed of the latter Supine, by putting to: as, *Lectus, to be read, Lectus, read* except *Moruu*.
- Future in *rus*.** A Participle of the Future Tense is double: the one in *o*; the most part of the Active signification, as *Fluor*: as, *Fluor, to read, o* about to read; *Curfus, to run, o* about to run; and the other in *us*; alwayes of the Passive signification, as, *Legendus, to be read*.
- A Participle of the Future in *rus*, doth cometh to doe like the Infinitive Good of the Active Voice: as, *Amaturus, to love, o* about to love. And it is formed of the latter Supine, by putting to *rus*: as, *Docus, to be taught, Docurus, to teach, o* about to teach.
- A Participle of the Future in *us* doth cometh to suffer, like the Infinitive Good of the Passive voice: as, *Amandus, to be loved*. And it is formed of the Genitive Case of the Participle of the Present Tense, by changing *us* into *us*: as, *Amans, loving, Amandus, to be loved*; *Legens, of reading, Legendus, to be read*. And it is also found to have the signification of the Participle of the Present Tense: as, *Legens veteribus proficit*; *Learning old authors thou dost profit*.
- Of an Active, 2. Participles.** Of a Verb Active, and of a Verb Preter, which hath the Supines, come two Participles; one of the Present tense, and another of the Future in *rus*: as, of *Amo*, I love, cometh *Amans, loving, and Amaturus, to love, o* about to love: of *Curro*, I run, cometh *Currens, running, cursurus, to run, o* about to run.
- Of a Passive, come, two.** Of a Verb Passive, whose Active hath the Supines come two Participles: one of the Proter Tense, and another of the Future Tense in *us*: as, of *Amor*, I am loved, cometh *Amatus, loved, and Amandus, to be loved*.
- Of a Deponent, three.** Of a Verb Deponent cometh three Participles, one of the Present Tense, one of the Proter Tense, and another of the Future in *rus*: as, of *Auxilio*, I helpe, cometh *Auxilians, helping, auxiliatus, helped, and auxiliaturus, to helpe, o* about to helpe. As if the Verb Deponent do govern an Accusative Case after him, it may forme also a Participle in *us*: as, of *Loquor*, I speak, *loquendus, to be spoken*.
- Of a Commune, four.** Of a Verb Commune cometh four Participles: as, of *Largor*, I bestow, cometh *Largiens, bestowing, Largiturus, to bestow, o* about to bestow, *Largus, bestowed, and Largendus, to be bestowed*.
- Participles of the Present Tense be declined like Nouns Declinatives of three Articles: as, *Nominativo, Hic haec & hoc Amans. Genitivo hujus Amantis, Dativo huic Amanti &c.*
- Participles of other Tenses be declined like Nouns Declinatives of three others endings: as, *Amaturus, amatura, amaturus. Amatus, amata, amatum. Amandus, amanda, amandum.*

A PARTICIPLE. 95

SIGNIFICATION.

The Participles which come of Actives have an Active signification: as, Docens, teaching: Docurus, about to teach: Verberans, beating: verberaturus, to beat, or about to beat.

They which come of *Stenters*, have a *Strutall* signification: as, Carens, running: Cursurus, to run, or about to run: Dolens, grieving: Doliturus, that will be grieved with.

Of certain *Stenters* are found also Participles in *du*: as, Dubitandus, to be doubted: Vigilandus, to be watchfull: Carendus, being lacking: Dolendus, to be lamented.

They which come of *Passives* have a *Passive* signification: as, Lectus, read: Legendus, to be read: Auditus, heard: Audiendus, to be heard.

Also Participles *Passives* doe come of those *Stenters*, whose Persons are also *Passively*: as, Aratur terra: the earth is sowed: wherof cometh Arata and Aranda terra: land plowed, or to be plowed.

Participles formed of *Deponents*, doe imitate the signification of their verbs: as, Loquens, speaking: Loquutus, spoken: Loquutus, about to speak: of Loquor, to speak.

Also *Deponents* which in times past, were *Common*, there remaineth a Participle of the Future in *du*: as, Sequendus to be followed: Loquendus, to be spoken: Utendus, to be used: Patiendus, to be suffered: Obliviscendus, to be forgotten. With others.

Deponents have also Participles of the *Diater Tense*, which sometimes actively, and sometimes *Passively*: as, Virg. Nec obliui mihi hoc carmina: *Nota* so many verses of me forgotten. *Not.* Meditata sunt in hiemis mea incommoda. All my discomforts have been meditated of me. *Virg.* -- mentis aequa signoscant, and let them acknowledge their counterfeit helps.

To conclude, the Participles of *Verbs Common*, have the signification of the same Verbs: as, Criminans, blaming: Criminatus, blamed: Criminaturus, that will blame: Criminandus, to be blamed.

Impersonals have no Participles: except *Ponitens*, repenting: *Dicens*, believing: Libens, willing: Pertasus, weary: Ponitendus, that is to be repented: Pudendus, that one is to be ashamed of.

These Participles do come of their Verbs, out of order: Particulus, ready to dying forth: Nasciturus, about to be borne: Sonaturus, ready to sound: Arguiturus, about to accuse: Laniatus, that will pay, or satiffie: Eruiturus, ready to pluck up by the roots: Nesciturus, to know: Moriturus, ready to die: Oriturus, about to sing: Osiurus, that will hate: Futurus, to be hereafter.

These are like unto Participles, *Tunicatus*, that weareth a jacket, or coat: Togatus, gowned, that weareth a gowne: Performatus, that hath a part in a play, a masker, counterfeit: Larvatus, disguised, disguised. And an innumerable sort of such words, which come of *Nouns*, and not of Verbs.

NUMBER.

NUMBER.

Numbers in Participles.

There is also Number in Participles, as in a Noun: Singular, as, Legens, he, of the reading: Plural, as, Legentes, they are reading.

OF FIGURE.

The Figure of Participles. Participles made Nouns Participials.

Figure is double: Simple, as Spirans, breathing: Compound, as, Respirans, taking breath.

Participles do sometimes become Nouns Participials: when they governe another Case then their Verb: as, Abundans lactis, plentiful of milke. A. eni appetens, greedy of that which another mans. Paciens inedia, patiently enduring hunger. Pugnacilium, flying strife. **O**, when they are compounded with other words, then their Verbs may be compounded with: as, Infans young. Indoctus, unlearned. Innocens, innocent. Inepens, foolish. **O**, when as they are compared: as, Amans, loving. Amantissimus, loving. Amantissimus, most loving. Doctus, learned. Doctissimus, learned. Doctissimus, most learned. **O**, when as they doe not broken any time: as, Expectem, qui me nunquam visurus abisti? I looke for thee, which departedst never to see me more? that is, with purpose never to see me more. Nullam mentionem fecit eorum, nil praetermissurus, siquid explorari haberet: he made no mention of the comets, to omit nothing whereof he could have given proofe, that is, being minded to pretermitt no such thing. Amantissimus est doctissimus quisque: Every most learned man is to be loved, that is, is worthy, or ought to bee loved. Vita laudata, a life praised; that is, commendable. Efficienda est haec mollities animi: this nicenesse of minde is to bee cast off: that is, ought to be cast off.

Participles of the Preter tense made Nouns.

Participles of the Present Tense doe oftentimes become Nouns Substantives. Sometimes in the Masculine Gender: as, Hic oriens, orientis, the East: Hic occidens, occidentis, the West: Hic Profluens, profluens, a river: Hic conflens, confluentis, a place where two rivers meet together. Sometimes in the Feminine Gender: as, Haec Consonans, consonantis, a Consonant. Haec Contingens, contingens, Contingent, sober. Sometimes in the Neuter Gender: as, Hoc Contingens, contingentis, contingent, that may be, and not be. Hoc Accidens, accidentis, an accident, or a thing happening by chance. Hoc antecedens, antecedentis, an antecedent, which hath a Relative, also the first part of an argument. Hoc consequens, consequentis, a consequent, that which rightly followeth upon premisses. And sometimes in the Commune Gender for Verbs in tor or trix: as, Hic & haec appetens, appetentis, greedy: Hic & haec diligens, diligentis, diligent: Hic & haec sitiens, sitientis, that is thirsty. Hic & haec indulgens, indulgentis, indulgent, cackering, letting much by. Animans, animantis, any living creature; is sometimes the Feminine, and sometimes the Neuter Gender.

OF an ADVERB.

An Adverb is a part of speech, joyned to the Verbs, to declare their signification.

An Adverb is a part of speech undeclined, which being added to the Verb, doth perfect, and declare the sense thereof.

It doth sometimes also explicate a Noun: as, Homo egregie impudens: a man egregiously impudent. Ne parum sit leno: that he be not a small dawd. Nimum philosophus: a very great philosopher. And sometimes even an Adverb: as, Parum honeste se gerit: he behaved himselfe scarce honestly.

Things befalling to an Adverb.

There belongeth to an Adverb, Signification, Comparison, Species, and Figure. The variety of signification is to be gathered from the circumstances of the words, or Verbs.

Adverbs some be of place: as, Ubi, where: Ibi, there: Hic, here: Illic, there: Intus, within: Foris, without: Uiquam, any where: Nusquam, no where: Ubique, every where: Ubicumque, where ever: Ubilibet, wheresoever you will: Utrouque, on both sides: Ubius, in what place you will: Ubiubi, wheresoever: Aliubi, elsewhere: Alicubi, somewhere: Necubi, least in any place, no where: Ubiubi, wheresoever, if in any place: Ibi, even there: Ibidem, there, in the same place: Inferius, lower: Superius, above, before.

These Adverbs do signifie to a place: Hinc, thither: Illuc, thither: Ilic, thither: Intro, within: Alio, to another place: Quo, whither, from whence: Aliquo, any whither: Nequo, not any whither: Quoquo, whithersoever: Siquo, if any whither: Eo, thither: Eodem, to the same place: Quolibet, whither you will: Quoquo, whither you please: Quocunque, whithersoever: Foras, without, upon, abroad: Horsum, hitherward: Aliorsum, to some other place: Dextrorsum, on the right hand: Sinistrorsum, on the left hand: Sursum, upward: Deorsum, downward: Utrouque, to both sides, or places: Neutro, to neither part, neither way: Quoquoque, on every side, every way.

These, from a place: Hinc, from hence: Illinc, from thence: Ilinc, from thence: Intus, from within: Foras, out of the doores: Inde, from thence: Unde, from whence: Aliunde, from some other place: Aliunde, from some place: Sicunde, if from any place: Necunde, least from any place: Indidem, from the same place: Undelibet, whence thou wilt: Undevis, whence thou wilt: Undecunque, from what placesoever: Superne, from above: Inferne, from beneath, below: Coeli, from heaven: Funditus, from the foundation to utter destruction.

Finally, these, by a place: Hic, by this place, that way: Illic, by that place, that way: Ilic, this way: Quocunque, what way soever: Eo, that way: Eadem, the same way: Alio, by another way, Aliquo, by some way, Siquo, if any way, Nequo, least any way, Quoquo, what way soever.

An Adverb

Adverbs, some be of place, as, Ubi, ibi, hic, illic, intus, foris.

To a place

From a place

By a place

Some be of Time;
as, *Hodie, cras, heri,*
perendie, olim, ali-
quando, nuper,
quando.

Some be of Time: as, *Hodie*, to day: *Cras* to morrow: *Heri*, yesterday: *Perendie*, the next day after to morrow, the third day after, to morrow next: *Olim*, in times past: *Aliquando*, sometimes: *Nuper*, lately: *Quando*, when: *Dum*, when, whiles: *Quamvis*, whereas: *Quandiu*, how long: *Dudum*, ere while: *Quandam*, how lately, how long ago: *Jam dudum*, even now: *Quampridem*, long before, how long: *Jampridem*, now lately: *Usque*, until: *Quousque*, how long: *Toties*, so oft: *Quoties*, as oft as, how often: *Aliquoties*, at some times: *Pridie*, the day before: *Postridie*, the day after: *Mane*, early in the morning: *Vesper*, in the evening: *Nudiustertius*, the day before yesterday, the third day before: *Nudiusquartus*, four dayes ago: *Nudiusquintus*, five dayes ago: *Nudiussextus*, six dayes ago, &c. *Dū*, long time: *Noch*, in the night: *Interdū*, in the day time: *Nunc*, now: *Jam*, now: *Alā*, another time: *Item*, also: *Pridem*, late, long ago: *Tandisper*, so long as: *Paulisper*, a little while: *Parumper*, a little while: *Sapē*, often: *Rard*, seldom: *Subinde*, forthwith, anon: *Idemtime*, oftentimes: *Pleūque*, oftentimes: *Quotidie*, daily: *Quotannis*, every year: *Nunquam*, never: *Unquam*, any time, ever: *Adhuc*, till now, yet: *Eriam*, for *Adhuc*, even then, even as yet: *Hactenus*, hitherto: *Quā far*: *In dies*, daily: *In horas*, hourly: *Ue primum*, as soon as: *Quum primum*, as soon as: *Simulac*, incontinent as: *Simulacque*, as soon as: *Plerumque*, for the most part: *Usque*, untill, well nigh, continually; it is an Adverb of time and place both: as *Usque sub obscurum noctis*, untill a little before dark night: *Æthiopia est usque hęc*, this is nigh *Æthiopia*. It is also put some times for *semper*, alwaies; or for *continū*, continually: as, *Usque meū mœvere sinus*, the hollownesse of the water banks, glided continually with fear.

Some be of Number;
as, *Semel*, his,
ter, quater, iterum.

Some be of Number: as *Semel* all at once: *Bis*, twice, double: *Ter*, thrice: *Quater*, four times: *Iterum*, & soon, again, the second time: *Quinques*, five times: *Septies*, seven times: *Vigies*, twenty times: *Trigies*, thirty times: *Quadragies*, forty times: *Quinquages*, fifty times: *Septuagies*, seventy times: *Octogies*, eighty times: *Centies*, an hundred times: *Milies*, a thousand times, &c. often: *Infinities*, an infinite sort of times.

Some be of Order;
as, *Inde*, de-
inceps, *deinceps*, po-
stremo.

Some be of Order: as, *Inde*, from thence, next after: *Deinceps*, afterward, furthermore, secondly: *Denique*, to conclude at length, onely: *Postremo*, finally, never after: *Hinc*, after this: *Deinceps*, secondly: *Deinceps*, henceforth, consequently: *Novissimū*, last of all: *In primis*, first of all, chiefly: *Primum*, first, at the first sight: *Jam primum*, even now, never before: *Demum*, at the length, and by then: *Tandem*, at the last, when all cometh to all, notwithstanding I pray you: *Ad summum* at the most.

Some be of Asking
or doubting;
as, *Cur*, quare, unde,
quorū, num,
mon quid.

Some be of Asking or doubting: as, *Cur*, wherefore: *Quare*, wherefore: *Unde*, from whence, whereof: *Quorū*, to what end: *Num*, whether: *Namquid*, whether: *Quamobrem*, why: *Quomodo*, how: *Æquid*, what thing, why: *Quin*, for cur non why not: *Quid ita*, why so: *Quō*, whither: *Quantum*, how much?

Some be of Calling;
as, *Hic*, hinc, &
hinc.

Some be of Calling: as, *Hic*, here, what Sir, hear Sir: *Hic*, oh you: *Ehodem*, here Sir: *Ehō*, here Sir.

Some be of Deny-
ing; as, *Non*, hinc,
nonne, neutro.

Some be of Denying: as, *Non*, no, not: *Haud*, not, no: *Nonne*, no, at no hand: *Nequaquam*, not, in no wise, not by:

nothing: Nequaquam, no, not: Ne for Non, not: and such like.

Some be of Affirming: as, *Cenè*, certainly: *Ne*, then, therefore. *proinde*, in very deed, truly: *Sanè*, yea certainly, truly: *Scilicet*, that is to wit, surely, moreover: *Licet*, be it so: *Etsi*, put the case that it is so, let it be granted: *Etiam*, yea, also, moreover: *Sic*, yea, it is so: *Quid nì*, what else, wherefore not, why not: *Proinde*, verely, surely: *Nempe*, certainly, indeed, yea, even so: *Nimirum*, I wis, doubtless, surely, in faith: *Aded*, surely, yea, rather, undoubtedly: *Planè*, certainly, indeed, clearly, without fail, quite and cleann.

Some be of Swearing: as, *Pol*, by Pollux: *Ædèpol*, by Pollux in the Temple: *Hercle*, by Hercules, in faith, truly: *Medius fidius*, in the Son of Jupiter: I sweare me, by the faith of God, by the God of faith: *Mehercule*, by Hercules: *Dius fidius*, so God help me: *Castor*, by Castor: *Escastor*, by my say.

Some be of Exhorting: as, *Eia*, eih, well, go to, what lofe: *Agè*, go to, take heed: *Agite*, go to, take heed (this is spoken to many): *Agèdum*, well, go to yet: *Sodes*, on good fellowship, of all love, I pray thee, as ever thou wilt do me a good turn: *Ehodum*, when we make one attentive, or when we say, *Uoe sitra*.

Some be of Flattering: as, *Sodes*, I beseech thee: *Amabò*, of all love.

Some be of Forbidding: as, *Ne*, no, not: *Non*, no, not.

Some be of Wishing: as, *Utinam*, Would to God, or God grant: *si*, if I might: *ò h, ò*, if I might or could: *ò, oh* I could wish.

Some be of Exclaiming: as, *Modò*, onely: *Dummodò*, so that: *Tantummodò*, onely: *Solummodò*, alone: *Tantum*, onely: *Solum*, onely: *Duntaxat*, onely: *Demùm*, onely.

Some be of Gathering together: as, *Simul*, together, at once: *Uad*, together, doth: *Pariter*, together: *Non modò*, not onely: *Non sed*, not onely: *Populeim*, together, through all the people: *ubiq*, *Universim*, universally, generally, altogether: *Conjunctim*, jointly, together, &c.

Some be of Parting: as, *Seorsim*, a part, otherwile: *Sigillarim*, to every one, peculiarly: *Vicariim*, in villages or streets, street by street, village by village: *Gregariim*, in flocks, routs, or companies: *Agèdè*, excellently, very much, nobly, principally: *Nominatim*, by name, expressly: *Viriam*, man by man, from man to man, particularly: *Oppidariim*, town by town: *Privatim*, privately, peculiarly: *Speciatim*, specially, particularly: *Bisfariam*, two wayes, in two parts: *Trisfariam*, three manner of wayes: *Omnitariam*, all manner of wayes, of every kinde: *Plurifariam*, divers wayes: *Oliam*, from doo to doo, one after another.

Some be of Diversity: as, *Aliiter*, otherwile, contrariwile, *ut*: *Secus*, otherwile, ill.

Some be of Chusing: as, *Potius*, rather: *Imo*, yea rather: *Possimim*, rather chiefly: *Satius*, better.

Some be of Increasing: as, *Uadè*, very much, earnestly, very well: *Nimis*, too much, exesse in much or little: *Nimium*, too much, too far, greatly: *Immodicè*, out of measure, immoderately: *Impendio*, much, more and more, exceedingly: *Impensè*, greatly, eagerly, ambitiously, passing well: *Profus*, in any wise, surely,

quam, nequaquam.
Some be of Affirming: as, *Cenè*, certainly: *Ne*, then, therefore. *proinde*, in very deed, truly: *Sanè*, yea certainly, truly: *Scilicet*, that is to wit, surely, moreover: *Licet*, be it so: *Etsi*, put the case that it is so, let it be granted: *Etiam*, yea, also, moreover: *Sic*, yea, it is so: *Quid nì*, what else, wherefore not, why not: *Proinde*, verely, surely: *Nempe*, certainly, indeed, yea, even so: *Nimirum*, I wis, doubtless, surely, in faith: *Aded*, surely, yea, rather, undoubtedly: *Planè*, certainly, indeed, clearly, without fail, quite and cleann.

Some be of Swearing: as, *Pol*, by Pollux: *Ædèpol*, by Pollux in the Temple: *Hercle*, by Hercules, in faith, truly: *Medius fidius*, in the Son of Jupiter: I sweare me, by the faith of God, by the God of faith: *Mehercule*, by Hercules: *Dius fidius*, so God help me: *Castor*, by Castor: *Escastor*, by my say.

Some be of Exhorting: as, *Eia*, eih, well, go to, what lofe: *Agè*, go to, take heed: *Agite*, go to, take heed (this is spoken to many): *Agèdum*, well, go to yet: *Sodes*, on good fellowship, of all love, I pray thee, as ever thou wilt do me a good turn: *Ehodum*, when we make one attentive, or when we say, *Uoe sitra*.

Some be of Flattering: as, *Sodes*, I beseech thee: *Amabò*, of all love.

Some be of Forbidding: as, *Ne*, no, not: *Non*, no, not.

Some be of Wishing: as, *Utinam*, Would to God, or God grant: *si*, if I might: *ò h, ò*, if I might or could: *ò, oh* I could wish.

Some be of Exclaiming: as, *Modò*, onely: *Dummodò*, so that: *Tantummodò*, onely: *Solummodò*, alone: *Tantum*, onely: *Solum*, onely: *Duntaxat*, onely: *Demùm*, onely.

Some be of Gathering together: as, *Simul*, together, at once: *Uad*, together, doth: *Pariter*, together: *Non modò*, not onely: *Non sed*, not onely: *Populeim*, together, through all the people: *ubiq*, *Universim*, universally, generally, altogether: *Conjunctim*, jointly, together, &c.

Some be of Parting: as, *Seorsim*, a part, otherwile: *Sigillarim*, to every one, peculiarly: *Vicariim*, in villages or streets, street by street, village by village: *Gregariim*, in flocks, routs, or companies: *Agèdè*, excellently, very much, nobly, principally: *Nominatim*, by name, expressly: *Viriam*, man by man, from man to man, particularly: *Oppidariim*, town by town: *Privatim*, privately, peculiarly: *Speciatim*, specially, particularly: *Bisfariam*, two wayes, in two parts: *Trisfariam*, three manner of wayes: *Omnitariam*, all manner of wayes, of every kinde: *Plurifariam*, divers wayes: *Oliam*, from doo to doo, one after another.

Some be of Diversity: as, *Aliiter*, otherwile, contrariwile, *ut*: *Secus*, otherwile, ill.

Some be of Chusing: as, *Potius*, rather: *Imo*, yea rather: *Possimim*, rather chiefly: *Satius*, better.

Some be of Increasing: as, *Uadè*, very much, earnestly, very well: *Nimis*, too much, exesse in much or little: *Nimium*, too much, too far, greatly: *Immodicè*, out of measure, immoderately: *Impendio*, much, more and more, exceedingly: *Impensè*, greatly, eagerly, ambitiously, passing well: *Profus*, in any wise, surely,

Diversity.
Some be of Chusing: as, *Potius*, rather: *Imo*, yea rather: *Possimim*, rather chiefly: *Satius*, better.

Increasing.

Remitting, or
diminishing.

Granting.

Denying the soli-
tude of any
thing.

Some be of a
thing not finished;
as, *Pente, fere,*
prope, vix, modo
non.

Some be of Shew-
ing; as, *En, ecce.*

Some be of
Doubting, as,
Forſan, forſitan,
forſaſi, forſaſſe.

Some be of
Chance; as, *Fortè,*
fortuito.

Some be of Like-
neſſe; as, *Sic, ſe-*
cus, quaſi, ceu,
tanquam, velut.

Some be of Qua-
lity; as, *Bene, ma-*
le, docte, ſcititer.

Some be of Quan-
tity; as, *Multum,*
parum, minimum,
multum, plu-
rum.

Some be of Com-
pariſon; as, *Tam,*
quam, magis, mi-
nus, maxime.

in any wiſe, alway, generally, well and truly, ſtraight towards a
place: *Pente, Deeply, far off, utterly, wholly: Funditus, from the*
foundation, for ever, to utter deſtruction: *Radice, from the root,*
or up to the very root, wholly, utterly: *Omnino, wholly, thought-*
alway, in any wiſe, no more, to be ſhort.

Some be of Remitting: as, *Vix, ſcarcely, with much ado,*
not: *Agre, ſickly, with great pain or difficulty, hardly, againſt*
ones will: *Paulatim, by little and little, leaſurely, a little: Senſim,*
by little and little, leaſurely: *Pedetentim, by little and little,*
fair and ſoftly.

Some be of Granting: as, *Licet, be it ſo: Eſt, be it, or ſup-*
poſe it be, put the caſe that it is ſo: *Demus, grant we it: Sit, let*
it be ſo: *Sit ſane, let it be true.*

Some be of denying a thing to be onely, or alone: as, *Non ſo-*
lū, not onely, not alone: Non tantum, not onely, not ſo much;
Non modo, not onely: Nodum, not onely, much leſſe, much more.

Some be of a thing not finiſhed: as, *Pente, almoſt: Fere, al-*
moſt-nigh, for the moſt part, alway: *Prope, near at hand, almoſt:*
Vix, ſcarcely: Modò non, almoſt in a manner: Ferè, almoſt,
for the moſt part: *Propemodum, almoſt: Tantum, onely: Tamen*
non, almoſt.

Some be of Shewing: as, *En, lo: Ecce, ſee, behold: Sic, ſo, thus*
as, when we ſay *Sic ſcribito, write thou thus, or ſo.*

Some be of Doubting: as, *Forſan, peradventure: Forſitan, per-*
haps: *Forſaſi, it may be: Forſaſſe, it may be done, perhaps.*

Some be of Chance: as, *Fortè, as hap was: Fortuito, by chance*
Cauſa, by hap: Fortuna, by fortune.

Some be of Likeneſſe: as, *Sic, ſo, likewiſe: Sicut, as, like as,*
even as, as it were: *Quaſi, as if it were, as though: Ceu, as if*
were, even like as: *Tanquam, as it were, like, even like, as if: Ve-*
lut, like, like as: *Sicut, as, like as, as it were: Ita, ſo, yea, then ſo,*
ſuch: *Item, alſo, likewiſe, in like manner, and alſo: Idem, after*
the ſame ſort, ſemblably ſo: *Tanquam, as it were, even like, as if:*
Vel, that, as to the end that: Velut, like, like as.

Some be of Quality: as, *Bene, well, happily, very much:*
Male, ill, unhappily, ſcudly, ſcarcely: Docte, learnedly, cunningly,
ſubtilly: *Fortiter, ſtrongly, manfully, ſtoutly, conſtantly, patiently:*
Pulchre, goodly, beautifully, much, wiſely, luſtily: Gravier, graver,
wiſely, painfully, rigorouſly, greatly.

Some be of Quantity: as, *Multum, much, a great while, long*
before, very far, carneſtly: *Parum, a little, ſcarce, not, nothing, not*
well: *Minimū, at the leaſt, ſo little, as nothing can be leſſe:*
Paulum, a little, very little, ſomewhat: Plurimum, very much,
moſt, or the greateſt part, at the intermoſt: *Minimè, no, in no wiſe,*
not, nothing, leaſt of all, at the leaſt: *Maximè, moſt of all, very*
much, paſſing well, eſpecially, yea verely: *Summū, moſt: Adſum-*
nū, at the moſt; and ſuch like.

Some be of Compariſon: as, *Tam, as well, as, ſo, ſo much the*
more: *Quam, as rather then, as much: Magis, more, rather: Mi-*
nus, leſſe, not, not yet: Maximè, moſt of all, ſo far as, paſſing
well, eſpecially, yea verely: *Minimè, no, in no wiſe, not, leaſt of*
all, at the leaſt: *Aque, juſtly, even as well, willingly, or*
equally.

Some

A CONJUNCTION.

101

Some be of Explaining: as, Id est, that is to say: Hoc est, that is to say: Quasi dicas, as if thou wouldst say: Puta, that is to say: Utopia, that is to say, or wit: Utopia, seeing that it is so, because as, so much as, considering that.

COMPARISON.

Certain Adverbs be compared: as, Doctè, doctius, doctissime.

Fortiter, fortius, fortissime: Propè, propius, proximè. Likewise also certain others: as, Bene, well: Melius, better: Optime, best: Male, ill: Pejus, worse: Pessimè, worst: Sapè, oft: Sapius, oftner: Septimè, ofttest: Nuper, late: Nuperimè, latest. And such like.

Adverbs coming of Nouns Adjectives, are both compared, and do also govern the Cases of the Comparative and Superlative degree: as, Doctè, learned: Doct us illo, more learned than he: Doctissime omnium, most learned of all.

The SPECIES.

The Species is double: Principall; which hath the originall of it self: as, Heri, yesterday: Cras, to morrow. And Derivative; which cometh from some other: as, Furim, by stealth, of Furor, furaris vel furare, furatus sum vel fui, furari, to steal: Scridim, hiesly, lightly, of Sringo, stringis, strinxi, stringere, stridum, to declare hiesly, to touch lightly: Humaniter, after the fashion of men, of Humanus, humana humanum, humane, belonging to man.

Sometimes Adjectives of the Neuter Gender, do become Adverbs, after the manner of the Greeks: as, Recens, for Recenter, lately, newly, lately: Toruum, for Toruè, slowly, grimly, sternly.

FIGURE, or Form.

Figure is double: Simple; as, Prudenter, wisely: And Compound; as, Imprudenter, unwisely.

OF a CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is a part of Speech, that joyneth words and sentences together.

Things belonging to a Conjunction.

There belongeth to a Conjunction, Figure, Power, and Order.

FIGURE, or Form.

Figure is double: Simple; as, Nam, for: And Compound; as, Namque, for.

POWER.

Power, that is, Signification, is divers. For, of Conjunctions, some be Copulatives: as, Et, and: Que, and: Quoque, also: Ac, and:

Some be of Explaining.

Comparison.

Doctè, learned.

Doctius, more

learned. Doctissi-

mè, most learned.

Fortiter, strongly.

Fortius, more

strongly. Fortis-

sime, most strong-

ly. Propè, near.

Propius, nearer.

Proximè, nearest.

The Species or
kinds of Ad-
verbs.

Nouns made Ad-
verbs.

Figure

A Conjunction.

The Accidents of
a Conjunction.

Figure.

Of Conjunctions,
some be Copula-

Does: *Et, quia, quod, &c.*
neque, necque.

Suspensives

Some be Disjunctives: *as, Aut, vel, vel, seu, sive.*

Some be Discreetives: *as, Sed, quidem, nam, uero, &c.*

Some be Causals: *as, Nam, namque, enim, etenim, quia, ut, quod, quoniam, quoniam, &c.*

Some be Conditionals: *as, Si, si, modo, dum, dummodo.*

Some be Exceptives: *as, Ni, nisi, quin, alioquin, praeterquam.*

Some be Interrogatives: *as, Ne, an, num, &c.*

Some be Illatives: *as, Ergo, ideo, igitur, quare, namque, quoniam.*

Pe. sedives, or Absolutives.

and; *Atque, and; Etiam also, yea, not, why; Item, also, so, and, &c.*
 Likewise, *so, in like manner: Cum, both; Tum, and, also, &c.*
 Tum, doubled: *as, Vir cum probus, cum crudelus: A man both well, and also learned. Perennus do also appertain their contraries; as, Nec, neither: Neque, neither: Ne, least that, not, neither. Neve, neither, nor, together. These four following; Et, que, nec, que, cum, are doubled, and called also Suspensives: for that they cause alwayes an expectation of another thing; as, Et fugit, & pergit, he both fleeth, and lighteth: Nec sapit ista, nec sentit, the neither smelleth, nor feeleth.*

Some be Disjunctives: *as, Aut, or, either, but: Vel, or, either, rather, when; seu, or, either: Sive, either, or, if, whether. But when these are doubled, they are called also Suspensives; as, Vel scribit, vel dicat, either he writeth, or inditeth.*

Some be Discreetives: *as, Sed, but: Quidem, truly: Autem, but: Verò, but, truly: At, but, at the least, wile, yet: At, but, certainly: Sed enim, but because, but truly: Atqui, but, but yet, yea but, albeit, surely: Quoque, also, likewise, truly: Scilicet, as who say, that is to wit, surely: Ceterum, but, notwithstanding: Enimvero, so, sooth, yea truly, on the other part: Quod si, if so be that: Verum, but, but yet: Porro, furthermore, also but: Quin, but, but that.*

Some be Causals: *that is, which do render a reason of the speech going before: as, Nam, for: Namque, for: Enim, for: Enim, truly, for: Quia, because, forasmuch as: Ut, that as, as soon as: Quod, because, forasmuch as: Quom, because that, whereas, that, altho, quoniam, because, sith that: and Quomodo, for Quoniam, forasmuch as: Quippe, for, because: Siquidem, for, because, if, for, truly: Quandoquidem, sith that, forasmuch as, because: Propterea quod, because: Quatenus, because, to the end that, forasmuch: Et, for Quia, because: as, Vix, Audiam, & fama fuit, thou hast heard, for, or because the same was. Quia, for Quia, because: as, Cuius, Non quò quicquam desir, sed quia valde cupio, not because any thing wanteth, but because I do greatly desire it. Ovid, Crede mihi bene qui lauit, bene vixit: & intra fornam debet quisque manere suam: Believe me, he which hath been well unknown, hath lived well; for, or because every one ought to abide within the compass of his estate.*

Some be Conditionals, or Continuatives: *as, Si, if: Sin, but if, if not, otherwise: Modò, so that: Dum, so that: Dummodo, so that.*

Some be Exceptives: *as, Ni, except: Nisi, except: Quin, but: Alioquin, otherwise: Praeterquam, unless.*

Some be Interrogatives, or Dubitative: *as, Ne, whether: An, whether: Utrum, whether: Necne, whether or no: Anne, whether or no: Nòne, is it not so: Num, whether: Nunquid, whether.*

Some be Rationals, or Illatives: *as, Ergò, therefore: Idcirco, for that cause: Igitur, therefore: Quare, wherefore: Itaque, therefore: Proinde, therefore: Idcirco, therefore: Quomodo, wherefore: Quocirca, wherefore: Proinde, therefore: Propterea, therefore: Ob eam rem, for that cause: Eare, for that cause: Cuius, &c. ut Aristoclesum mihi; for that cause, I presently sent Aristoclesum unto thee.*

Some be Perfectives, or Absolutives: *as, Ut, even as: Quia, for,*

by: Ut, that: Ne, &c ut, for ne non, then as. *Terent.* Sed patris vim ut
non ferre: But even as thou art able to beare thy fathers violence.
Ne, for ne non, that not. *Cicero:* Opera datur, judicia ne fiant, they
about, that there may be no judgement.

Some be Adversitives: as, *Eti*, although: *Quamquam* although;
Quamvis, although; *Licet*, although; *Etsi*, put the case it be so; *Tamen*,
although; and such like.

Some be Redditives to the same; as, *Tamen*, notwithstanding;
Atamen, notwithstanding; *Sed tamen*, but notwithstanding; *Verun-*
tamen, nevertheless.

Some be Electives; as, *Quam*, as rather then; *Ac*, also; *Atque*,
then; *Ut*, then: when they are taken for *Quam* then.

Some be Diminutives: as, *Saltem*, at the least: *At*, at the
leastwise: *Certe*, at the least wise: *Vel*, even: as, *Ne vel lacum digi-*
mo discesseris: thou shalt not depart even a finger breadth.

Some be Expletives: as, *Quidem*, truly: *Equidem*, truly:
Minimè, certainly, that is to say; *Autem*, but indeed; *Scilicet*, truly,
that is to wit; *Quoque*, also: *Nam*, for; *Profecto*, truly: *Vero*, but
truly: *Enimvero*, yea truly: *Sed enim*, but because, but truly: *Enim*,
by certe, certainly, truly: *Virg.*

Nam quis te juremum confidentissime nostras
In ut adire domo? for, or truly, O thou most confident
young man, who hath commanded thee to goe to our houles?
Terent. *At enim non sinam*: but truly I will not suffer it.

There are some words, which are sometimes Adverbs, some-
times Conjunctions, and sometimes Prepositions: as, *Cum*, is a
Preposition, when it hath a Case.

In generall, Conjunctions do so little differ from Adverbs,
that they are very often confounded one with another: as, *Quando*,
when, so much as; *Proinde*, therefore; and such like.

ORDER.

The Order of Conjunctions is threefold.

Prepositive; which are used in the beginning of sentences.

Subjunctive; which are used in the second, third, or at the fur-
thest, in the fourth place of a sentence.

Common.

These Conjunctions are set in the beginning: *Nam* for; *Quare*,
wherefore; *Ac*, and; *At*, but; *Atque* and; *Et*, and; *Aut*, either; *Vel*, or;
Ne, neither; *Neque*, neither; *Sic*, if; *Quin*, but; *Quatenus*, so far as;
Si, but if; *Seu*, as; *Sive*, whether; *Nisi*, except; *Nisi*, except.

Subjunctive Conjunctions are these: *Quidem*, truly: *Quoque*,
also; *Autem*, but; *Vero*, but; *Enim*, for.

And these are Encliticall, so called, because they do incline the
Accent unto the syllable going before: as, *Que*, and; *Ne*, whether;
Ue, or; *As*, *Horat.*

Ludere gra uis est, campatribus abstinet armis,
Inde quisque pila, discit, trachina quiescit. Of which cannot play,
abstained from field weapons, and he resteth, which is unskil-
full of the ball, quiesceth, or stop.

There are also other Encliticall voices: as, *Dom*, so that; *Sic*,
if thou wilt: *Nam*, for, &c.

Some be Adver-
satives: as, *Eti*,
quamquam, *quam-*
uis, *sart*, *est*,
Some be Reddi-
tives to the same:
as, *tamen*, *at-*
men.

Some be Ele-
tives: as, *Quam*,
ac, *atque*.

Some be Dimi-
nutives: as, *Saltem*,
ut.

Expletives.

Cum.

The order of
Conjunctions.
Prepositive.
Subjunctive.
Common.
Prepositive.

Subjunctive.

Encliticall.

Commune.

To conclude, they are called Conjunctions Commune, because they are indifferently set either in the beginning, or after the beginning of a sentence; as almost all the rest of the Conjunctions besides the former: as, Equidem, truly: Ergo, therefore: Igne, though: Saltem, at the least: Tamen, notwithstanding: Quamquam, although, &c.

OF A PREPOSITION.

A Preposition.



Preposition is a part of speech, most commonly set before other parts, either in Apposition: as, Ad patrem, (to the father:) or else in Composition: as, Indoctus, (unlearned)

A Preposition is a part of speech underlining, which is set before other parts, either in Composition, or in Apposition. In Apposition: as, Christus seder ad dextram Patris: Christ sitteth at the right hand of the Father. In Composition: as, Ad adicum juramentum, adhibendum admonuit: he counselled to use an oath of compulsion.

Prepositions put after their Cases.

Certain Prepositions are set after their Cases:

as,	{ Cum, with.	as,	{ Quibuscum, with whom.
	{ Tenu, up to.		{ Pude tenu, up to the twist.
	{ Versus, towards.		{ Angliam versus, towards England.
	{ Usque, untill.		{ Ad occidentem usq, unto the West.

Where note that Versus is set after his casuall word: as, Londrum versus, towards London: and likewise may Pene be set also.

If the casuall word joyued with Tenu be the Plurall Number, it shall be put in the Genitive Case, and be set before Tenu: as, Aurium tenu, up to the eares. Genuum tenu, up to the knees.

Note also that the voices of Prepositions, being set alone without their Casuall words, or forming the degrees of Comparison, be not Prepositions, but are changed into Adverbs.

Things belonging to a Preposition.

The Accidents of a Preposition.

To a Preposition there belongeth the government of Case, and Construction.

Secundum.

But in the same Cases, there is a marvellous varietie of signification, which is to be learned, not so much by rules, as by continual use of reading and writing: as for example. This Preposition Secundum, after, signifieth one thing, when I say; Secundum aurem vulnus accepit: he received a wound nigh to the eare: but another thing here, Secundum Deum, parentes amandi sunt, they are to be loved next unto God. And another thing in this speech, Secundum quidem, satis mihi felix visus sum, in rest I thought myselfe happy enough.

These Prepositions following do serve to the Accusative Case.

Ad ro. Apud, at.

Ad Calendas Græcas, at the Greek calends, that is, never. As bene apud magnos veteris stat gratis facti, but the reputation

In old deeds, continueth very much with such as be thankfull.

Horat. — dicique beatus

Ante obitum nemo, super omnia funera debet: No man may be said to

be happy before his death, and last end. Ne Hercules quidem adver-

sus duos: Hercules may not strive against two. Cis Thamesis sita est

Ætonia; Æton is on this side the Thames. *Horat.*

Est modus in rebus, sunt certi denique fines,

Quos ultra citraque nequit consistere rectum: there is a means in

things, and to conclude, certaine ends beyond, or on this side

whereof, the right cannot consist. *Ovid.*

Cede mihi bene qui laurit, bene vixit, & intra

fortunam debet quisque manere suam. Believe me, he which hath

been well obscure, hath lived well, and every one ought to keepe

within his estate. *Plin. M.* Extra omnem ingenii aleam positus Cicero.

Cicero set without all hazard of wit.

It is locall: as, Circum montem, about the hill: Circa forum, cir-

ca viginti annos: about the court, about twenty yeares. It signifieth

time and number: as, Circiter horam decimam; about the tenth

hour. *Caes.* Circiter duo millia desiderati sunt, about two thousand

were slain. Ne contra stimulum calces ickle nor against the prick.

Principes erga populum clemens, a prince gentle towards the people.

Horat. Multa cadunt inter calicem, supremaque labra: many things fall

between the cup, and the lip. *Terent.* Quem ego infra omnes in-

fimum esse puto, whom I thinke to be beneath all the basest.

Sallust. Dux hostium cum exercitu supra caput est, the captain of

his enemies is with an army above his head.

Terent. Cum lucubrando juxta ancillas lanam faceret, when he carded

wooll by candle light nigh, or by the maide servants.

Feda mors ob oculos versabatur: Cruell death was before his eyes.

Horat. Impiger extremos currit mercator ad Indos,

Per mare pauperiem fugiens, per saxa per ignes:

The diligent merchant flying poverty runneth to the uttermost

Indians, through the sea, by rocks, and through lightnings.

Prope urbem, nigh the citie. Prope mortem, neare death.

Ter. Ita fugias ne prater casam, so flee as it be not beside the cabine.

Aliquid mali propter vicinum malum, some evill for the next evill.

Horat. O cives cives, querenda pecunia primum est,

Virtus post nummos. Citizens citizens, money is first to

be sought, vertue after money. *Ovid.* Me penes est unum vasti cu-

stodia mundi, the prison of the wide world is in the power of me

being but one.

Hor. Caelum non animum mutant, qui trans mare currunt:

They change their aire, not their mind, which saile beyond the sea.

These Prepositions following do serve to the Ablative Case.

Terent. A me nulla tibi orta est injuria: from me no injury doth

arise unto thee. Ab is set before vowels. *Mimus.* Ab alio expectes,

alteri quod feceris: look for from another, that which thou dost to

one. *Terent.* Abs quovis homine beneficium accipere, cum opus est,

gratias: be glad to receive a benefit of any man, when it is need-

full. *Ter.* Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus: without Ceres and

Bacchus, i. bread and wine, Unclean lust cooleth. *Terent.* Absque

Ante, before.

Adversus, Adver-

sum, against.

Cis, citra, on this

side.

Ultra, beyond.

Intra, within.

Extra, without.

Circum, about.

Circa, about.

Circiter, about.

Contra, against.

Erga, towards.

Inter, between.

Infra, beneath.

Supra, above.

Juxta, beside, or

nigh to.

Ob, for.

Per, by, or

through.

Prope, nigh.

Prater, beside.

Propter, for.

Secundum, after.

Post, after.

Penes, in the

power.

Trans, on the fur-

ther side.

Poenè, behinde:

Vique, untill.

Vicus, by.

Versus, towards.

Ab, abs, from or

fro.

Sine, absque

without.

Cum, with.
Clam, privily.
Coram, before, or
 in preience.
De, ex, of or fro.

Pro, for.
Pra, before or in
 Comparison.
Tenus, untill, or
 up to.
Palam, openly.

In with this signe
 to, to the Accusa-
 tive Case, as, *in ur-*
bem, into the City.
In, without this
 signe to, to the Ab-
 lative Case, as, *In*
speces, My hope
 is in thee. *Sub no-*
ctem, a litle before
 night. *Sub iudice*
lis, the matter is
 before the judge.
Super lapidem, up-
 on a stone. *Super*
viridi fronde, up-
 on green leaves.
Subter terram,
 under the earth.
Subter aquis, un-
 der the water.

An Interjection.

Some are of
 Mirth, as, *Eux*,
vah.

Some are of Sor-
 row, as, *Heu*, *hei*.

Some are of
 Dread, as, *Ata*.

eo esse: It might have been without him. *Abique pecunia* miser-
 vivitar: a man liveth miserably without money.

Mimus. Damnum appellandum est cum mala fama lucrum: *gala*
 with an ill name is to be termed losse. *Clam* patre, hid from his
 father, and *Plautus*, *Clam patrem*. *Coram* senatu res acta est: the mat-
 ter was pleaded before the senate. *Sophista* rixantur de lana capi-
 na: *Sophisters* doe scold about, or of goats haire, that is, for no-
 thing. *Qui falsum testimonium dixisse convictus erat*, & saxo *Tarpei*
deiciebatur: he which was found to have uttered false witness, was
 cast downe from the rocke of *Tarpeius*. *Ex malis moribus bonæ le-*
ges nate sunt: of evill manners do come good lawes. *Mimus*: Come
 hacundus in via, pro vehiculo est: a pleasant companion in the way,
 is for, or in stead of a coach. *Ter*. Huic aliquid præ manu dederis:
 thou mightest have given this fellow something before thy hand,
 or, which thou hadst at hand. *Ving*. — capuloque tenus ferrum impo-
 lit ira: in his anger he thrust his sword up to the hilt.

These Prepositions following doe serve to both Cases.

Thest foure, *In*, *sub*, *super*, *subter*, require both cases, but for the
 most part in a divers signification.

Terent. In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum: I came
 in time, which is the chiefest thing of all, without motion.
Ovid. Inque domos superas scandere cura fuit: he had a care to climb
 up into the highest houses, or roomes. It implieth after a sag-
 motion. *Ving*. Sub lucem exporant calathis: that is, a litle before day,
 they carry out in baskets. *Idem*. — Vasto vidisse sub antro, to have
 scene before the vaste cave. *Ving*. Super ripas Tyberis, upon the
 banks of Tyber. *Ving*. Densa subter telludine calas, under the thicke
 target of chance.

There are also Prepositions which are never found without
 composition: as, *Am*, in *Ambio*, to compass: *Di*, in *Diduco*, to di-
 vide, or pull a sunder: *Dis*, in *Distraho*, to pluck away: *Re*, in *re-*
pio, to take: *Se*, in *Sepono*, to put by: and *Con*, in *Concondo*, to en-
 give. But *Con* loseth n, if it be compounded with a word which
 beginneth with a *C*owell: as, *Coagmento*, to joyne together: *Con-*
 to buy with another: *Coinquino*, to soile or stain: *Cooperio*, to cover.

Of an INTERJECTION.



An Interjection is a part of speech which betokeneth
 a sudden passion of the mind, under an imperfect voice.
 And there are so many significations of Interjec-
 tions, as there are motions of a troubled mind.

Some are of mirth: *Eux*, a voice of joy, as, *hoids*: *Vah*, a voice
 of wounding, and sometimes of rejoicing: *Plaut*. *Eux*, surge
 tandem uxorem at egi: *Vah*. I have at the last driven away my wife
 with scolding.

Some are of sorrow: as, *Heu*, a voice of weeping, and lament-
 ing: *Hei*, *ah*, *alas*: *Hoi*, a voice of crying: *oh*, *ah*, *alas*: *ah*, a
 voice of sorrowing: as, *oh*, *alas*. *Ter*. I intro *hoi*, *hei*: go in, *ah*, *alas*.
Ving. O dolor, atque decus magnum! *O* griefe and great honour.

Some are of dread: as, *Acar*, *aha*, *aha*: *Hei*, *ah*. *Ter*. *Hei*, vere
 or ne quid *Andria* apporet mali: *Ah*, I feare lest *Andria* do bring
 some ill newes.

Some are of marrelling: as, *Papè*, a voice of admiration. *Ter. Papè*, nova figura oris. O strange, a new fource of a mouth.

Some are of disdainning: as, *Hem, oh, what, loe, lee*: *Vah, fie*.

Some are of stunning: as, *Apagè*, *fie, fie, away*: *Apagèis*, it is too much, get thee hence, away if thou wilt: *Ter. Apagèis*, *egon* *fandolofus*: *fie, away*, I false-hearted?

Some are of praising: as, *Euge, heida, well done*: *Mar. Cid*, *nequiter, euge, beate*; quickly, lendly *heida, happily*.

Some are of scoorning: *Hui, fo*. *Ter. Hui*, tu mihi illam laudas? fo, dost thou praise her unto me?

Some are of calling: as, *Eho, hofyrea*: *Oh, oh; Io, oh*. *Ter. O*, qui vocat: *oh, who* to be called?

Some are of apprehending suddenly: as, *Atat*. *Ter. Atat*, data hecle mihi sunt verba; *aha*, words truly are given unto me.

Some are of exclamation: as, *Proh, oh, oh*, *oh*: *Proh nefas*, Oh the wickednesse. *Seneca*, Oh paupertas felix! Oh happy poverty.

Some are of cursing: as, *Va malum*. *fie* upon him, in the devils name. *Malum*, a mischiefe take him. *Terent. Quid hoc (malum?)* what is this in the devils name? it is of infelicity, or hard hap.

Some are of laughing: as, *Ha, ha, he*. *Terent. Ha, ha, he*, deserta jam misera sum te ridendo. *Ha, ha, he*, I miserable wretch am even weary with laughing at thee.

Some are of silence: as, *Au, hift*. *Ter. Au*, ne comparandus hic quidem nullum est. *Hift*, this man truly is not to be compared to him.

This is here to be noted, that *Nouns* also and *Verbs* are sometimes put in the stead of an Interjection: as, in *Virg. Navibus*, infandum, amissi. The ships. O horrible chance not to be spoken of, lost. *Cicero*, Sed amabo te, cura. but I pray thee of all love, have a care. *Pea*, any part of speech signifying a confused affection of the mind, may supply the place of an Interjection.

And thus much truly of the Etymologie of the eight parts of speech, though rudely, hath beene delivered to children: as abundantly sufficient in our opinion, so long as they exercise in schoole, ordinary studies and tasks under the rod. And if any please to search out any thing more deeply, and exactly, we send him to reade and turne over the workes of Grammarians. Of whom though there be many, and of sufficient learning, yet we know not any, who, either for excellencie of learning, and teaching, or for lightnesse and eloquence, may be compared, much less preferred, to our *Linacher*.

Of the Construction of the eight parts of speech, called Syntaxis.



Hereto of the eight parts of speech, and of their formes, so far as concerneth Etymologie: now we will intreat of them, so far as concerneth Syntaxis, called construction.

Syntaxis therefore is a due composition & connection of the parts of speech one with another, according to the right order of Grammar.

And it is the same, which the most approved ancients have used both in writing and speaking.

Some are of marrelling: as, *Papè*.

Some are of

Disdainning: as,

Hem, uah.

Some are of

Shunning: as, *Apagè*

Some are of

Praising: as, *Euge*.

Some are of

Scorning: as, *Hui*.

Some are of

Calling: as, *Eho*,

oh, is.

Some are of ap-

prehending sud-

denly, as, *Atat*.

Some are of Ex-

clamation: as, *Proh*

Deum atque hami-

nium fidem.

Some are of

Cursing: as, *Va*

malum.

Some are of

Laughing: as, *Ha*,

ha, he.

Some are of si-

lence, as, *Au*, and

such others.

Other parts of

speech do become

Interjections.

What Construc-

tion is.

The Concor-
dance of Gram-
mar.

But before we speake particularly of the construction of the parts of speech, some things are to be considered generally, and few words, touching the three Conco, dances of Grammar. For the due joining of words in construction, it is to be understood, that in the Latine speech there be three Conco, ds. The first between the Nominative Case & the Verb. The second between the Substantive and the Adjective. The third between the Accusative and the Relative.

The first CONCORD.

The first Concord.

When an English is given to be made in Latine, look out the principall Verb. If there be mo Verbs then one in a sentence: the first is the principall Verb, except it be the Infinitive Mood, or have before it a Relative: as, *That, Whom, Which:* or a Conjunction: as, *Ut, That, Cum, When, Si, If;* or such others.

When you have found the Verb, ask this question *Who or what* and the word that answereth to the question shall be the Nominative Case to the Verb: except it be a Verb Impersonall, which will have no Nominative case. And the Nominative case shall in making and construing Latine be set before the Verb, except a question be asked, and then the Nominative Case is set after the Verb, or after the signe of the Verb: as, *Amas tu? Lovest thou? Venitne rex? Doth the king come? Likewise, if the Verb be of the Imperative Mood: as, Amatu. Love thou: Amato ille: Let him love. And sometime when this signe is or There cometh before the English of the Verb: as, *Est liber meus: It is my book. Venit me quidam. There came one to me.**

And that Casuall word which cometh next after the Verb, and answereth to this question, *Whom or What*, made by the Verb, shall commonly be the Accusative case, except the Verb do properly govern another Case after him, to be construed withall. as, *Si cupis placere magistro, utere diligentia, nec sis tantus cessator, ut calcarios indigeas.* If thou covest to please thy Master, use diligence, and be not so slack, that thou shalt need spurs.

A Verb personall agreeth with his Nominative case, in Number and Person: as, *Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis.* The Master readeth, and ye regard not. *Nunquam sera est ad bonos mores via.* The way is never late to good manners. *Fortuna nunquam perpetua est bona.* Fortune is never alwayes good.

Where note that the first Person is more worthy than the second, and the second more worthy than the third.

The Nominative case of the first or second person, is seldom expressed, except it be for discretion sake: as, *Vos damnastis.* Ye have condemned: as if one would say, *None else:* or for Emphasis sake, as *Tertius.* Tu es patronus, tu pater; si desieris tu, perimus. Even thou art our patron, even thou our father; as if one would say, *Thou chiefly,* and before all others: *If thou forsakest;* as if he would say, *If thou, of all others, forsakest us, we perish.* *Ovis.* Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eris. Even thou (of all others) shalt be unto me a lord, an husband, a brother.

In Verbs, whose signification belongeth unto men onely, the Nominative case of the third person is often understood: as, *Ille.* he is: *Fertur,* he is reported: *Faunt,* they report: *Dicunt,* they say:

And

As they say: Prædicant, they tell it abroad: Clamitant, they cry abroad; and such like: as, *Trent* Fecit atrocias sagittas designasse, He is reported to have committed heinous offences. *Ovid*, Teque mecum ira poenituisse tuæ, And they report thee to have repented of thine anger.

A casual word is not alwayes the Nominative case to the Verb, but sometimes the Infinitive Mood of a Verb: as, *Mentiri non est meum*, To lye is not my property: *Plautus* Sometimes præterea, clause aforesaid, of some member of a sentence: as, *Ovid*, Adde quod ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes.

Emoluit mores, nec fuit esse ferus: Adde herewith, that to have learned faithfully the Liberrall Sciences, doth make more gentle the manners, neither suffereth them to be fierce. *Dilucid surgere, saluberrimum est*, To rise betimes in the morning, is the most wholesome thing in the world. *Multum scire vita jucundissima*, To know much, is the most pleasant (or sweetest) life of all. And sometimes an Averb with a Genitive case: as, *Partim vicorum ceciderunt in bello*, Part of the men were slain in war. *Partim signorum sunt combusti*, Part of the Ensignes were burnt.

Verbs of the Infinitive Mood, will have before them an Accusative case for a Nominative: as, *Te rediisse incolam: m gaudeo*, I am glad thee to have returned safe. *Te fabulam agere volo*, I will thee to play the Comedy. And it may be resolved by *Quod* and *Ut*, in this manner: *Quod tu redisti incolam, gaudeo*, That thou hast returned safe I am glad. *Ut tu fabulam agas, volo*, I will that thou play the Comedy.

Many Nominative cases Singular, with a Conjunction Copulative coming between them, will have a Verb Plurall: which Verb Plurall shall agree with the Nominative case of the most worthy person: as, *Ego & tu sumus in tuto*, I and thou are in safeguard. *Tu & pater periclitamini*, Thou and thy father are in jeopardy. *Pater & præceptor accersunt te*, Thy father and thy master have sent for thee.

When a Verb cometh between two Nominative cases of divers Numbers, it may indifferently accord with either of them, so that they be both of one person: as, *Amantium ira amoris redintegratio est*, The falling out of Lovers, is the renewing of love. *Quid enim nisi vota supersunt?* For what remaineth, saving one's prayers? *Pectora percussit, pedus quoque robora sunt*, She smote her breasts, and her breasts turned into Oke also. *Virg* Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt. Nothing but verses do here want.

Verbs Impersonals have no Nominative case before them: as, *Tædæ me vitæ* It irketh me of my life. *Pertæsum est conjugii*, I am weary of wedlock.

A Noun of multitude of the Singular Number, is sometimes joined to a Verb Plurall: as, *Pars abiit*, Part went away. *Utique deluduntur dolis*, Both are mocked with deceits.

The second CONCORD.

When you have an Adjective ask this question, *Wha*, or *What*? and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the Substantive to it.

The Adjective, whether it be Peun Pronoun or Participle,

(P 3)

agreeth

An Infinitive Mood, Nominative case to the Verb.

The first Exception.

The second Exception.

The second Concord.

agreeth with his Substantive in Number, Case and Gender. *as, Homo armatus, A man armed. Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur. A sure friend is tryed in a doubtfull matter. Ager colendus, A field to be tilled. Hic vir, This man. Meus herus est, It is my master. Juvenal. Rara avis in terris, nigroque similissima cygno. A rare bird in the earth, and most like unto a white Swan. Ovid. Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos, Whilst thou shalt be happy, thou shalt number many friends. Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes, No friend will go to lost riches. Senec. Non hoc primum pectora vulnus mea senserunt, graviora tuli. My breasts have not felt this wound, now the first time, I have suffered more grievous things.*

Where note, that the Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter.

Many Substantives Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative coming between them, will have an Adjective Plurall, which Adjective shall agree with the Substantive of the most worthy Gender: *as, Rex & Regina beati, The King and the Queen are blessed.*

Sometimes a Clause is in stead of the Substantive to the Adjective: *as, Audio regem Doroberniam proficisci, It being heard the King to go to Canterbury.*

The third CONCORD.

The third Concord.

When ye have a Relative, ask this question, *Who, or What?* and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the Antecedent to it.

The Antecedent most commonly is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is repeated again of the Relative.

The Relative agreeth with his Antecedent, in Gender, Number and Person: *as, Vir sapiens qui pauca loquitur, The man is wise that speaketh few things, or words. — Vir bonus est quis? Who is a good man? Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat, He which keepeth the statutes of his fathers, and their laws & ordinances.*

Many Antecedents Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative between them, will have a Relative Plurall: which Relative shall agree with the Antecedent of the most worthy Gender: *as, Imperium & dignitas quae petiunt, The rule and the dignity which thou hast required.*

But in things not apt to have life, the Neuter Gender is most worthy: yea, and in such case, though the Substantives or Antecedents be of the Masculine or of the Feminine Gender, and none of them of the Neuter: yet may the Adjective or Relative be put in the Neuter Gender: *as, Arcus & calami sunt bona, The bow and arrows be good; Arcus & calami quae fragili, the bow and arrows which thou hast broken.*

Sometimes a Relative hath for his Antecedent, the whole reason that goeth before him, and then it shall be put in the Neuter Gender, and sing. Number: *as, In tempore veni, quod omnium est primum, I came in time, which is the chiefest thing of all.*

But if the Relative be referred to two clauses or more, then the Relative shall be put into the Plurall Number: *as, Tu multum dormis, & saepe potas, quae ambo sunt corpori inimica, Thou sleepest much, and drinkest often, which both are naught for the body.*

Thus

When this English, *This*, may be turned into this English, *Quod*, it is a Relative; otherwise it is a Conjunction, which in Latin is called *Quod*, or *Ut*: and in Latin making, it may elegantly be put away, by turning the Nominative case into the Infinitive Mood: as, *Gaudeo quod tu bene valet*: *Gaudeo te bene valere*; I am glad that thou art in good health: I am glad thee to be in good health. *Jubeo ut tu abeas*, I bid that thou go hence: *Jubeo te abire*, I bid thee to go hence.

When a Relative cometh between two Antecedents or Subjunctives of divers Orders or Numbers, it may indifferently agree, either with the former: as, *Avis quæ passer appellatur*, The bird which is called a Sparrow. *Est ne ea Luteria, quam nos Parisios dicimus?* Is not that called Luteria, which we do call Paris? *Valerius Maximus*, *Senatus assiduum stationem eo loci peragebat*, qui hodie senaculum appellatur, The Senate made their daily meeting in that place, which is now called the Counsell chamber. *Non procul ab eo flumine, quod Saliam vocant*, Not far from that River, which they call Salia. *Cybero*, *Propitius à terra Jovis stella fertur*, quæ Phæton dicitur, The Star of Jupiter, which is called Phæton, is carried not far off from the earth. Or with the latter: as, *Avis qui passer appellatur*, The bird which is called a Sparrow. *Est ne ea Luteria, quos nos Parisios dicimus?* Is not that called Luteria, which we do call Paris? *Homines videntur illum globum, quæ terra dicitur*, Men do defend that globe or round thing, which is called the Earth. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*, There is a place in the prison, which is called Tullianum, or a Dungeon. *In coitu Luna, quod interlunium vocant*, In the Conjunctions of the Sun and Moon, which they call the space between the Moon and the New.

Sometimes a Relative, and sometimes a Pronoun Adjective, followeth the Primitive, which is understood in the Possessive: as, *Tertius*, *Omnes omnia bona dicere, & laudare fortunas meas, qui illum haberem tali ingenio præditum*; All men did speak all good things, and commended my good hap, who had a Son indured with such a good nature. *Ovid*, — *Nostros vidisti stentis ocellos*, Thou hast seen our eyes, of me weeping.

When there cometh no Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative case to the Verb: as, *Miser est qui nummos admiratur*, Wretched is that person, which is in love with Money. *Boetius*, *Felix qui potuit boni fontem visere lucidum*, He is happy, which could go to see the clear fountain of goodnesse. But when there cometh a Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be such Case as the Verb will have after him: or shall be governed of some other word joynd with the Verb in the same sentence: as, *Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum*, Happy is he whom other mens harins do make to beware. *Ovid*, *Gratia ab officio quod mora tardat abest*, Favour is absent from that duty, which lingering delayeth. *Virg*, *Cujus numen adoro*, Whose Deity I worship. *Quorum optimum ego habeo*, The best whereof I have. *Cui similem non vidi*, To whom I have not seen the like. *Quo dignum te judicavi*, Whereof I have thought thee worthy. *Quo melius nemo scribit*, Then whom, no man writeth better. *Quem videndo*

Note.

An Exception.

The case of the Relative.

videndo obstupuit, In seeing of whom, he was amazed. *Lego virgilium prae quo ceteri poez sordent, I read Virgil, in comparison of whom, the rest of the Poets are of small account.*

The Relative therefore is not alwaies governed of the Verb that he cometh before, but sometimes of the Infinitive Verb that cometh after the Verb: as, *Quibus voluisti me gratias agere, What persons thou wiltdest me to thank, I have thanked.*

Sometime of a Participle: as, *Quibus rebus adductus fecisti, With what things moved didst thou it?*

Sometime of the Gerund: as, *Quae nunc non est narrandi locus, Which things at this present, is no time to tell.*

Sometime of the Preposition set before him: as, *Quem in locum deducta res sit, vides, Unto what state the matter is now brought, thou seest.*

Sometime of the Substantive that he doth accord withall: as, *Senex qui vir fieri, Thou shalt perceive what a fellow I am. Albeit in this maner speaking, Qui is an Indefinite, and not a Relative.*

Sometimes of a Noun Partitive or Distributive: as, *Quarum rerum utram minus velim, non facere possum exstimare, Of which two things, whether I would with lesse will have, I cannot easily esteem.*

Sometime it is put in the Genitive case, by reason of a Substantive coming next after him: as, *Ego illum non novi, cujus causae incipis, I knew him not, for whose cause thou beginnest this matter.*

Sometime it is otherwise governed of a Noun Substantive: as, *Omnia tibi dabuntur, quibus opus habes, All things shall be given thee, which thou hast need of.*

Sometime of an Adverb: as, *Cui utrum obviam procedam, nondum itaui, Althow, whether I will go to meet with, I have not yet determined.*

Sometime it is put in the Ablative case, with this sign. *Thuc* and is governed of the Comparative degree coming after him: as, *Utere virtute, qua nihil est melius, Alse Virtue, than the which nothing is better.*

Sometime it is not governed at all, but is put in the Ablative case absolute: as, *Quantus erat Julius Caesar, quo impetrante, Romani primum Britanniam ingressi sunt? How worthy a man was Julius Caesar, under whose conduct the Romans first entred into Britain?*

Also, when it signifieth an instrument wherewith a thing is to be done, it is put in the Abl. case: as, *Ferum habuit, quo se occideret, We had a knife, wherewith he would have slain himself.*

As the Relative may be the Nominative case to the Verb, so it may be the Substantive to the Adjective that is joyned with him, or that cometh after him: as, *Divitias amare noli, quod omnium est foedidissimum, Do not thou love riches, which is so, is the most beggarly thing in the world.*

Nouns Interrogatives and Indefinites, do follow the rule of the Relative: as, *Quis, who? Uter, whether of the two? Quis, what manner of? Quotus, how great? Quotus, how many? &c. which evermore come before the Verb, like as the Relative doth: as, *Hei mihi, qualis erat? talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi, Alas me, what manner of one was he? such an one, as I never saw.**

The construction of a Noun Substantive.

When two Substantives betokening divers things, doe so come together, as that the later seemeth in some sort, to be possessed of the former : the later shall be the Genitive Case; as, *Facundia Ciceronis* : the eloquence of Cicero. *Opus Virgili* : the worke of Virgil. *Amator Auditorum* : a lover of Audies. *Dogma Platonis* : the opinion of Plato. *Juvenal* : *crevit amor nummi*, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit : the love of money increaseth, as much as the money it selfe increaseth. *Rex pater patriæ* : the King is the father of the Countrey. *Arma Achillis* : the weapons of Achilles. *Cultor agri* : a tiller of the ground.

Therefore this Genitive Case is oftentimes turned into an Adjective Possessive : as *Patris domus* : the house of my father. *Paterna domus* : my fathers house. *Heri filius* : the son of my Master : *Herilis filius* : my Masters sonne. And sometimes it is turned into the Dative Case : as, *Luc. de Cat. Vbi pater est, Vbi que maritus* : he is a father to the City, and a husband to the City.

But if they belong both to one thing, they shall by Apposition, be put both in one Case : as, *Pater meus vir, amicus meus* : my father being a man, loveth me a childe. *Ovid. Affodiuntur opes irritamenta malorum* : riches being provocatives of evils, are digged out of the earth. *Virg. Ignavum fucos pecus a præsepibus arcent*. they drive the Drovers a sluggish cattell from their Dives.

When the English of this word, *res*, a thing : is put with an Adjective, ye may put away *res*, and put the Adjective in the Neuter Gender like a Substantive : as, *Multa me impedierunt* : many things have letted me. And being so put, it may be the Substantive to an Adjective : as, *Pauca his similia* : a few things like unto these. *Nonnulla hujusmodi* : many things of like sort.

An Adjective in the Neuter Gender put alone without a Substantive, standeth for a Substantive : and may sometimes have a Genitive Case after him, as if it were a Substantive : as, *Multum lucri* : much gaine : *Quantum negotii* : how much businesse. *Id operis* : that worke. *Paululum pecuniæ* : a little money. *Hoc noctis* : this night. *Catul. Non videmus nauticæ, quod intergo est* : we see not the part of the Gallie, which is on the backe. *Juvenal.*

Quantum quisque sua nummorum servat in arca. Tantum habet & fidei : so much money as every one keepeth in his chest, even so much credit he hath.

Sometimes the Genitive Case is put alone, the former Substantive being understood, by an Eclipsis : as, in these speeches : *Ter. Vbi ad Dianæ veneris, ito ad dextram* : when thou comest to the Temple of Diana, goe on the right hand. *Ventum erat ad Vestæ* : he came to the Temple of Vesta. For in both places the word *Templum*, Temple, is understood. *Virg. Hectoris Andromache* : *Andromache* the wife of Hector. *Idem. Deiphobe Glauci* : *Deiphobe* the daughter of Glaucus. For, *Glia*, daughter, is understood.

The construction of the Noun Substantive :

The varying of a Substantive into an Adjective.

An exception. Apposition.

Praise, or dis-
praise.

derstood. Ter. Hujus video Byrrhiam : I see Byrrhia, this
servant. For, servum, servant, is understood.

Words importing indument of any quality or property,
the praise or dispraise of a thing; coming after a Sub-
stantive, or a Verbe Substantive may be put diversely
but most commonly in the Ablative, or Genitive Case : as
Puer bona indole : or Puer bonæ indolis : a child of a good
wardnesse. Puer boni ingenii : or Puer bono ingenio : a child of
a good wit. Vir nulla fide : a man of no credit. Ovid. Ingens
vultus puer, ingenuique pudoris : a boy of a comely countenance,
and honest bashfulness.

Opus, and Usus.

Opus and usus, signifying neede, require an Ablative case,
as, Opus est mihi tuo judicio : I have neede of thy judgement.
Viginti minis usus est filio : my sonne hath neede of twenty
pounds. Cicero. Autoritate tua nobis opus est : we have neede
of thy authority. Pecuniam qua sibi nihil esset usus, ab eis quibus
sciret usui esse, non accepit : he received not money, whereas
had no neede, of them whom he knew had use for it. Cel-
sius.

Opus, put Adje-
ctively.

But Opus, neede, seemeth sometimes to be put Adjectively,
for, necessary : and is construed diversely : as, Cicero. Du-
nobis & author opus est : a Captaine and a Governour is ne-
cessary for us. Idem. Dicis nummos mihi opus esse ad apparatum
triumphi : thou sayest that money is necessary for me, for the
preparation of the triumph. Trent. Alia quæ opus sunt para :
provide other things which are necessary. Cicero. Sulpitii ope-
ram intelligo ex tuis literis, tibi multum opus non fuisse : I un-
derstand by thy letters, that the helpe of Sulpitius was not
very necessary for thee:

The construction of Adjectives.

The Genitive
Case.

Adjectives that signifie desire, knowledge, remembrance,
and the contrary, as ignorance, forgetting, and such like,
require a Genitive case : as, Cupidus auri : covetous of mo-
ney. Peritus belli : expert of warfare. Ignarus omnium : igno-
rant of all things. Fidens animi : bold of heart. Dubius men-
tis : doubtfull of minde. Memor præteriti : mindfull of that
is past. Reus furti : accused of theft. Plinius. Est natura homi-
num novitatis avida : the nature of man is greedy of newes.
Silius. Non sum animi dubius, sed devius æqui : I am not doubt-
full of minde, but swarving from right. Virg. Mens furtivi
præcizia : a minde foreknowing that which is to come. Idem.
Memor esto brevis ævi : be mindfull of thy short time. Cicero.
Græcarum literarum rudis : ignorant of the Greek tongue.

Verbals, in ax.

Verbiall Adjectives in ax, will also have a Genitive case:
as, Tempus edax rerum : time is the consumer of things. Ovid.
Audax ingenii : adventurous of nature. Seneca. Virtus est vi-
tiorum fugax : vertue is the abandoner of vices. Horat. Vi-
lium sagax : quick in spying profitable things. Idem. Pro-
positi tenax : sticke in his purpose. Virg. Tam fidi praviq; te-
nax, quam nuncia veri : as well a keeper of a lie, and that
which is naught as a teller of the truth. Plaut. Pecuniarum po-
tens, &c. An asker of money, and so forth. Many other Ad-
jectives

also being subject to no certaine rules, will have a
certain case, Linaccher and Despanterius have gathered at
and with which thou mayest be sufficiently acquaint-
ed by continuall reading.

Prænomina Partitibiles, or partitively put, and certaine In-
determinate, with certaine Nounes of Number, will have a
certain case, from which they have their Gender; as, Aliquis,
some body; Alter, whether of the two; Neuter, neither of the two;
Nemo, no body; Nullus, none; Solus, alone; Unus, one; Medius the
middle; Quisque, every man; Quicumque, whosoever; Quidam, a
certain man; Quis, for aliquis, some body; or Quis, who? an
Interrogative: as, Unus, one; Duo, two; Tres, three; Primus,
first; & Secundus, the second; Tertius, the third, &c. as Ali-
quodotrum, some of us; Primus omnium, the first of all. Ci-
cum, Quoniam te Marce fili annum jam audientem Cratippum,
at Athens, abundare oportet præceptis institutisque Philo-
sophiæ; propter summam & doctoris auctoritatem, & Urbis, quo-
iam aker, te scientia augere potest, altera exemplis: Although,
sine Marcus, it behoveth thee, hearing Cratippus, now a year,
and that at Athens, to abound with precepts and instructi-
ons of Philosophie; for the singular authority, both of the
teacher, and also of the City; whereof the one may enrich
the with knowledge, the other with examples. Utrum ho-
mo mavis, accipe: take which of these two thou wilt. Ovid.
Quisquis fuit ille Deorum: whosoever of the Goddesses hee was.
Tui An quisquam hominum est æque miser, ut ego? Is any man
so miserable as I? Virg. Divum promittere nemo auderet: none
of the gods durst promise. Tres fratrum: three of the brothers.
Quatuor iudicum: four of the Judges. Sapientum octavus quis
fuerit, nondum constat: of the wise men who was the eighth, it
is not yet agreed upon. Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romu-
lus: the first of the Kings of the Romanes was Romulus.

But in another sense they require an Ablative case with a
Preposition: as, Primus ab Hercule, the first from Hercules.
Tertius ab Aenea, the third from Aeneas.

And in another sense, a Dative: as, Virg. Nulli pietate se-
cundus: second to none in godliness. And they are used also
with these Prepositions; e, de, ex, inter, ante: as, Ovid. Est
Deus e vobis alter: the one of you is a God. Idem. Solus de su-
peris: he alone of the Gods above. Virg. Primus inter omnes:
the chief amongst them all. Primus ibi ante omnes, magna
constante caterva,

Laocoon ardens summa decurrit ab arce: the chiefest amongst
them all, Laocoon chasting, ranne downe from the top of
the Tower.

When a question is asked, the answer in Latine, must be
made by the same case of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle,
and by the same Tense of a Verbe, that the question is
asked by: as, Cujus est fundus? whose ground is it? Vicini:
my neighbours. Quid agitur in ludo literario? what doe they
in the Schoole? Studetur: they studie. Quarum rerum nulla
est scieria? of what things is there no latitude? Divitiarum?
of riches. Quid rerum nunc geritur in Anglia? what businesse
is now a doing in England? Consultitur de religione: they
consult

A diverse con-
struction of
Nounes.

An Interrogat.

An exception.

1.

2.

3.

Comparatives,
and Superlatives.The constructi-
on of Compa-
ratives.Profit, or dis-
profit.

consult of Religion. Except a question be asked by *Cuius*, *cujus* : as, *Cuius est sententia* ? whose sentence is it : *Ciceronis* : the sentence of Cicero. *Cujus pecus* ? whose cattle. *Laniorum* : the Butchers. Or by a word that may govern several Cases : as, *Quanti emisti librum* ? for how much thou bought the booke : *Parvo* : for a little. *Furtive accuset* an homicide, an utroque ? dost thou accuse of theft, or of slaughter, or of both ? Or except I must answer by one of these Possessives : *Meus*, mine : *Tuus*, thine : *Suus*, his : *Noster*, our : *Vester*, your : as, *Cujus est domus* ? whose house is it : *Non vestra*, sed *nostra* : not yours, but ours. *Cujus est codex* ? whose booke is this ? *Meus*, mine.

Nounes of the Comparative degree, which respect things ; and of the Superlative, which respect more things : being put partitively : which is to say, having after them this English, *of*, or *among* : require a Genitive Case, when of they have their Gender : as, *Aurium mollior est sinistra* : of the eares, the left is the softer : *Cicero oratorum eloquentissimus* : Cicero the most eloquent of Orators. *Manuum fortior est dextera* : of the hands, the right hand is the stronger. *Digitorum medius est longissimus* : of the fingers, the middle finger is the longest. *Virgilius poetarum doctissimus* : of, or among the Poets, Virgil is the most learned.

Nounes of the Comparative degree, having, *than*, or, *by*, after them : doe cause the word following to be the Ablative Case : as, *Frigidior glacie* : more cold then Ice. *Doctior multo* : better learned by a great deale. *Uno pede altior* : higher by a foot. *Vilius argentum est auro*, *virtutibus aurum* : silver is baser then gold, gold then vertue. They will have also another Ablative Case, signifying the measure of exceeding : as, *Cicero*. *Quanto doctior es*, *tanto te geras submissius* : by how much thou art more learned, by so much behave thy selfe more humbly.

Tanto, by so much : *Quanto*, by how much : *Multo*, by much : *Longè*, by farre : *Etate*, by age : *Natu*, by birth : are used with both the degrees : as, *Catul*. *Tanto pessimus omnium poeta*, *quanto tu optimus omnium patronus* : by so much thou art the worst Poet, by how much thou art the best Patron. *Erasm*. *Nocturnæ lucubrationes longè periculosissimæ habentur* : night studies are counted by farre most dangerous. *Longè ceteris peritior es*, sed non multo melior tamen : by farre thou art more learned than the rest, but yet not much better. *Jovnal*. *Omne animi vitium, tanto conspectius in se*

Crimen habet, quanto major, qui peccat, habetur : every blot of the minde hath in it selfe a fault by so much more apparent, by how much he is counted greater, which offendeth. *Major & maximus etate* : greater and greatest by age ; that is, elder and eldest. *Major & maximus natu*, elder and eldest by birth.

The Dative Case.

Adjectives that betoken profit or disprofit, likeness, unlikensse, pleasure, submitting, or belonging to any thing, require a Dative Case, as, *Labor est utilis corpori* : labour is profitable

profitable to the body. *Aequalis Hectori* : equal to Hector. *Iustus bello* : fit for warre. *Jucundus omnibus* : pleasant to all persons. *Parenti supplex* : suppliant to his father. *Mihi proprium* : proper to me. *Virg. Sis bonus & felixque tuis* : Oh be thou good and favorable to thy friends. *Martial. Turba gravis, placideque inimica quieti* : the troublesome rout being grievous to peace, and enemy to pleasant rest. *Est finitimus, coloris poetica* : a Poet is of a very great affinity with an Orestes. *Ovid. Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo* : the colour which was white, is now contrary to white. *Martial. Jucundus amicis* : pleasant to his friends. *Omnibus supplex* : lowly to all men. *Horat. Si facis ut patrie, sit idoneus, agros* : if thou canstest that he may be fit for the Country, profitable for the ground.

Likewise, Adjectives compounded with this Preposition, *Con* : as, *Contubernalis*, a Chamber-fellow : *Commilito*, a fellow soldier : *Conversus*, serving together, a fellow servant : *Cognatus*, kinsman, &c.

Some Adjectives denoting likeness, have a Genitive Case : as, *Lucanus : Quem metuis par hujus erat* : hee whom thou fearest was like this man. *Terent. Patres equum esse censent, nos jamjam à pueris illicet nasci senes, neq; illarum affines esse rerum, quas fert adolescentia* : fathers thinke it to bee a great thing, that we even lately from children, should become by and by old men, and not to be partakers of those things, which youth bringeth. *Idem. Domini similis es* : thou art like thy master. *Auson. Mens conscia recti* : a minde knowing the right. *Virg.*

Præterea regina tui fidiissima dextra Occidit ipsa sua : further the Queene her selfe most true to thee, is dead by her owne right hand.

Communis, common : *Alienus*, another mans : *Immunis*, exempt : serve to divers Cases : as, *Cicero. Commune animalium omnium est conjunctionis appetitus, procreandi causa* : the desire of conjunction for procreation sake, is common to all living creatures. *Mors omnibus communis* : death is common to all men. *Hoc mihi tecum commune est* : this thing is common to me and thee. *Salust. Non aliena consilii* : not unmeet for the purpose. *Seneca. Alienus ambitioni* : farre from ambition. *Cicero. Non alienus a seculo studiis* : not estranged from the studies of Seecula. *Ovid. — vobis immunibus hujus Esse mandabitur* : it shall be granted to you to be free from this evil. *Plinius. Caprificus omnibus immunis est* : the wilde fig-tree is free for all. *Immunis ab illis malis sumus* : we are cleare from those evils.

Natus, borne : *Commodus*, profitable : *Incommodus*, unprofitable : *Vtilis*, profitable. *Inutilis*, unprofitable : *Vehe-mens*, earnest : *Aptus*, fit : will sometimes also have an Accusative Case, with a Preposition : as, *Cicero : Natus, ad gloriam* : borne to glory.

Verball Adjectives of the Passive signification in, *bilis* : and Participles, or rather Participials, in *us* : will have a Dative Case : as, *Flebilis, flendus omnibus* : to be lamented of all men. *Formidabilis, formidandus hosti* : to be feared of his enemies.

Adjectives compounded with *Con*.

Likeness.

A diverse construction of certain Adjectives.

In *bilis*, & *us*.

enemies, *Martialis*: O mihi post nullo Juli memorande sodale
 O Julius, worthy to be remembered of me, after none of the
 fellows. *Statius*: — nulli penetrabilis astro, *Lucas* erat in
 wood was to be pierced through by no starre.

The Accusative Case.

Measure.

The measure of length, breadth, or thicknesse of any thing
 is put after Adiectives in the Accusative Case: as, *Turris*
alta centum pedes: a Tower of an hundred foot high. *Ar-*
bor lata tres digitos: a tree three fingers broad. *Gnemon* *se-*
rem pedes longus, *umbram non amplius quam quatuor pedes longam*
reddit: the plume of the Diall seven foote long, maketh a shad-
 dow no more then foure foote long. And sometimes in the Ab-
 lative Case: as, *Liber crassus tres pollices*, vel, *tribus polli-*
bus: a booke three inches thicke. *Columella*: *Fons Janus polli-*
bis-tribus, *altus triginta*: A well broad three foote, deepe thi-
 ty foote. *De Gentilibus*: as, *Columel*: *In morem horti amen-*
latus pedum densum, *longas pedum quinquagenarium factor*:
 make thou the floores broad ten foote a peece, long fifty foote
 a peece.

The Ablative Case.

Fulnesse, empti-
 nesse.

Adiectives signifying fulnesse, emptinesse, plenty, or want-
 ing, require an Ablative Case: and sometimes a Genitive
 as, *Copis abundans*: abounding with plenty. *Vacuis ira*, *in-*
ab ira: voyde of anger. *Nulla epistola inanis re aliqua*: no epi-
 stle holde of something. *Dicissimus agri*: richest of ground.
Stultorum plena sunt omnia: the world is full of fooles. *Qui*
nisi mentis inops, oblatum respuat aurum: who, unless hee be
 holde of wit, both refuse gold being offered. *Integer vixit*
seclerisque purus, *Non eget Mauri jaculis*, *neq; arcu*: hee that is
 upright of life and pure from offence, needeth not the arrowes
 nor bow of Maurus. *Expers omnium*: holde of all things. *Cor-*
pus inane animæ: a body without a soule. *Amor & melle & sa-*
le est fecundissimus: Love is very full, both of hony and gall.
Plautus. *Horat*. *Dives agris*, *dives positus in fenore nummi*:
 rich in lands, rich in money, put to usury. *Virg*. *At festæ multa*
referunt se nocte minores, *Cura Thymo plenz*: but the lesser
 Bees waxed, doe returne home, late in the night, their
 shankes full with thyme. *Idem*. *Qua regio in terris nostri non*
plena laboris: what Countrey in the earth is not full of our
 labour? *Idem*. *Dives opum*, *dives pictæ vestis & auri*: rich in
 substance, rich in embroidered raiment, and gold. *Pesant*
O curvæ in terras animæ, & *cœlestium inanes*: O soules wholy
 bent towards the earth, and without heavenly things! *Ex-*
pers fraudis: without fraud. *Gratia beatus*: rich in good
 will.

Diversitie.

Nounes of diversity will have an Ablative Case with a
 Preposition: as, *Virg*. *Alter ab illo*: others from him. *Al-*
ud ab hoc: others from this thing. *Diversus ab isto*: diffe-
 rent from this man. And sometimes a Dative: as, *Huic di-*
versum: different from this thing.

Adiectives will have an Ablative Case, signifying the
 cause;

The cause of a thing.

The forme of a thing.

Dignus, &c.

as, Pallidus ira : pale with anger. Liuida armis-braves
armes black and blue with armour. Incurvus senectute :
bowed with old age. Trepidus morie futura : trembling for
death to come.

The forme of manner of a thing is put after *Persones*, in
the *Ablative Case* : as, Facies miris modis pallida : a face pale
after a wonderfull manner. Nomine Grammaticus, re Barba-
ria : a Grammarian in name ; barbarous indeed. Cicero. Sum
tibi cura parens, præceptor consilii : I am to thee a father
by nature, a master by counsels. Virg. Trojanus origine Cæsar :
Cæsar a Trojan by descent. Spe dives, re pauper : rich in hope,
poor indeed. Syrus natione : a Syrian by his Countrey.

Dignus, worthy : Indignus, unworthy : Priditus, endued :
Captus, taken : Contentus, content : Excorris, a banished man :
and such others, will have an *Ablative Case* : as, Dignus ho-
nore : worthy of honour : Captus oculis : blinde. Virtute præ-
ditus : endued with vertue : Paucis contentus : content with a
few things. Ter. Dignus odio : worthy of hatred. Qui stium
habere tali ingenio prædium : which had a soune endued with
such a wit. Virg. Atque oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ : and
the Moles being blinde have digged their nests. Idem. Sorte
me contentus abi : go thy wayes content with thine estate.
And sometimes a *Genitive* : as, Ovid. Milicia est operis altera
digna tui : It is a second warfare becomming thy labour. Virg.
Descendam magnorum haud quaquam indignus avorum : I will
come downe at no time unworthy of my noble Progeni-
tors.

Where note, that Dignus, indignus, and contentus : may in
stead of the *Ablative Case*, have the *Infinitive Good* of a
Verb : as, Dignus laudari : worthy to be praised. Contentus in
pace vivere : content to live in peace.

The construction of a Pronoun.

These *Genitive Cases* of the *Primitives*, Mei, of me : Tui,
of thee : Sui, of him : Nostri, of us : Vestri, of you : be used
when the suffering or passion is signified : as, Amor mei : the
love of me. Languet desiderio tui : he languisheth for the desire
of thee. Ovid. Parsque mihi latitat corpore clausa meo : and part
of thee lieth hid being shut up in my body. Imago nostri : the
image of us. But when action or possession of a thing is sig-
nified : Meus, mine : Tuus, thine : Suis, his : Noster, ours : Ve-
strus, yours : be used : as, Ars tua : thine Art. Imago nostra :
our image : that is, which we doe possess. Favet desiderio
tuo : he favourerth thy desire.

These *Genitive Cases* Nostrium, of us : Vestrum, of you :
be used after *Distributives*, *Partitives*, *Comparatives*, and
Superlatives : as, Nemo vestrum : none of you. Aliquis no-
strum : some of us. Unusquisque vestrum : every one of you. Ma-
ior nostrum : the elder of us. Maximus natu nostrum : the eldest
of us. Ne cui vestrum sit mirum : let it be no marvell to
any of you.

These *Possessives*, meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester, doe
require after them these *Genitives* : Ipsi, of him : Solus, of
one

Pronounes,
Primitives.

Pronounes,
Derivatives.

Pronounes,
Possessive.

Reciprocates.

Ipfel

Idem.

Demonstratives.

Inc., & Inc.

Hic, & Ille.

Hic, and Ille, when they are referred to two Houses going before. Hic, is properly and most usually referred to the latter and nearer: and Ille, to the former, and furthest off: as, Colum: Agricolæ contrarium est pastoris propositum: ille, quàm maximè subactò, et puro solo gaudet: hic, novali graminofoque: ille, fructum è terra sperat: hic, è pecore: the husbandmans purpose is contrary to the shepherds: he, delighteth most of all, in a well filled and pure soile: this, in a new

broken, and fresh pasture full of grasse : hee looketh for
me from the earth : this from his shep. Per contracti-
onem, Hic is sometimes referred to the further : and Ille to
the nearer.

The construction of the Verbe, and first of the Nominative Case after the Verbe.

A Nominative
before, and af-
ter the Verbe,

Verbes Substantives, as, Sum, I am : Forem, I might be :
Fio, I am made : Existo, I am named : Appellor, I am
called : Dicor, I am said : Vocor, I am called : Nuncupor, I
am named : and such like : as Scribor, I am written : Salu-
tor, I am saluted : Videor, I am seen, Habeor, I am coun-
ted : Existimor, I am esteemed, will have such Case after
them, as they have before them, that is, of each side com-
monly a Nominative Case : as, Fama est malum, fame is an
evil thing. Malus cultura fit bonus, an evil person by due or-
dering of governance is made good. Cæsius vocatur dives :
Cæsius is called rich. Horatius salutatur Poëta : Horace is sa-
luted by the name of Poet. Malo te divitem esse, quam haberi : I
had rather thou were rich indeed, then to be accounted. Deus est
summum bonum : God is the chiefe good. Perpallii vocantur
nani, very little men are called dwarves. Fides religionis nostræ
fundamentum habetur : faith is counted the foundation of our
religion.

Also Verbes that betoken bodily moving, going, resting,
or doing, which be properly called Verbes of Action : as,
Eo, I goe : Incedo, to goe : Curro, to runne : Sedeo, to sit : Ap-
pareo, to appeare : Bibo, to drinke : Cubo, to lie downe : Stu-
deo, to studie : Dormio, to sleepe : Somnio, to dreame : and
such other like : as they have before them a Nominative Case,
of the doer or sufferer, so may they have after them a Nomi-
native Case of a Noun or a Participle, declaring the man-
ner of circumstance of the doing or suffering : as, Incedo clau-
sus, I go lame. Petrus dormit securus : Peter sleepeth voide
of care. Tu cubas supinus : thou liest in bed with thy face up-
ward. Somnias vigilans : thou dreamest waking. Studeo stans :
study thou standing. Malus Pastor dormit supinus : an
ill Shepheard sleepeth voide of care. Læstantius. Homo
incedit erectus in cælum : a man goeth bolt upright towards
heaven. And likewise in the Accusative Case : as, Non de-
ceat quonquam mejere currentem aut mandentem. It becommeth
not any man to pisse running or eating.

And generally when the word that goeth before the Verbe,
and the word that cometh after the Verbe, belong both to
one thing, that is to say, have respect either to other, or de-
pend either of other : they shall be put in one Case, whether
the Verb be transitive or intransitive, of what kind soever the
Verb be of : as, Loquor frequens, I speake often. Taceo mul-
tis, I hold my peace much. Scribo epistolas rarissimas, I write
letters very seldom. Ne assuescas bibere vinum jejunis : ac-
customize not thy selfe to drinke wine, next thy heart, or not
having eaten somewhat afore.

A general note

The Infinitive Moode also, hath like Cases on both
sides :

The constructi-
on of the Inf-
initive Moode.

sides : especially in Verbes of wishing, and such like : as, Hypocrita cupit videri justus : hypocrite desireth to seeme just. Hypocrita cupit se videri justum : an hypocrite desireth himselfe to seeme just. Malo dives esse quam haberi : I had rather be rich, then so to be accounted. Malo medivitem esse, quam haberi : I had rather my selfe to be rich, then so to be accounted. Claudian. Vivitur exiguo melius. natura beatis Omnibus esse dedit, si quis cognoverit uti : men live better with a little. Nature hath granted to all men to be happy, if we know how to use it. Marialis. Nobis non licet esse tam disertis, vel disertis : we may not be so eloquent. Terent. Expecto bonas esse vobis : it is expedient for you to be good. Ovid. Quam mihi commisso non licet esse piam : which fact if it had been committed, I could not be a loyall wife. Though in these last examples, the Accusative cases before the Infinitive Moode, are understood : as, Nos esse disertos : that, we should be eloquent. Vos esse bonas : that, ye should be good. Me esse piam : that I should be loyall.

The Genitive Case after the Verbe.

Possession, duty,
&c.

This Verbe, Sum, I am, when it betokeneth of Impersonal possession, owning, or otherwise pertaining to a thing, as a token, property, duty, or guilt : it causeth the Noun, Pronome, or Participle following, to be put in the Genitive Case : as, Hæc vestis est patris : this garment is my fathers. Insipientis est dicere, non putaram : it is the property of a foole, to say, I had not thought. Extremæ est dementia dicere dediscenda : it is extreme folly to learne things which are to be unlearned againe. Orantis est nihil nisi celestia cogitare : it is the duty of a man that is saying his prayers, to have minde of nothing but heavenly things. Virg. — Pecus est Melibæi : he cattell is Melibeus's. Cicero. Adolescentis est majores nam revereri : it is the duty of a strpling to reverence his elders. Virg. — regum est pacere subje&is, & debellare superbos : it is the duty of Kings to spare the meeke subjects, and to keepe downe the proud. Except that these Pronounes, Meus, mine : Tuus, thine : Suius, his : Noster, our : Vester, your : humanum, humane : Belluinum, beastly : and such like : shall in such manner speaking be used in the Nominative Case : as, Hic codex est meus : this booke is mine. Hæc domus est vestra : this house is yours. Non est mentiri meum : it is not my guilt (or property) to lie. Non est iniuriam non inferre : it is our parts not to do wrong. Tuum est omnia juxta pati : it is thy part or duty to suffer all things alike. Humanum est irasci : it is a property belonging to man, to be angry. Non est meum contra auctoritatem Senatus dicere : it is not my part to speak against the authority of the Senate. Terent. Eia. haud vestrum est irasci : what ? loke, it is not your part to be angry. But here the word officium, that is, duty, seemeth to be understood, which is sometimes also expressed : as, Ter. Tuum est officium has bene ut adimules nuptias : it is thy duty, that in good sort thou dost make a shew of this marriage.

Unto

Verbes of
Esteeming.

Verbes that betoken to esteeme, or regard, require a Genitive Case, betokening the value: as, *Parvi ducitur probitas*: honesty is reckoned little worth. *Maximi penditur nobilitas*: noblenesse of birth is very much regarded. *Plurimi passim sit pecunia*: money is every where very much esteemed. *Minor parvi penditur*: shamefastnesse is little set by. *Nihili, vel pro nihilo habentur literæ*: learning is esteemed as nothing, or for nought. *Horat. Pluris opes nunc sunt, quam prius temporis annis*: riches are of more value now, then in the times of ancient time. *Aestimo, I esteeme*, will have a Genitive, or an Ablative Case: as, *Valerius Maximus: Non huius te aestimo*: I esteeme thee not thus much. *Magno ubique virtus æstimanda est*: vertue is every where of great price.

Flocci, of a Locke of Woolle: *Nauci, of a Nut-shell*: *Nihili, of nothing*: *Pili, of an haire*: *Assis, of a farthing*: *Hujus, of thus much*: *Tercuncii, of three ounces*, are peculiarly used with these Verbes: *Æstimo, I weigh*: *Pendo, I make reckoning of*: *Facio, I make*: as, *Ego illum flocci pendo*: I esteeme him as naught. *Nec huius facio, qui me pili æstimat*: neither doe I regard him thus much, who esteemes me as an haire. These be speciall phrases: *Aequi bono consulo*: I take in good part. *Aequi bono facio*: I take in good part.

Verbes of a'cu-
sing.

Verbes of accusing, condemning, warning, purging, warning, or assolling, and such like: will have a Genitive Case of the crime, or of the cause, or of the thing, that one is accused, condemned, or warned of: as, *Hic furti se alligat*: this man accuseth himselfe of theft. *Admonuit me errati*: he admonished me of my fault. *Qui alterum inculcat probi, ipsum se intueri oportet*: it behooveth him to looke to himselfe, which accuseth another of dishonesty: *Plaut. Cicero. Quam sceleris condemnat generum suum*: likewise he condemneth his sonne in law of wickednesse: *Parce tuum vatem sceleris damnare Cupido*: O Cupid forbear to condemne thy Father of wickednesse. *Admoneto illum priusquam fortunæ*: admonish him of his former estate. *Furti absolutus est*: hee is acquitted of felony.

This Genitive is sometimes turned into the Ablative, either with a Preposition, or without: as, *Hic furti se alligat*: this man accuseth himselfe of theft. *admonuit me errati*: he hath warned me of mine error. *De pecuniis repetundis damnatus est*: he was condemned of extortion, or of money unjustly taken, in the time of his office or magistracie. *Cicero. Si in me iniquus es index, condemnabo eodem ego re crimine*: If against me thou beest an unjust Judge, I will condemne thee for the same crime. *Gellius. Uxorem de pudicitia graviter accusavit*: hee accused his wife grievously of her wantonnesse. *Cicero. Putavi ea de re admonendum esse te*: I thought that thou wast to be admonished of that matter.

Verbe, both: *Nullus, none*: *Alter, another*: *Neuter, neither of the two*: *Alius, another*: *Ambo, both*: and the Superlative degree, are not used with these kinde of Verbes, but in the Ablative Case: as, *Accusas furti, an stupri, an usqueque*: or, *de utroque*: *ambobus*: or, *de ambobus*: *Neutro*:

02. de neutro? Doeſt thou accuſe of theſe. 02 whoſe domeſt
of both? 02 of neither? De plurimis ſimul acularis: thouſt
accuſed of very many things at once.

Sarago, &c.

Satago, I am buſie, 02. I doe with ſpeed: Miſereor, I
have pittie on: Miſereſco, I have compaſſion on: requira
ſentive Caſe: as. Is rerum ſuarum ſatagit: he hath enough
to doe about his owne buſineſſe. Ter. Miſerere mei Dem:
have mercie upon me O God. Virg. — oro miſerere labo-
rum

Miſereor, &c.

Tantum, miſerere animi non digna ferentis: I pray thee
take pittie on ſo great labours, have compaſſion upon a minde
ſuffering unworthy things. Statius. Et generis miſereſce mi:
have compaſſion upon thine owne ſtocke. But Miſereor, and
Miſereſco, are ſometimes read with a Dative Caſe: as, Se-
neca. Huic ſuccurro, huic miſereor: I helpe this man, I pittie
this man. Boetius. Dilige iure bonos, & miſereſce malis: O
right love thou good min, and have pittie on the bad.

Reminiſcor, &c.

Reminiſcor, I remember: Obliviſcor, I forget: Recor-
dor, I call to minde: Memini, I remember: will have a
ſentive Caſe: 02 an Accuſative: as, Reminiſcor hiſtoria:
I remember the hiſtory. Obliviſcor carminis: I forget the
verſe. Recordor pueritiam: I call to minde my youth. Oblivi-
ſcor lectionem: I forget the leſſon. Memini tui, 02 te: I re-
member thee. Memini de hac re, de armis, de te: I ſpake of
this matter, of the weapons, of thee: 02 made mention. Da-
ta fidei reminiſcitur: hee remembereth his promiſſe. Proprium
eſt ſultitiz, aliorum vitia cernere, obliſci ſuorum: it is the
property of fooliſhneſſe, to ſpie the faults of others, to for-
get her owne. Ter. Faciam ut meique, ac huius diei, ac loci,
ſemper memineris: I will cauſe that thou ſhalt ever remem-
ber both me, and this day, and place. Plautus. Omnia que
curant ſenes memineunt: old men remember all things
whereof they have care.

Potior.

Egeo, I neede: Indigeo, I neede: and Potior, I obtaine:
will have a ſentive Caſe, 02 an Ablative Caſe: as, Egeo,
02 Indigio tui, 02 te: I have neede of thee. Potior urbis: I
conquer the City. Potior voto: I obtaine my deſire. Plau-
Romani ſignorum, & amorum poſiti ſunt: the Romanes obtai-
ned the enſignes and the weapons. Virg. Egreſſi optata Troes
potiuntur arena: the Troians gone out of their ſhips, enjoy
the wiſhed ſhoare.

The Dative Caſe after the Verbe.

Verbes of get-
ting.

ALL manner of Verbes put acquiſſively, that is to ſay
with theſe tokens, to, 02, for, after them: will have a
Dative Caſe, of that thing to which any thing is by any
meanes procured 02 gotten; as, Non omnibus dormio: I
ſleepe not to all men. Huic habeo, non tibi: I have it for
this man, and not for thee. Plaut. Mihi iſtic nec ſeritur, nec
metitur: neither is there ſowing nor mowing there for me.
Virg. Neſcio quis teneros oculus mihi ſceminat agnos: I know
not what eye bewitcheth unto me the young Lambs.

To this rule belong divers kinds of Verbs.

First, Verbs that betoken to profit or disprofit, do governe a Dative Case: as, *Commodo, I profit; Incommodo, I disprofit.* *Noceo, I hurt.* as, *Virg. Illa seges domum votis responderet avari Agricola: that eared corne at the last contents the desires of the covetous husbandman. Non potes mihi commodare nec incommodare: thou canst not profit, neither disprofit me.* *Virg.*

To profit or disprofit.

Validis incumbite remis: labour earnestly with your strong Oares. *Suam eruditionem tibi acceptam fert: he acknowledgeth his learning to be received of thee.* Some of these Verbs will have an Accusative Case: as, *Cicero. Unum studetis omnes, unum sentitis: you doe all desire one thing, ye thinke one thing.* *Plautus. Si ea memorem quæ ad ventris victum conducunt, mora est: If I should call to minde those things, which are profitable to the feeding, it were tedious.* *Cicero. In hæc studia incumbite: Labour earnestly in these studies. Naturæ plus ad eloquentiam conferat, an doctrina: Whether nature of instruction availe more to eloquence. Festum quies plurimum juvat: rest delighteth very much the wearied man.*

Verbs that betoken to compare, doe governe a Dative Case: as, *Comparo, I compare: Compono, I compare: Confero, I compare:* as, *Virg. Sic parvis componere magna solebam: so was I wont to compare great things to little.* *Fratri se & opibus, & dignatione adæquavit: he made himselfe equall to his brother, both in riches and dignity.* Sometimes they have an Accusative Case with a Preposition: as, *Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est: If he be compared to him, he is nobody.* And sometimes an Ablative with a Preposition: as, *Comparo Virgilium cum Homero: I compare Virgil with Homer.*

To compare.

Verbs that betoken to give or restore, will have a Dative Case: as, *Dono, I give: Reddo, I restore: Refero, I give againe:* as, *Fortuna multis nimium dedit, nulli satis: fortune hath given to many too much, to none enough.* *Ingratus est, qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit: he is unthankfull which layeth not up for him, that deserveth well.*

To give, or restore.

These Verbs have a diverse construction: as, *Dono tibi hoc munus: I give unto thee this present: Dono te hoc munere: I present thee with this present.* *Cicero. Huic rei aliquid temporis impertias: bestow some time upon this thing.* *Terent. Plurima salute Parmenonem summum suum impertit Gnato: Gnato greets Parmeno his singular good friend, with many salutations.* *Aspersit mihi labem: he sprinkled a spot on me: Aspersit me labe: he sprinkled me with a spot.* *Instravit equo penulam: he spread his cloak upon his horse: Instravit equum penula: he spread his horse with his cloake.* *Ovid. Ut piger infido consuluisse viro: how it greeveth me to have counselled, or provided for a faithlesse man.* *Lucan. Rectoremque raris de cuius aïs consultat astris: and he asked the master of the ship counsell, concerning all the starres.* *Consule saluti tuæ: provide for thy health.* *Ter. Pessimè istuc in te, atque in illum consulis: thou dost determine the thing very ill against thy selfe*

A diverse construction.

To promise, or
to pay.

Selfe, and against him. Metuo, timeo, formido tibi, & ad te : I am careful for thee. Metuo, timeo, formido te, & a te : I feare lest thou hurt me.

Verbes that betoken to promise or to pay. Doe govern a Dative Case : as, Promitto, I promise : Polliceor, I promise. Solvo, I pay : as, Cicero. Hec tibi promitto, ac recipio si quis est observatum : these things I promise thee, and doe undertake most devoutly to observe them. Cicero. Accusationem mihi numeravit : he hath paid the debt unto me.

To command, or
shew.

Verbes that betoken to command, or shew, require a Dative Case : as, Impero, I command : Indico, I shew : Monstro, I shew : as, Horat. Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique : money hoarded up commandeth or serveth every man. Idem. Quid de quoque viro, & cui dicas, saps caveto : take heed oftentimes what, and to whom thou speakest of any man.

Ute say, Tempero, I ruse : Moderor tibi & te : I doe moderate thee. Refero tibi & ad te : I shew, or make relation to thee. Allo, Refero ad Senatum : I propose, or write to the Senate. Mito tibi, & ad te : I send unto thee. Do tibi litteras : I give thee letters to carry to another. Do ad te litteras : I give, or send thee letters, that thou maist read them.

To trust.

Verbes that betoken to trust, will have a Dative Case : as, Fido, I trust : Confido, I trust : Fidem habeo : I have faith, or trust : as, Horat. — vacuis committere venis, Nil nisi lena decet : It is meet to commit nothing but that which is pleasant to taste, to the empty bellies. Mulieri ne credas, nemortuus quidem : beleave not a woman, no not being dead.

To obey, or to
be against.

Verbes that betoken to obey or to be against, require a Dative Case : as, Obedio, I obey : Adulor, I flatter : Repugno, I resist : as, Semper obtemperat pius filius patri : a godly sonne doth alwayes obey his father. Quae homines arant, navigant, edificant, virtuti omnia parent : all things obey virtue, which men plow for, saile for, build for. Ipsum hunc orabo, huic supplicabo : I will intreat this very man, I will beseech him. Persus. — venienti occurrere morbo : prevent the disease coming. Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat : fortune resisteth slothfull prayers.

But some of these are coupled with other cases : as, Ad amorem nihil potuit accedere : nothing could come to love. Hoc accessit meis malis : this came to my evils. Huius constat omnibus, or inter omnes : that is evident to all men. Ter. Hae fratri necum non conveniunt : these things sadge not well to my brother and me. Juvenal. — Savis inter se conveniunt : there is an agreement to the savadge Beares amongst themselves. Ausculto tibi : id est, obsecro : I listen to thee, that is, I obey. Ausculto te : id est, audio : I heere thee : that is, I heare thee. Adamas diffidet magneti, sen, cum magneti : the Adamant disagreeth to, or, with the loadstone. Certe cum illo, or after the Greeke phrase, illi : he striveth with him, or to him. Noli pugnare duobus, id est, contra duos : fight not to two ; that is, against two. Virg. Tu dic mecum quo pignore certe : tell me what wager thou wilt contend with me for.

Verbes

Verbes that betoken to threaten, or to be angry with, doe require a Dative Case: as, Minor, I threaten: Indignor, I am angry: Utrique mortem minatus est: hee threatened death to both. Ter. Adolescenti nihil est quod luctetur: there was no cause that he should be angry with the youth.

To threaten, or to be angry with.

Iam, I am, with his Compounds, except, Possum, I can, require a Dative Case: as, Rex pius est Reipublicæ ornamentum: a godly King is an ornament to the Commonwealth. Mihi nec obest nec prodest: neither is it against me, neither doth it profit me. Horat. Multa petentibus desunt multa: many things are wanting to them, which desire many things.

Compound Verbes.

Also, Verbes compounded with, Satis, Bend, and Male, will have a Dative Case: as, Satisfacio, I satisfie: Benefacio, I doe well: Malefacio, I doe ill: Finally, certaine Verbes compounded with these Prepositions: Præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, and inter: require a Dative Case: as, Prælaceo, I fight before one: Adjaceo, I lie by: Condoneo, I forgive: Suboleo, I smell somewhat: Antestor, I excel: Posthabeo I set less by: Objicio, I object: Insulto, I rebound: Interfero, I mingle: as, Præ: Cicero. Ego meis majoribus virtute præluxi: I have excelled mine ancestors in vertue. Post, Præce, I go before: Pro vinco, for I excel: Præcedo, I go before: Præcurro, I runne before: Prævertor, I prevent: as, joined to an Accusative Case.

Ad. Albo gallo ne manum admolariis: lay thou not thy hand upon the white cocke.

Con. Conducit hoc tux laudi: this maketh for thy praise. Convixit nobis: he lived together with us.

Sub. Ter. Subolet jam uxori, quod ego machinor: already my wife hath some perceiving of the matter which I go about.

Ante. Cicero. Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero: I preferre most unjust peace, before the most just warre.

Post. Posthabeo, postpono, famæ pecuniam: I esteeme money lesse then a good name. Virg. Postposuit tamen illoꝝ mea seria ludo: I have made lesse account of my serious affaires, then of their pastime. Terent. Qui suum commodum posthabuit præ meo commodo: who made small reckoning of his owne commodity, in comparison of my benefit.

Ob. Terent. Quum nemini obrudi potest, itur ad me: when he could be thrust upon none, they come to me.

In. Impendet omnibus periculum: danger hangeth over all mens heads.

Inter. Cicero. Ille huic negotio non interfuit modo, sed etiam præfuit: he was not onely present at this business, but also had the chiefe stroke therein.

A few of these Verbes doe sometimes turne this Dative Case, into some other Case: as, Quintil. Præstat ingenio alius alium: one man excelleth another in wit. Multos viros anteit sapientia: he excelleth many men in wisdome. Ter. In amore hæc insunt vitia: these vices are in love. Plinius. Inadico tibi aqua & igni: I forbid thee water and fire.

A diverse construction.

This

This Verbe, Sum es fui, to be, may oftentimes be used. Habeo, I have: and then the word that seemeth in the English to be the Nominative Case, shall be put in the Dative Case, and the word that seemeth to be the Accusative Case shall be the Nominative: as, Est mihi mater: I have a mother. Non est mihi argentum: I have no money. Persius vel sum cuique est, nec voto vivitur uno: every one hath his liking, neither doe they live after one sort. Virg. Est mihi aque domi pater, est injusta noverca: I have at home a father, I have an unjust step-mother. But if Sum, be the Infinitive Mood, this Nominative shall be turned into the Accusative: as, Scio tibi non esse argentum: I know thou hast no money. And so likewise, of Suppetit, it is sufficient: as, Horat. Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppetit usus: for he is not poor, to whom there is sufficient use of things.

Suppetit.

Also, when, Sum, hath after him a Nominative Case and a Dative, the word that is the Nominative Case, may be put also into the Dative: so that, Sum, may in such manner speakings be construed with a double Dative Case: as, Sum tibi praedio: I am to thee a safeguard. Hæc res est mihi voluptati: this thing is to me a pleasure. Exitio est avidis mercatoribus: the sea is a destruction to greedy Mariners. And not onely, Sum, but also many other Verbes may in such manner speaking, have a double Dative Case, one of the person, and another of the thing: as, Do tibi vestem pignori: I give thee my garment to pledge. Verò hoc tibi vitio: I impute this to thee, as a vice. Hoc tu tibi laudi ducis: thou thinkest this a praise unto thee. Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio veris? hopest thou it will be a praise to thee, which thou accountest a fault to me? Nemo sibi Mimos accipere debet favori: no man ought to receive unto himselfe scoffers in favour.

These Datives, tibi, sibi, and mihi, are sometimes added for pleasure and not for necessity: as, Ego tibi hoc effedum dabo: I will dispatch this for thee. Ter. Expedi mihi hoc negotium: dispatch me this business. Sui sibi hunc jugulo gladio: I stab this man with his owne sword.

The Accusative Case after the Verbe.

Verbes Transitives.

Verbes Transitives are all such, as have after them an Accusative Case of the doer or sufferer, whether they be Active, Commune, or Deponent: as, Usus promptos facit: use maketh men prompt. Formine ludificantur viros, women mock men. Largitur pecuniam: he giveth money. Horat. Percussatorem fugito, nam garrulus idem est: avoyde thou a busie inquirer after matters, for he is a chattering babler. Idem. Nec retinent patulæ commissa fideliter aures: open eares keep not surely things that are heard. Virg. Inprimis venerare deos: first of all worship the Gods. Aper agros depopulatur: the Boar spoyleth the fields.

Nenter Transitives.

Also Verbes Nenters though otherwise Transitives and Absolute, may have an Accusative Case of their owne signification: as, Endimionis somnum dormis: thou sleepest the sleep.

hope of Endimion. Gaudeo gaudium : I rejoyce. Vivo vitam : I live. Cicero. Tertiam ætatem hominum vivebat Neflor. Neflor lived three mens ages. Virg. — longam incommittam videri Ire viam : shee seemeth to go a tedious way without company. Plautus. Duram servit servitutem : he serves an hard bondage.

Verbs oftentimes doe turne this Accusative into the Ablative : as, Plaut. Divi videor vita vivere : I seeme to live long. Ire recta via : to go the straight way. Suetonius. Morre obiit repentina : he died of a sudden death.

Sometimes these Verbes have an Accusative Case signifiatively : as, Virg. — nec vox hominem sonat, O Dea certe : neither thy voyce doth shew thee to be a woman, O Goddess then verily. Juvenal. Qui Curios simulant, & Bacchanalia vivunt : who counterfeit sober men, and like Bacchus Priests, live in riot and banquetting. Horat. Pastillos Rutilus olet, Gorgonius hircum : Rutilus smelleth sweet bals, Gorgonius savourish like a Goat.

Verbes of asking, teaching, or araying, will have two accusative Cases : one of the sufferer, and another of the thing : as Rogo te pecuniam : I aske thee money. Doceo te literas : I teach thee letters. Quod te jamdudum hortor : which thing long since I exhort thee. Exuo me gladium : I put off my sword. Tu modo posce Deum veniam : now crave thou pardon of God. Dedocebo te istos mores : I will unteach thee those manners. Ridiculum est te me admonere istud : it is ridiculous for thee to admonish me that thing. Ter. Induit se calceos, quos prius exuerat : he put on his shooes, which he had put off before.

Verbes of asking doe sometimes change one of the Accusative Cases into the Ablative : as, Virg. Ipsum obsecratur, veniamque oremus ab ipso : let us humbly beseech him, and aske pardon of him. Ter. Suspicionem istam ex illis quære : get that suspicion of them.

Verbes of araying, doe sometimes turne one of the Accusative Cases into the Ablative or Dative : as, Induo te tunicam, vel tibi tunicam : I put on thee thy coat.

Verbs of asking
Two Accusative
Cases.

The Ablative Case after the Verbe.

All Verbes require an Ablative Case of the Instrument, put with this sign, with, before it, or of the cause, or of the manner of doing.

The Instrument : as, Ferit eum gladio : hee strikes him with a sword. Demona non armis, sed morte subegit Iesus : Iesus subdued the Devils, not with weapons, but by death. Horat. Naturam expellas furca licet usque recurat : though thou repellst nature with a forke, it will returne againe. Virg. R. jaculis, illi certant defendere saxa : these strive to defend with arrowes, they with stones.

The cause : as, Taceo metu, I am silent for feare. Terent. Gaudeo (ita me dii ament) gnati causa : I am glad (as God shall helpe me) for my sonnes sake. Vehementior ira encanduit : hee was
was

was very pale with anger. Horat. Invidus alterius rebus ma-
crescit opimis: the envious man waxeth leane at the prosperi-
ty of another.

The manner of doing: as, Summa eloquentia causam egit:
he pleaded the cause with very great eloquence. Mira celeritate rem peregit: he finished the matter with marvellous celerity. Juvenal. Vigilare viri, tacito nam tempora gressu diffugiunt, nulloque sono convertitur annus: O men, bee watchfull for the seasons passe away speedily with a still going on, and the yeare is gone about with no noise. Ovid.

Dum vires annique sinunt, tolerate laborem:

Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede: so long as strength and yeares doe suffer, endure labour, crooked old age will presently come with a stille foot.

An exception.

To the Ablative Case of the cause, or of the manner of doing, is added sometimes a Preposition: as, Baccharis praebrietate: thou ragest like a madde man with drunkenness. Summa cum humanitate tractavit hominem: he entertained the man with very great humanity.

The word of price.

The word of price is put after Verbes in the Ablative Case: as, Vendidi auro: I sold for gold. Emptus sum argenteo: I bought for money. Teruntio seu vitiosa nuce non emirim: I would not buy it for a dodkin, or a rotten nut. Livius. Multo sanguine ac vulneribus, ea victoria stetit: that victory cost much blood and wounds.

Vili, &c.

Vili, of no value: Paulo, for a little: Minimo, for as little as may be: Magno, for much: Nimio, for over-much: Plurimo, for very much: Dimidio, for halfe: Duplo, for double are often put without Substantives: as, Ter. Redime te caprum quam queas minimo: buy thy ransom for as little as thou canst: Vili vixit triticum: Wheat is sold for a little. Seneca. Constat parvo fames, magno fastidium: hunger costeth but a little, disdaine much.

An exception.

Except these Genitives, when they be put alone without Substantives: Tanti, for so much: Quanti for how much: Pluris, for more: Minoris, for lesse: Tantivis, so great as you list: Tantidem, for so much: Quantiliber, as great as may be: Quancunque, how great soever: as, Quanti mercatus es hunc equum? for how much didst thou buy this horse? Certe pluris quam vellem: truely for more than I would. Cicero. Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris: thou shalt be of such price to others, as thou shalt be to thy selfe. Non vendo pluris quam alii, fortasse etiam minoris: I sell not for more than others, yea, peradventure for lesse. Ovid. Vix Priamus tanti, totaque Troja fuit: Priamus scarcely was worth so much and all Troy. But if their Substantives be added, they are put in the Ablative Case: as, Aul. Gel. Tanta mercede docuit, quanta haec emi nemo: hee taught for so great a price, as hitherto no man else. Minoris precio vendidi, quam emi: I have sold for a lesse price than I have bought. Saving that after Verbes of price, we shall alwayes use these Adverbes: Carius, dearer: Vilius, of a lower price: Melius, better: and Pejús, worse: in stead of their Catuals, Valeo, is sometimes joyned with an Accusative Case: as, Varro. Denarii dicti, quod denos mi valeant:

Valeo.

valabant : quinarii, quod quinos : they are called ten penny pieces, because they were in value worth ten pieces of money : the penny pieces, because five pieces.

Verbs of plenty, or scarceness, filling, emptying, loading, or unloading, will have an Ablative Case : as, Affluas opibus : thou aboundest with riches. Cares virtute : thou wantest virtue. Expleo te fabulis : I fill thee with fables. Spoliavit me bonis omnibus : hee spoiled mee of all my goods. Oneras stomachum cibo : thou loadest thy stomacke with meate. Levabo te hoc onere : I will ease thee of this burden. Terent. Amore abundas Antipho : thou exceedest with love Antipho. Malo virum pecunia, quam pecuniam viro indigentem : I had rather see a man want money, than money wanting a man. Salust. Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit : Sylla hath filled all his souldiers with riches. Terent. Hoc te crimine expedi : discharge thy selfe of this crime. Cicero. Homines nequissimi, quibus te onerant mendacis : with what lies doe most wicked men burden thee : Virg. Ego hoc te fasce levabo : I will ease thee of this bundle. Salust. Aliquem familiarem suo sermone participavit : he made some familiar friend acquainted with his speech.

Verbs of plenty.

Some of these Verbs will have sometimes a Genitive Case : as, Virg. Quam dives nivei pecoris, quam lactis abundans : how rich was he of cattell as white as snow, how full of milke : Terent. Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris : as though thou stoodst in neede of this father. Quid est quod in hac causa defensionis egeat : what is there in this matter which needeth defence : Virg. Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinx : they are filled with old wine, and fat venison. Idem. Postquam dextra fuit cædis saturata : after that his right hand was filled with slaughter. Cicero. Omnes mihi labores leves fuere præterquam tui carendum quod erat : all paines were easie to me, saving that I must needs want thy company. Pater-nam servum sui participavit consilli : he hath acquainted his fathers man with his counsell.

Fungor, I doe a duty : Fruor, I enjoy : Utor, I use : Potior, I obtaine : Lætor, I rejoyce : Gaudeo, I am glad : Dignor, I boughsake : Muto, I change : Munero, I reward : Communico, I impart : Afficio, I move affection : Prosequor, I follow after : Impertio, I bestow : Impertior, I bestow : and the like; are joyned to the Ablative Case : as, Cicero. Qui adipisci veram gloriam volunt, justitiæ fungantur officiis : they which will get true glory, let them execute the duties of justice. Optimum est aliena frui infania : it is the best thing that is, to make profit of anothers dotage. In re mala animo si bono utare juvat : in a bad matter it is a good helpe if thou canst bee of a good courage. Virg. Aspice venturo latentur ut omnia seculo : behold how all things are glad, for the age to come. Cæsar. Qui sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur : who did glory so proudly in their victory. Horat. Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata rotundas : he pullerth downe, he buildeth, he changeth houses for money. Vescor carnibus : I feede on flesh. Virg. Haude quidem tali me dignor honore : verily I boughsake not any selfe such honour : Terent. Ut malis gaudeat alienis : that hee may

Fungor.

rejoyce at other mens harmes. Plaut. Exemplorum multitudine superfedendum est: we must leade off the multitude of examples. Macrobius. Regni cum societate numeravit: he accounted him in the fellowship of his Kingdom. Plaut. Communicabo te semper mensa mea: I will alwayes give thee meat at my table.

Prosequor, Aff.
Reo.

Prosequor te amore, laude, honore, &c. I love, praise, and honour thee. Afficio te gaudio, supplicio, dolore, &c. I cheere, punish, and grieve thee.

Mereor.

Mereor, I deserve: with these Adverbs, bene, well; Male, ill; Melius, better; Pejus worse: Optime, best; Pessime, worst: hath an Ablative Case with the Preposition, De: as De me nunquam bene meritus es: thou didst never deserve well of me. Erasmus de lingua Latina optime meritis est: Erasmus hath deserved best of the Latine tongue. Catilina pessime de Republica meruit: Catiline hath deserved worst of the Commonwealth.

Verbs of receiving.
wing.

Verbs of receiving, distance, or taking away, will have an Ablative Case, with a Preposition, as, A, ab, e, ex, or de: as, Accepit literas a Petro: he received letters from Peter. Audivi ex nuncio: I heard by the messenger. Longe distat a nobis: it is farre distant from us. Eripui te a malis: I delivered thee from the evils. Istuc ex multis jam pridem audiveram: I have heard that of many long since. Luc. A trepido vix abhinet ira magistro: the anger hardly abstaineth from the trembling ship-master. Nasci a principibus fortunatum est: to be borne of Princes is a thing that seldom falleth out. Procul abest ab urbe Imperator: the Emperour is farre distant from the City.

And this Ablative Case after Verbes of taking away is turned sometimes into the Dative: as, Subtraxit mihi cingulum: he tooke my girdle from me. Eripuit illi vitam: he tooke from him his life. Horat. Vivere si recte nescis, discite periculis: if thou knowest not how to live orderly, goe thy wayes to them that have skill. Ovid. Est virtus placitis abstimate bonis: it is a vertue to abstaine from delightfull good things. Virg. Heu fuge nate Dea, teque hanc ait eripe flammis: since said O thou that art borne of a Goddess, alas! be packing, and carrye thy selfe quickly from these flames.

Verbs of comparing.

Verbes of comparing, or exceeding, may have an Ablative Case, of the word that signifieth the measure of exceeding: as, Prafero hunc multis gradibus: I preferre this man by many degrees. Paulo intervallo illum superat: hee is beyond the other but a little space. Desorme existimabar, quos dignitate praestaret, ab iis virtutibus superari: hee thought it a very unseemely thing to be overcome of those in vertues, whom hee called in authority.

An Ablative
Case absolute.

A Noun or Pronoun Substantive joyned with a Participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word, whereof it may be governed: shall bee put in the Ablative Case absolute: as, Rege veniente, hostes fugerunt: the King coming, the enemies fled. Me duce, vinces: I being Captain, thou shalt overcome. Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus: Augustus reigning, Christ was borne: Imperante Tibe-

crucifixus : Tyberius reigning, he was crucified. Juvenal. *Oro pudicitiam Saturno regē moratam, In terris* : I thinke chastity staid on earth, when Saturne was King. Nil desperandum Christo duce, & auspice Christo : we must despair in nothing, Christ being our Captaine, and Christ bring our Leader. Jam Maria audio Christum venisse cucurrit : when it was heard that Christ was come already, Mary ranne. And it may be resolved by any of these words : Dum, cū, quando, si, quanquam postquam, : as, Rege veniente : the King coming : that is, Dum veniret rex : whilst the King came. Me ducit : I being Captaine : that is : Si ego dux fuero : if I bee Captaine.

To certain Verbes is added an Ablative Case by a Synecdoche : and poetically, an Accusative : as, *Aegrotat animo magis quam corpore* : he is sicke in minde, rather than in body. *Candet dentes* : his teeth are white. *Rubet capillos* : hee hath red haire.

Synecdoche.

Pet some of them have a Genitive Case : as, *Absurdè facis, qui angas te animi* : thou doest foolishly to torment thy selfe in minde. *Examinatus pendet animi* : he that is amazed doubteth in his minde. *Despiebam mentis* : I voted in minde. *Plant. Discueior animi, quia ab domo abeundum est mihi* : I am troubled in minde, because I must goe from home.

One and the same Verbe may in diverse respects, governe diverse Cases : as, *Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te presente, propria manu* : he gave me his garment to pledge, thou being present, with his owne hand.

Diverse Cases.

The construction of Verbes Passives.

A Verbe Passive will have after him an Ablative Case with a Preposition, or sometimes a Dative of the doer : as, *Virgilius legitur à me* : Virgil is read of me. *Tibi fama peratur* : let a good name be chosen of thee. And the same Ablative or Dative shall be the Nominative Case to the Verbe, if it be made by the Active : as, *Ego lego Virgilium* : I doe read Virgil. *Petas tu famam* : chuse, or seeke thou a good name. *Horatius*, — *laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis* : he is praised of these, blamed of them. *Cicero. Honesti bonis viris, non occulta petuntur* : honest things, not unknowne, are desired of good men.

Passives.

But the Participles of these Verbes Passives have more usually a Dative Case : as, *Virg. Nulla tuarum audita mihi, nec visa sororum* : none of thy sisters was heard or seene of me. *Horat. Oblitusque meorum, obliviscendus & illis* : both forgetting mine, and to be forgotten of them.

The other Cases doe remaine in the Passives, which were of the Actives : as, *Accusaris a me furti* : thou art accused of theft by me. *Habeberis ludibrio* : thou shalt be made a laughing stocke. *Dedoceberis à me istos mores* : thou shalt of me be untaught those manners. *Privaberis magistratu* : thou shalt be deprived of thy magistracie.

Vapulo, I am beaten : *Vaneo, I am sold* : *Liceo, I am perilled* : *Exulo, I am banished* : *Fio, I am made* : being Neuter-passives

The construction of Neuter passives.

passives have a Passive construction: as, *A præceptoris re- pulabis: thou shalt be beaten of thy master.* *Malo à civis so- liari, quam ab hoste vanire: I had rather be spoiled by a Ci- zen, then sold by an enemy.* *Quid fiet ab illo? what will be- come of him?* *Virtus parvo pretio licet omnibus: virtue is* passed at a low rate of all men. *Cur à conviviis exulat Phi- losophia? what is the cause that Philosophy is banished from banquets?*

The Infinitive
Mood.

The Infinitive Mood is commonly put after certain both Verbes and Adjectives: as, *Virg. — Juvat usque mo- rari, & conferre gradum: It delighteth to stay a while, and then to goe.* *Ovid. Dicere quæ puduit, scribere iussit amor: love commanded to write those things which I was ashamed to speak.* *Marial. Vis fieri dives Pontice? Nil cupias: Pontice, wilt thou be made rich? Covet nothing.* *Virg. — & erat nun dignus amari: and he was then worthy to be loved.* *Horatius. Audax omnia perpeti Gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas: man- kinde fools-hardy to endure all things, runneth headlong through mischief forbidden.*

The Infinitive Mood is sometimes put figuratively, and absolutely: as, *Heccine fieri sagitia? Is it meete that these wickednesses should be committed?* for here is understood: *Decet, is it fit? Oportet, ought it? Par est: is it convenient? Aequum est? is it just? or such like.* *Virg.*

Criminibus terrere novis, hinc spargere voces
In vulgum ambiguas, & querere concius arma.

We made them afraid with new crimes, hereupon hee cast abroad doubtfull speeches amongst the common people, and being guilty, did seeke weapons. For, *terrere, to make afraid, spargere, to cast abroad, and querere, to seeke: being the In- finitive Moores, are put for the Preterimperfect tence of the Indicative Mood: terrebatur, he did make them afraid: spar- gebatur, he did cast abroad: and querebatur, he did seeke.*

The construction of the Gerunds.

Gerunds.

Gerunds and Supines will have such Cases, as the Verbs that they come of: as, *Otium scribendi literas: leisure to write letters.* *Ad consulendum tibi: to give thee counsell.* *Auditum poetas: to heare the Poets.* *Cicero. Effror studio videndi parentes: I am carried away with a desire to see my parents.* *Ovid. Utendum est ætate, cito pede præterit ætas: we must use our age, our age passeth away with a speedy pace.* *Virg. — scitatum oracula Phœbi Mittimus: we send to in- quire of the oracles of Apollo.*

Di.

When the English of the Infinitive Mood cometh after any of these Nounes Substantives: *studium, causa, tempus, gratia, otium, occasio, libido, spes, oportunitas, voluntas, mo- dus, ratio, gestus, satietas, potestas, licentia, consuetudo, con- silium, vis, norma, amor, cupidus, locus, and others like: if the Verbe should be of the Active voyes, it shall be made by the Gerund in di: as, Virg. Et quæ tanta fuit Romam tibi causa videndi? and what so great cause hadst thou to see Rome?* *Idem. Cæropias innatus apes amor urget habendi: a naturall love*

use of having honey megeth the Athenian Bees. And the
Gerund in di, is used also after certain Adjectives:
Cupidus visendi : desirous to goe to see. Certus cundi : sure
to goe. Peritus jaculandi skilfull in shooting. Ignarus bellan-
di : ignorant in warre. Virg. Aeneas celsa in puppi jam certus
cundi : Aeneas already in the tall ship castle, is fully determi-
ned to goe.

Poetically the Infinitive Moode is put in stead of this
Gerund : as, Peritus medicari : cunning in healing. Virg.
— studium quibus arda tueri : who have a desire to behold
their fallowes. Sometimes the Genitive Case plurall also,
is elegantly added to these Gerunds : as, Quum illorum vi-
dendi gratia me in forum contulisse : when I had gone into
the market to see them. Terent. Date crescendi copiam no-
varum : grant leave for new playes to grow. Concessa est di-
cipendi pomorum atque obsoniorum licentia : liberty is gran-
ted to snatch apples and victuals.

When you have the English of the Participle of the Pre-
sent Tense, with this signe of, or with, comming after a
Some Adjective : it shall in Latine making, be put in the
Gerund in do : as, Defessus sum ambulando : I am weary of
walking.

Also, the English of the Participle of the Present Tense
comming without a Substantive, with this signe in, or by :
before him : shall in Latine making, be put in the Gerund in
do : as, Caesar dando, sublevando, ignoscendo, gloriam adepe-
re est : Caesar got glory by giving, by helping, by pardoning.
In apparando totum hunc consumunt diem : in trimming they
consume this whole day.

And the same Gerund in do, is used either without a Pre-
position, or with one of these Prepositions : a, ab, abs, de, e,
ex, cum, in, pro : as, Deterrent a bibendo : they discourage
from drinking. Ab amando : from loving. Cogitat de eden-
do : he thinketh of eating. Ratio bene scribendi, cum loquen-
do conjuncta est : the means of writing well is joyned with
speaking. Cicero. Ignavi a discendo cito deterrentur : idle
boyes are soone discouraged from learning. Amor & amicitia,
utrumque ab amando dictum est : love and friendship both of
them are derived of loving. Cicero. Ex defendendo, quam ex
accusando, uberior gloria comparatur : more plentifull glory is
gotten by defending, then by accusing. Consultatur de trans-
cundo in Galliam : they doe consult of passing over into
france. Plaut. Pro vulpando ab hoste mercedem petam : I
will require recompence of the enemy, for being beate-
n without a Preposition : as, Virg. — alitur vitium, crescit
que regendo : a vice is nourished, and increaseth by covering
it. Scribendo discas scribere : by writing thou shalt learne to
write.

The English of the Infinitive Moode comming after a
reason, and shewing the cause of the reason : may be put in
the Gerund in dum : as, Dies mihi ut satis sit ad agendum, ve-
reor : I feare that a whole day will not be enough for me to
doe my business.

The Gerund in dum, is used after one of these Prepositi-
ons:

Note,

Do,

Dum,

ons : ad, ob, propter, inter, ante : as, Ad capiendum hōbes : take the enemies. Ob (vel propter) redimendum captivos : to redeem the captives. Inter cenandum, in supper while. Ante damandum : before condemning. Inter cenandum hilarum esse : be ye merry at supper time. Virg. — ante, domandum. Ingentes tollent animos : they will take haughty courages before they be tamed. Cicero. Locus ad agendum amplissimus : a very large place to plead in. Idem. Ob absolvendum manus ne acceperis : take not a reward to discharge them. Veni propterea redimendum : I came to ransom thee.

When necessity is signified, they are put without a Preposition; the Verbe (est) being added.

And when ye have this English, must, or ought, in a reason, where it seemeth to be made by this Verbe, oportet : it may be put in the Gerund in dum, with this Verbe (est) set impersonally : and then the word that seemeth in the English to be the Nominative Case, shall be put into the Dative : as, Abundum est mihi : I must goe hence. Juvenal. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano : we must pray that there may be a quiet minde in a sound body. Vigilandum est ei, qui cupit vincere : hee must watch which desireth to overcome.

Gerunds are turned into Nounes

The boyces of Gerunds are turned into Nounes Adjectives : as, Virgil. Tantus amor florum, & generandi gloria mellis : so great a love of flowers, and glory of making honey. Ad accusandos homines duci premio, proximum laudis nio est : to be moved by a reward to accuse men, is next unto robbery. Cur adeo delectaris criminibus inferendis ? why art thou delighted so greatly in charging men with faults.

Of the Supines.

Um.

The first Supine hath his Active signification, and is put after Verbes and Participles that betoken moving to a place : as, Eo cubitum : I goe to lie downe. Spectatum admisisti risum teneatis amici : ye my friends, being admitted to behold, keepe your laughter. Ovid. Spectatum veniunt, videntur spectantur ut ipsæ : the women come to see, they come that themselves may be seene. Milites sunt missi speculatum arcem : the souldiers were sent to view the Tower.

But these, Do venum : I give to be sold : Do filiam nuptum : I give my daughter to be married : have a hidden motion. But this Supine in Reuter passives, and with the Infinitive Verbe, iri, hath a Passive signification : as, Plaut. Cūcum ego non vulpatum, dudum conductus sum : I was lately hired to play the Cooke, not to be whipp'd. Poliquam audierat non datum iri uxorem filio : after that hee had heard that she should not be given a wife to his sonne. Poetically they say : Eo visere : I goe to see. Vado videre I goe to see. It is put also absolutely with the Verbe est : as, Ter. Actum est, ilicet, peristi : the matter is past cure, you may goe whither you will, you are utterly undone. Ovid. Iterum est in viscera terra : he went into the bowels of the earth. Cessatum est satis : you have beene idle long enough.

Note.

V.

The last Supine hath his Passive signification, and is put after Nounes Adjectives, as, Dignus, worthy : Indignus,

unworthy: *Turpis*, dishonest: *Fædus*, filthy: *Proclivis*, inclined: *Facilis*, easie: *Odiosus*, odious: *Mirabilis*, marvellous: *Optimus*, best, and such like: as, *Sum extra noxam*, I am not easily purged: I am without fault, but it is not an easie thing to be cleared. *Quod factu fædum est*, idem est & dictu turpe: that which is filthy to be done, is filthy also to be spoken. *Qui pecunia non movetur*, hunc dignum spectatu arbitramur: we thinke him worthy to be regarded, which is not moved with money. And the same Supine may also be turned into the Infinitive Mood Passive: as it may be indifferently said in Latine, *Facile factu*; or, *Facile fieri*: easie to be done: *turpe dictu*; or, *Turpe dici*: dishonest to be spoken. But in these: *Surgit cubitu*: he riseth from bed: *Redit venatu*: he returneth from hunting, *Cubitu*, and *venatu*, seeme rather to be Nouns, then Supines.

Of Time and Place. Time.

Nouns that betoken part of time be commonly put in the Ablative Case: seldom in the Accusative: as, *Nocte vigilas*: thou wakest in the night. *Luce dormis*: thou sleepest in the day. *Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit*: no mortall man is wise at all times: *Nocte latent mendæ*: blenishes are not seene by night. *Id tempus creatus est consul*: about that time he was created Consul. Although here there seemeth to be an eclipsis, or defect of the Preposition, *per*, *by*: or *sub*, *under*.

Part of time,

But Nouns that betoken continuall tearme of time, without crasing or intermission, be commonly used in the Accusative Case, and sometimes also in the Ablative: as, *Sexagesima annos natus*: three score yeeres old. *Hicmem totam sternis*: thou sleepest all winter long. *Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos*: now in this place Kings shall reigne thrice an hundred yeeres: *Virg. Idem Noctes atque dies parat atri janua Ditis*: the gate of the black god of riches lieth open nights and dayes. *Idem. Hic tamen hac mecum poteris requiescere nocte*: yet in this place you may rest with mee this night. *Suer. Imperavit triennio, & decem mensibus*, o Roque dies: he reigned three yeeres, ten moneths, and eight dayes. *Ter. sap. also. In paucis diebus*: for a few dayes. *De die*: for a day. *De nocte*: for a night. *Promitto in diem*: I promise against a day. *Commodo in mensem*: I lend for a moneth. *Annos ad quinquagesima natus*: about fiftie yeeres old. *Per tres annos studui*: I studied three yeeres. *Puer id ætatis*: a boy of that age. *Non plus triduum, aut triduo*: not above three dayes. *Tertio vel ad tertium calendæ, vel calendarum*: the third, or about the third before the Calends, or of the Calends.

Continuance of time,

Space of Place.

Nouns that betoken space betwene place and place, be commonly put in the Accusative Case: and sometimes also in the Ablative: as, *Podem hinc, ac discessis*: goe thou not shot from this place. *Virgil.*

Space of place,

Dic quibus in terris (& eris mihi magnus Apollo)

Treis pateat cœli spacium, non amplius ulnas :

Tell me in what part of the earth, the breadth of heaven lye open, not more than three elnes, and I will count thee as great as Apollo. Jam mille passus processeram : now I have gone a mile. Abest bidui : he is distant two dayes journey : here, spacium, or spacio, the space : also, itinere, or iter, the journey : is understood. Abest ab urbe quingentis millibus passuum : hee is distant from the City, five hundred thousand paces.

Nounes Appellatives of Places.

Nomes Appellatives or names of great places be, for the most part, put with a Preposition; if they follow a Verb, that signifieth moving or action, in a place, to a place, from a place, or by a place : as, Vivo in Anglia : I live in England. Veni per Galliam in Italiam : I came by France into Italy. Proficiscor ex urbe : I goe from the City. In foro versatur : he liveth in the Court. Meruit sub rege in Gallia he had a Souldiers pay under the King in France. Virgilii. Ad templum non exque Palladis ibant Iliades : the Trojan women went to the Temple of unjust Pallas. Salust. Legatus in Hispaniam majores natu nobiles : the elder Noble men went in embassage into Spaine. B Sicilia decedens, Rhodum veni : departing from Sicilie, I came to the Rhodes. Per mare ibis ad Indos : by sea thou shalt goe to the Indians.

In a place, or at a place, if the place be a proper name, of the first or second Declension, and the singular Number, it shall be put in the Genitive Case : as, Vixit Londini : he lived in London. Studuit Oxoniæ : he studied at Oxford. Juvenal. Quid Romæ faciam ? mentiri nescio : what should I doe at Rome ? I cannot lye. Ter. Samia mihi mater fuit, ea habebat Rhodi : Samia was mother to me, shee dwelt at the Rhodes.

And these Nomes ; Humi, of the ground : Domi, of the house : Militiæ, of warfare : Belli, of warre : be likewise used as, Procumbit humi bos : the Ox lay downe upon the ground. Militiæ nutritus est : he was trained up in warfare. Domi bellicque otiosi vivitis : ye live idle at home, and in warre. Terent. Domi bellicque simul vivimus : we have lived together at home, and in warre. Cicero. Parva sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi : weapons are small things abroad, unless there be counsell at home. Domi, admitteth no other Genitive Cases with it, then, Mex, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ, alienæ : as, Vescor domi mex, non alienæ : I eate at mine owne house, not at another mans.

But if the proper name of a place, be of the third Declension, or of the plurall Number onely : it shall bee put in the Dative, or in the Ablative Case : as Militavit Carthaginiæ, Carthagine : he warred at Carthage. Athenis natus est : hee was borne at Athens. Colchus an Assyrius, Thebis nutritus, an Argis ? an Asian or a Syrtan, brought up at Thebes, or at Argos?

Every Verb hath a Genitive Case, of the proper name of the place wherein an action is done : so that it bee of the first or second Declension, and the singular Number.

These Genitives *humi, domi, militiæ, belli*, doe follow the form of the proper names.

Domi.

Argus; Suet. *Lentulum Oetulicus Tyberi genitum scribit*: *Oetulicus* *scribit* that *Lentulus* was borne at *Tybur*. *Livius* *Neglectum Anxuri praesidium*: the garrison is neglected at *Anxur*. *Cicero*. Cum una sola legione fuit *Carthagini*: he was at *Carthage* with one onely band of souldiers. *Horat.* *Roma* *Tybur* amo: ventosus, *Tybure* *Romam*: I being unconstant, when I am at *Rome*, I doe love *Tybur*, and when I am at *Tybur*, I doe love *Rome*. *Cicero*. Quum tu *Narbone* *mensas* *hospium* convomeres: when thou didst vomit upon thine hostes table at *Narbo*. *Idem*. *Commendo tibi domum ejus*, quae est *Sycione*: I commend unto thee his house, which is at *Sycio*. Likewise we say, *Ruri*, or *rure* *educatus* est: hee was brought up in the Countrey. *Ruri* fere se continet: he keepeth commonly in the Countrey. *Perfius*. — *rure* *paterno* *est tibi* *far* *modicum*: thou hast a little *Coyne* at thy fathers Countrey *farme*.

To a place.

To a place, if the place be a proper name, it shall be put in the Accusative Case without a Preposition: as, *Eo Romam*: I goe to *Rome*. *Concessu Cantabrigiam*, *ad capiendum ingenii cultum*: I went to *Cambridge*, to get the ornament of wit. *Eo Londinum* *ad merces emendas*: I goe to *London*, to buy wares. Likewise, *Domus*, & *Rus*, be used: as, *Confero me domum*: I goe home. *Recipio me rus*: I goe into the Countrey. *Ego rus ibo*: I will goe into the Countrey. *Virg.* *Ite domum saturae*, *venit Hesperus*, *ire capellae*: my Goats, now that yee are full, goe yee home, the evening draweth on, hee yee parking.

To a place. To Verbs signifying moving to a place, the proper name of the place is put in the Accusative Case.

From a place, and by a place.

From a place, or by a place, if the place be a proper name, it shall be put in the Ablative Case, without a Preposition: as, *Discessit Londino*: he departed from *London*. *Profectus est Londino* (vel per *Londinum*) *Cantabrigiam*: hee went by *London* to *Cambridge*. *Nisi ante Roma profectus esses*, nunc eam relinques: tunc that heretofore thou wentest from *Rome*, now thou shouldst leave it. *Aboracum* (or per *Aboracum*) *sum profecturus iter*: I am to make my journey by *Dorke*. *Domus autem*, *Rus*, be likewise used: as, *Abiit domo*: hee went from home. *Rure reversus est*: he is returned from the Countrey. *Nuper exiit domo*: he went of late from home. *Ter*. *Timeo ne pater me redierit*: I feare that my father will returne out of the Countrey.

To Verbs signifying moving from a place, or by a place, the proper name of the place is put in the Ablative Case.

The construction of Impersonals: the Genitive Case.

A Verb Impersonall hath no Nominative Case before him, and this word, *It*, or *There*, is commonly his signe: as, *Decet*,

The Genitive Case.

Decet, it becommeth. Oportet aliquem esse: there must be some body. But if it hath neither of these words before him, then the word that seemeth to be the Nominative Case, shall be such Case as the Verb Impersonall will have after him: as, Me oportet: I must. Tibi licet: thou mayest.

These three Impersonals, Interest, it becommeth: Refert, it skilleth: and Est, for Interest, require a Genitive Case, of all casuall words, except these Feminines, mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, and eua: the Ablative Cases of the Pronounes Possessives: as, Interest omnium recte agere: It becommeth all men to doe well: Tua refert te ipsum nosse: It behoveth thee to know thy selfe. Interest magistratus tui bonos, ammadvertere in malos: It concerneth the Magistrate to defend the good, and to punish the wicked: Refert multum Christianae Reipublicae, episcopos doctos & pios esse: It is very profitable for a Christian Common-wealth, that the Bishops bee learned and godly. Prudentis est multa dissimulare: It is the part of a wise man to hide many things. Cicero. Ea caedes criminipotissimum datur ei, cuius interfuit, non ei cuius nihil interfuit: that murder is imputed as a crime to him chiefly, whom it concerned, not to him, whom it concerned not at all.

These Genitives are also added: Tanti, for so much: Quanti, for how much: Magni, for much: Parvi, for a little: Quanticunque, how great soever: Tantidem, for so much: as, Magni refert quibuscum vixeris: It is a matter greatly to be regarded, with whom thou leavest thy life. Tanti refert honesta agere: so greatly it concerneth to doe honest things. Vestra parvi interest: it toucheth you but a little. Et, interest ad laudem meam: it availeth to my praise.

The Dative Case.

These Impersonals and such like, require a Dative Case: as, Accidit, it falls out: Certum est, it is sure: Concingit, it chanceth: Constat, it is manifest: Conferit, it profiteth: Competit, it agreeth: Conducit, it profiteth: Convenit, it is meet: Piacet, it pleaseth: Displicet, it displeaseth: Doler, it grieves: Expediit, it is expedient: Evenit, it falls out: Liqueo, it is clear: Liber, it liketh: Licet, it is lawfull: Nocet, it hurteth: Obest, it hindreth: Prodest, it profiteth: Praestat, it is better: Patet, it is open: Stat, it stands: Restat, it remaineth: Benefic, it happens well: Malefic, it happens ill: Satisfic, it is sufficient: Superest, it remains: Sufficit, it is sufficient: Vacat, for otium est, there is leisure: as, Conveni mihi tecum: there is an agreement for me and thee. Satis. Emori per virtutem mihi praestat, quam per dedecus vivere: it is better for me to die with vertue for manfully, then to live with disgrace. Ovid. Non vacat exiguis rebus adesse Jovi: Jupiter is not at leisure to be present at small matters. Te, Doler dictum imprudenti adolescenti, & libero: the saying grieveth the unwary and franke youth. A noverca malefic privis: it falls out ill to sonnes in law by their step-mother. Virg. Stat mihi casus renovare omnes: that is, statum est: I am resolved to runne all cases. A Deo nobis benefic: it falls out well to us from God.

The Accusative Case.

These Impersonals require an Accusative Case only, with their Compounds: Juvat, it delighteth: Deceat, it becommeth: and Delectat, it delighteth: Oporret, it behooveth: as, Me juvat ire per altum: it delighteth me to goe upon the sea. Uxores zdes curare deceat: it becommeth a wife to care for the house. Dedeceat viros, muliebritur rixari: it becommeth not men to scould as women. Cato. Patremfamilias vendicem, non emacem esse oportet: it becommeth an householder to bee a seller, not a buyer. But to these is added properly the Preposition, ad: Attinet, it belongeth: Pertinet, it pertaineth: Spectat, it belongeth: as, Mene vis dicere quod ad attinet? Wilt thou have me to say that, which belongeth unto thee? Spectat ad omnes bene vivere: it appertaineth to every one to live well. Quintil. Pertinet in utramque partem: it tenderth to both parts.

These Impersonals, will have an Accusative Case, with a Genitive: Pœnitent, it repenteth: Tædet, it irketh: Misereor, I pittyeth: Miserefcit, it pittyeth: Pudet, it shameth: Piget, it grieveeth: as, Nostri nosmet pœnitent: we repent our selves: Me civitatis tædet: I am weary of the City. Pudet me negligentie: I am ashamed of my negligence. Misereor me tui: I pitty thee. Me illorum miserefcit: I pitty them. Cicero. Si ad centesimum vixisset annum, senectutis eum suæ non pœniteret: if he had lived to the hundredth yeare, it would not repent him of his old age. Tædet animam meam vitæ meæ: It irketh my soule of my life. Aliorum te misereor: thou art sorry for others. Tui nec misereor, nec pudet: I neither pitty, nor am ashamed of thee. Fratres me quidem piget, pudetque: I am both grieved, and ashamed of my brother.

Some Impersonals doe sometimes become Personals: as, Nemo miserorum commiserescit: none pittyeth the miserable. Virg. Non omnes arbuta juvant, humilesque myrica: the groves and the low sararices delight not all men. Ovid. Namque decent animos mollia regna tuos: For womanish Kingdomes become thy courage. Seneca. Agricolam arbor ad frugem producta delectat: a tree growne up to beare fruit delighteth the husbandman. Te non pudet istud? Doth not that thing shame thee? Non te hæc pudet? art thou not ashamed of these things?

Cœpit, it beginneth: Incipit, it beginneth: Desinit, it ceaseth: Debet, it ought: Solet, it is wont: and Potest, it may: being joyned to Impersonals, doe become Personals: as, Quint. Ubi primum cœperat non convenire, questio oriebatur: as soone as it began that they should not agree, a question did arise. Idem. Tædere solet avaros impendit: it is wont to grieve the covetous of charge. Desinit illum studii tædere: it ceaseth to grieve him of his study. Sacerdotem infamia pudere debet: it ought to shame a Priest of his ignomiance. Quint. Perveniri ad summum, nisi ex principiis, non potest: it is not possible that men should come to the principall, but by the beginnings.

A Verb Impersonall of the passive voice, hath like Case, as

An Accusative
with a Genitive

Impersonals are
made Personals,

Cœpit, &c.

Passive Impersonals,

as Personall Passives have : as, Benefic multis a principe : it is well done to many of the Prince. Caesar, Ab hostibus constantius pugnatur : the enemy fought constantly. Per many times the Case is not exprest, but understood : as, Mamma vi certatur : understood, ab illis : they fought with great force. Virg. — strato discumbitur ostro : they sit down upon scarlet spread abroad.

Verbs Impersonals of the Passive voyce, being joyned of Nouns, doe governe such Case, as the Verbs Active which they come of : as, Pareatur sumptui. let cost be spared. Because we say, Pareamus pecuniz : let us spare cost.

When a deed is signified to be done of many, the Verb being a Verb Noun, we may well change the Verb Noun, into the Impersonall in, ut, as, In ignem posita est, utitur : she is put into the fire, they weep.

A Verb Impersonall of the Passive voyce, may be taken indifferently for every one of the Persons of both Numbers, as, Statui, it is stood : that is, I stand : stat, thou standest : stat, he standeth : stamus, we stand : statis, ye stand : stant, they stand : by reason of an Ablative Case, with a Preposition, being joyned unto it : as, Statui a me, it is stood of me : that is, I stand. Statui ab illis : it is stood of them : that is, they stand.

The construction of a Participle.

A Participle.

Participles governe such Cases, as the Verbs that they come of : as, Fructurus amicis : that shall enjoy his friends. Consulens tibi : counselling thee. Diligendus ab omnibus : to be loved of all men. Virg. — duplices tendens ad sidera pulmas, Talia voce refert : holding up his two hands towards the skies, he uttereth such things. Idem. Ubra lacte domum referent discentia capellæ : the young Goats will come home, their dugges full of milke. Though in these the Dative Case is more usuall : as, Tor. Restat Chremes, qui mihi exorandus est : Chremes remaineth, who is to be intreated of me.

The Genitive Case.

The Genitive Case.

Participles being changed into Nouns require a Genitive Case : as, Fugitans licium : fleeing strife. Indoctus pila : unskillfull at the ball. Cupientissimus tui : most desirous of thee. Lactis abundans : abounding with milke. Salust. Alienigena appetens : greedy of another mans goods. Sui profusus : lavishing his owne. Inexpertus belli : unexperienced in war.

Participles changed into Nouns.

Here note, that Participles may four manner of wayes be changed into Nouns. The first is, when the voyce of a Participle is construed with another Case, then the Verb that it cometh of : as, Appetens vini : greedy of wine. The second, when it is compounded with a Preposition, which the Verb that it cometh of, cannot be compounded withall : as, Indoctus, unlearned : Innocens, innocent. The third, when it cometh all the degrees of comparison : as, Amans, loving : Amantior, more loving : Amantissimus, most loving. Doctus,

learned : Doctor, more learned : Doctissimus, most learned. The fourth, when it hath no respect, nor expresse difference of time : as, Homo laudatus, a man laudable ; Puer amandus, that is, amari dignus ; a child worthy to be loved. And all these are properly called **Præter Participials**.

The Accusative Case.

Præter Participiall voices, Perosus, bearing a deadly hatred ; hating hating : and Pertæsus, weary : have alwayes the same signification, and doe governe an **Accusative Case** : as, Exosus scytiam : hating cruelty. Vitam pertæsus, weary of life. Immundam segnitiam perosæ : utterly detesting foule idleness. Astronomus exosus ad unum mulieres : an Astronomer utterly abhorreth women in generall. Suetonius : Pertæsus ignaviam suam : weary of his owne slothfulness. Exosus, and Perosus, are read also with a **Dative Case**, if they signifie passively : as, Germani Romanis perosi sunt : the Germans are extremely hated of the Romans. Exosus Deo, & sanctis : hated of God, and the Saints.

The Accusative Case.

The Ablative Case.

Natus, borne : Prognatus, begotten : Satus, sprung : Creatus, come up : Creatus, created : Ortus, risen : Editus, brought forth : will have an **Ablative Case** : as, Ter. Bona bonis prognata parentibus : a good daughter, borne of good parents. Virg. — fate sanguine divum : O thou which art descended of the blood of the Gods. Idem. — quo sanguine cretus ? of what blood descended he ? Ovid. Venus orta mari, mare præstat matrem : Venus sprung of the sea, the sea is better for the traveller. Terra editus, brought forth of the earth.

The Ablative Case.

The construction of the Adverb : the

Nominative Case.

EN, and **ECCE**, Adverbs of **Adverting**, have often a **Nominative Case** : but seldome an **Accusative** : as, Virg. En Priamus, sunt hic etiam sua præmia laudi : Lo where is Priamus, then here are his rewards of praise. Cicero. Ecce tibi status hostis : Lo, what is our state to thee. Virg.

The Nominative Case.

— En quatuor aras,
Ecce duo tibi Daphni, duoque altaria Phœbo : see, four Altars, see two for thee Daphnis, and two Altars for Phœbus. En, and Ecce, Adverbs of **upholding**, are joyned to the **Accusative Case** onely : as, En animum & mentem : see his courage and his minde. Juvenal. En habitum : see his apparell. Ter. Ecce autem alterum : but loe another.

The Genitive Case.

Certaine Adverbs of place, time, and quantity, have a **Genitive Case** after them. Of Place : as Vbi, where : Undam, in what place : Nusquam, no where : Ed, thither : Longe

The Genitive Case.
Place.

Longè, by farre: Quò, whither: ubivis, in any place: Hinc, what h. ther: as, Ubi gentium? what country? Quam terrarum ablit? into what part of the world is he gone? Nunc quam loci invenitur: he is found in no place. Eò impudens venit: it is come to that impudence. Ubique gentium, every where.

Time.

Of Time: as, Nunc, now: Tunc, then: Tum, then: Intererea, in the meane while: Pridie, the day before: Postridie the day after: as, Nihil tunc temporis amplius quàm flere poteram: I could then doe nothing but weep. Pridie ejus die pugnam incieunt: they entered the fight the day before that day. Pridie calendarum, or calendar: on the day before the Kalends.

Quantity.

Of quantity: as, Parum, a little: Satis, enough: Abundè, sufficiently, &c. as, Satis eloquentie, sapientie parum: eloquence enough, wisdom little enough. Abundè fabularum audimus: we have heard enough fables. Multum lucri: much gaine.

Instar.

Instar, signifieth equality, measure, or likeness: as, Virg. Instar montis equum divina Palladis arte Edificant: by the divine art of Pallas, they build an horse like a mountaine. Mititur Philippus solus, in quo instar omnium auxiliorum erat: Philip is sent alone, in whom there was a likeness of all aides. Ovid. Sed scelus hoc meriti pondus & instar habet: but this wickedness hath the weight and measure of his desert. Sometimes it is put with the Preposition, ad: as, Vallis ad instar castrorum clauditur: the Dale is inclosed, even like a campe. Populus Romanus è parva origine, ad tantæ magnitudinis instar emicuit: the people of Rome from a small beginning is scene, even in the likeness of so great an highness. Ter. Ah, minime gentium, non faciam: alas, I will not doe it any wise. Here the Genitive Case, gentium, is added, in the way of pleasantness.

The Genitive Case used, for pleasure, or a grace.

The Dative Case.

A Dative Case.

Certaine Adverbs will have a Dative case, like as the Nounes that they come of: as, Venit obviam illi: he came to meet him. For, we say; obvius illi: to meet him. Canit similiter huic: he singeth like this man. Sibi inutiliter vivit: he liveth unprofitably for himselfe. Propinquius tibi sedet, quam mihi: he sitteth nearer to thee, than to me. These Datives be used adverbially: Tempori, by time: Luci, by day: Vesper, in the evening: as, Tempori venit, quod omnium rerum est primum: he came in time, which is the chiefest thing of all. Tempori surgendum: we must rise by time. Vesper cubandum: we must go to bed in the evening. Luci laborandum: we must worke by day. Luci occidit hominem: hee slew the man by day. Vidi ad vos afferri vesperi: I saw the child brought to you in the evening.

Adverbiall Datives.

The Accusative Case.

An Accusative Case.

Certaine Adverbs will have an Accusative case, of the Preposition that they come of: as, Propius urbem: nearer the

the City. Proximè castra : next the tents. Castra propius urbem moventur : the camp is moved nearer the City. Salust. Proximè Hispaniam sunt Mauri : the Moors are next Spaine. Cedo, being an Adverb of one earnestly desiring to be the better, doth governe an Accusative Case : as, Ter. Cedo quem vis arbitrum : appoint whom you will arbiter.

Cedo.

The Ablative Case.

Adverbs of diversity : as, Aliter, otherwise : Secus, otherwile : and these two, Ante, before : Post, after : are often found with an Ablative Case : as, Multò aliter, much otherwile. Paulò secus, a little otherwile. Multò ante, much before Longè secus, farre otherwile. Virg. — longo post tempore venit : he came long time after. Paulò post : a little after. Antesse these be rather adverbs, then Ablative Cases.

An Ablative Case.

Adverbs of the Comparative and Superlative Degree, doe admit the Cases commonly serving the Comparative and Superlative degree : as is afore said : as, Accessit propius illo : he came nearer him. Optime omnium dixit : hee spake best of all. Cicero. Legimus propius ad Deos, & propius à terris : we read nearer to the Gods, and nearer from the earth. Livius. Paulò plùs trecenta vehicula sunt amissa : Some what more then three hundred Chariots were lost. Idem. Hominum eo die cesa plùs duo milia : there were slain that day more then two thousand men. Plùs, is joyned to Dominative, Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative Cases : as, Livius. Plùs quàm quinquaginta hominum ceciderunt : more then fiftie men were slain. Abierat acies paulò plùs quingentos passus : the armie had departed more then five hundred paces. Ter. Dies triginta, aut plùs eo, in nave fuit : I have bene in the ship thirty dayes, or more then that,

Note.

Plùs.

What Adverbs doe agree to each Moods of the Verbs.

Ubi, when : Postquam, after that, and Cùm, when : being Adverbs of time, are put sometimes to Verbes of the Indicative Mood, and sometimes of the Subjunctive Mood : as, Virg. Hæc ubi dicta dedit : when he gave these words. Ter. Vbi nos laverimus, si voles lavato : when we have washed, if thou wilt, wash thou. Virg. Cùm faciam vitula pro frugibus, ipse venio : when I shall offer sacrifice with a Calfe, for come harvest, come thou. Idem. Cùm canerem reges & praelia, Cynthia aurem vellit : when I sing in verse of Kings and warres, Apollo twitcheeth me by the eare. Were the former seemeth to be an Adverb, and the latter a Conjunction.

Note.

Donec, put for quamdum, so long as : hath an Indicative Mood : as, Ovid. Donec eram solus : so long as I was safe. Being put for, quousque, untill : it requieth sometimes an Indicative Mood, and sometimes a Subjunctive : as, Virg. Cogere donec oves stabulis, numerumque referre iussit : untill he had me to gather the sheepe to the sheep-folds, and to count

Donec.

the number of them. Colum. Donec ea aqua quam adiecit, decocta sit : untill the water which thou hast added, bee boiled. Ovid. Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos ; untill that thou shalt be rich, thou shalt number many friends.

Dum.

Dum, noting a thing present, and not perfect : as, *Let us* Quamdiu, so long as ; requirerth an indicative Mood : as, Ter. Dum apparatur virgo in conclavi ; untill that the maid is made ready in the inner parlour. Idem. Ego te meum dici tantisper volo, dum quod te dignum est facis : I will that thou be called my soune, so long as thou doest that which is befitting thee. Dum, for dummodo, so that : will have sometimes a Potentiall, and sometimes a Subjunctive Mood : as, Dum proficibis : so that I may profit thee. Dum ne ab hoc me falli conperiam : so that I finde not that I am deceived by this fellow. Dum, for donec, untill : hath onely a Subjunctive Mood : as, Virg. Tertia dum Latio regnantem viderit ætas ; untill the third summer shall see thee reigning in Italy.

Quoad.

Quoad, for quamdiu, how long, or, as long as : is added either to the Indicative, or Subjunctive Moods ; but being used, for donec, untill : to the Subjunctive Mood onely : as, Quoad expectes contubernalem ? how long lookest thou for thy chamber-fellow ? Cicero. Quoad possem, & liceret, ab ejus laterē nunquam discederem : as long as I could, and might, I never went from his side. Omnia integra servabo, quoad exercitus huc mittatur : I will keepe all things safe untill the army be sent hither.

Simulac.

Simulac, as soone as, and Simulacq, as soone as : serve to the Indicative, and Subjunctive Mood : as, Simulac belli patiens erat : as soone as he could away with warre. Virg. Simulacque adoleverit ætas : as soone as age grew ripe.

Quemadmodum.

Quemadmodum, even as : Ut, as ; Utcunque, howsoever : Sicut, as : doe admit both the Moods : as, Erasmus. Ut sperabis, ita & resalutaberis : as thou shalt, so also thou shalt be resaluted. Horat. Ut sementem feceris, ita & metes : as thou hast sown, so also thou shalt mowe. Ut, for postquam, after that : is joyned to the Indicative Mood : as, Ut ventum est in urbem : after that they came into the City.

Quasi, &c.

Quasi, as : Cuius, as : Tanquam, as : Perinde, acsi, even like as : Haud secus acsi, no otherwise then as : when they have a proper Verb, are used with the Subjunctive Mood : as, Tanquam feceris ipse aliquid : as though thy selfe hast done somewhat. Ter. Quasi non norimus nos inter nos ; as if we knew not amongst our selves. Otherwise, they couple like Cases : as Novi hominem tanquam te : I know the man even as thy selfe : Arridet mihi quasi amico : he smiles on me, as on a friend.

Ne.

Ne, not : an Adverbe of forbidding : is set before either the Imperative, or Subjunctive Mood : as, Virg. Ne sis magnus sacerdos : O thou great Sun, as I pray, be not cruel. Ter. Hic nobis magnus est, ne metuas : he is a great knight, feare not. Ne, for non, not : serveth unto other Moods.

Adverbe turned
into Propositions
ons,

Adverbes having a casuall word to serve unto, are changed into Propositions : as, Juvenal : Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator : the solitary traveller will sing before the thief.

The

The construction of the Conjunction.

Conjunctions.

Conjunction copulatives, and disjunctives, and these four, Quam, then : Nisi, except : Præterquam, save that : An, whether : couple like Cases : as, Xenophon & Plato fuerunt æquales : Xenophon and Plato were equall. Socrates docuit Xenophontem & Platonem : Socrates taught Xenophon and Plato. Quam calidus esses, aut frigidus : I would thou werst colde, or hot. Albus an ater homo sis, nescio : Whether the man be white or black, I know not. Est minor natu quam tu : he is younger then thou. Nemini placet, nisi (vel præterquam) sibi : hee pleaseth none, except (or besides) himselfe. And sometimes they are put betwene diverse Cases : as when any private reason of a casuall word is against it ; or requirerh it to be otherwise : as, studiū Romæ & Athenis : I studied at Rome, and at Athens. Est liber meus & fratris : it is my booke and my brothers. Emi fundum centum nummis & pluris : I bought the ground for an hundredth pieces of coine and more. Emi librum centissū & pluris : I bought a booke for a hundredth Alles, or a noble and more. Vixi Romæ & Venetiis : I lived at Rome and at Venice. Horat. — in Meti descendant iudicis aures, & patris, & nostras : let them descend into the eares of censuring Metius, and of your fathers, and mine.

Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives, most commonly joyne like Words and Tenses together : as, Petrus & Joannes precabantur & docebant : Peter and John prayed and taught. Recto stat corpore, despicitque terras : he stands with his body right, and looks downe on the earth. And sometimes like Words, but diverse Tenses : as, Et habetur & refertur tibi a me gratia : I both doe, and will thanke thee. Ter. Nisi me lascivias amantem, & vana spe produceres : but that thou assuredst me being in love, and diwest me on with vain hope. Tibi gratias egi & te aliquando collaudare possum : I have given thee thanks, and sometimes may commend thee.

Et, although : Tamen, although : Etiam, although : Quamquam, howbeit : require an Indicative Word, in the beginning of a sentence : but oftner a Subjunctive in the middle : as, Etsi nihil novi aserebatur : though no newes was brought.

Quamvis, although : and Licet, although : have more commonly a Subjunctive Word : as, Quamquam animus meminisse abhorret : though my minde abhorre to remember it. Virg. Quamvis Elysiis miretur Græcia Campos : although Greece admires the Elysian fields. Ovid.

Ipse licet venias Musis comitatus Homere ; Nil tamen attuleris, ibis Homere foras : Albeit thou thy selfe shouldst come. O Homer, accompanied with the Muses ; yet if thou hast brought nothing, thou shalt see Homer, out of the doores.

Ni, but that : Nisi, except : Si, if : Siquidem, for : Quod, because : Quia, because : Quam, then : Postquam, after that : Postquam, after : Ubi, for postquam, after that : Nunquam, never : Primum, before that : Doce serva both to the Indica-

Ni.

tive and Subjunctive Moods : as, *Quod redieris incolumis gaudeo*. I am glad that thou art returned in safety. *Castigo te, non quod odio habeam, sed quod amem* : I chastise thee, not because I hate, but because I love thee. A liud honestum indicas, quam Philosophi statuunt : thou shewest another manner of honesty then the Philosophers set downe. *Gravium accusas, quam patitur tua consuetudo* : thou accusest more grievously then thy custome doth permit.

Si,

Si, if : is joynd to both the Moods : *Etsi, for Quamvis, although* : to the Subjunctive onely : as, *Ter. Redeam* : non si me obsecrat : should I returne ? no, although thee dost intreat me. *Si quis, if any* : to the Indicative Mood onely : as, *Si quis adest* : if any be present.

Quando,

Quando, because : *Quandoquidem, because* : *Quoniam, because* : are joynd to the Indicative Mood : as, *Virg. Dicite* (quandoquidem in molli conselimus herba :) say ye (because we sit together in the soft grasse.) *Quoniam mihi non credis, ipse facito periculum* : seeing thou beleevest not me, make triall thy selfe.

Quippe,

Quippe, forasmuch as : when it hath a proper Verb, will have an Indicative Mood : as, *Danda est huic venia, quippe aegrotat* : leave is to be given to this man, forasmuch as he is sicke. If *Qui*, which : be added ; it admitteth both the Moods : as, *Non est huic danda venia, quippe qui jam bis pejeravit, or pejeraverit* : leave is not to be given to this man, forasmuch as he is forsworne already twice.

Qui,

Qui, which : when it hath the force of a reason, requirerh a Subjunctive Mood : as, *Stultus es, qui huic credas* : thou art a foole, which dost credit this fellow.

Cum,

Cum, for quamvis, although : for *Quandoquidem, because* : or *for Quoniam, seeing that* : serveth alwayes to the Subjunctive Mood : as, *Cicero. Nos cum præcipi nihil posse dicamus, tamen aliis de rebus disserere solemus* : although we say that nothing can be delivered in precepts, yet are we wont to discourse of other matters. *Virg. Cum sis officiis Gravidæ viribus apus* : seeing that thou art fit to Mars, for many charges.

Cum, & tum,

Cum, and tum : also, tum, doubled, doe couple like Moods : but in Cum, there is lesse contained, and therefore it is placed in the former part of the clause : and in Tum, more, and therefore it is set in the latter part : as, *Amplectitur cum eruditos omnes, tum imprimis Marcellum* : he both loveth all learned men, and especially Marcellus. *Odicitum literas, tum virtutem* : he hateth both learning, and also vertue.

Ne, an, num,

Ne, what : An, whether : Num, whether or no : being Interrogatives, lo'e the Indicative Mood : as, *Virg. — speratne, & vespitur aura Ætherea ?* what, is he alive, and is he fed with the airy breath ? But when they are taken doubtfully, or, indefinitely, they require the Subjunctive Mood : as, *Vise num redierit* : goe see whether he be returned or no. *Nihil efert fecerisne, an persuaseris* : it skillteth nothing whether thou hast done it, or perswaded it.

Ut.

Ut, being a conjunction causall, or perfective ; and ut, for ne non, that not : after Verbs of feare, is joynd sometimes to

is the Potentiall, and sometimes to the Subjunctive Mood: as, Ter. Filium perduxere illuc secum, ut una esset, meum: they brought my sonne thither, that he might be with them. Idem. Te oro Dave ut redeat jam in viam: I intreat thee Davus that he may now returne into the way. Idem. Metuo, ut subleat hopes: that is, ne non subleat: I feare how mine hope can abide constant: that is, that he cannot abide constant.

Ut, being a Conjunction of preceding; or put for, quam, although: and ut, for utpote, for as much as: serveth in the Subjunctive Mood: as, Ut omnia contingant quæ volo, levavi non possum: Albeit all things should fall out, which I would, I cannot be eased. Non est tibi fidendum, ut qui toties felluris: there is not trust to be given to thee, considering thou art one which hast deceived so often. Ut qui solus relictus heris: as one which hast bene left alone.

Ut, for, postquam, after that: for, quemadmodum, as: or, semper, as: and being an Interrogative; is joyned to the Indicative Mood: as, Cicero. Ut ab urbe discessi, nullum in-teristi diem, quin scriberem: after that I departed from the City, I passed over no day, but I did write. Ter. Tu tamen has nuptias perge facere, ut facis: notwithstanding, goe thou on in making this marriage, even as thou dost. Idem. Crelo ut est dementia: I beleevethat it is his madness. Virg. Ut valet? Ut meminit nostri? how doth he? how doth he remem-ber us?

Although also we spake of this, a little before, in the construction of the Adverbe.

The construction of the Preposition.

Sometimes the Preposition, In, and some other Preposi-tions also, are not expressed, but understood: and the ca-sual word nevertheless put in the Ablative Case: as, Habeo te loco parentis, that is, in loco: I have thee instead of a fa-ther. Apparuit illi humana specie, that is, sub humana specie: he appeared unto him under the shape of a man. Discessit ma-gistratu: that is, à magistratu: he is departed from his office.

A Verb Compound sometime requireth the Case of the Preposition that he is compounded withall: as, Exeo domo: I goe out of the house. Prætereo te insalutatum: I passe by thee without saluting thee. Adeo templum: I goe to the Church. Virg. Nec posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem: and not be able to turne away the King of the Trojans from Italy. Idem. —emoti procumbunt cardine poltes: the poltes cast off from the hookes, lie flat on the ground. Idem. Detrudunt naves scopulo: they thrust the ships from the rocks.

Verbs compounded with, à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in, doe sometimes, and that eloquently, repeat the same Preposi-tions with their Case, without composition: as, Abstinerunt à viris: they abstained from men. Ter. Amicos advocabo ad hanc rem: I will call my friends to this matter. Cum legi-bus conferemus: we will compare with the Lawes. Cicero. Detrahere de tua fama, nunquam cogitavi: I never thought to detract from thy fame. Cum ex insidiis evaseris: when thou

A Preposition.

A Preposition in composition governes often the same Case, which it doth, without com-position.

Verbs compound-ed with, à, ab, &c.

art escap'd out of the Snare. Ter. Postquam excessit ex quibus : after he pass'd out from among the young striplings. Rempublicam cogitatione curaque incumbere : be careful in the Common-wealth, with thy cogitation and care.

In, for, erga, &c.

In, for, erga, towards : for, contra, against : and for, to : hath an Accusative Case : as, Virg. Accipit in Teucrium animum mentemque benignam : he taketh a minde and countenance meaning towards the Trojans. Idem. Quid mens Aeneas in te committere tantum ? what so great a matter couldst thou Aeneas commit against thee ? Quid Troës potuere ? what could the Trojans ? Idem. Quid te Meripedes ? aut quid vinctus ducit in urbem ? whither dost thy feet lead thee ? O Meris ? to whither leads the way into the City ? Allos, In, is joyned unto an Accusative Case, as often as division, imitation, or increase of a thing with time is signified : as, Virg. Equus locus parteis ubi se via findit in ambas : and there is a place where the place divideth itself into two parts. Ovid. Versa est in cineres sospite Troja viro : Troy is turned into ashes, my husband being safe : Amor mihi crescit in horas : love groweth in me every houre.

In requirere an Ablative Case, when an action in a place is signified : as, Ovid. Scilicet ut fulvum spectatur in ignibus aurum : forsooth, as yellow gold is tried in the fire.

Sub.

Sub, for, ad, to, for, per, through : and for, ante, before : hath an Accusative Case : as, Sub umbram properemus : let us hasten to the shadow. Livius. Legati ferè sub id tempus, ad rem repetendas missi : that is, per id tempus : the Embassadors are sent almost about that time to repeat the matters. Virg. — sub noctem cura recurat : that is, a little before night ; or night bring at hand : a little before, or towards night, my care begetteth afresh. Otherwise, it admitteth an Ablative Case : as, Quicquid sub terra est, in apricum proferet ætas : whatsoever is under the earth, time will bring forth into light. Virg. Sub nocte silenti : that is, in nocte silenti : in the silent night.

Super.

Super, for, ultra, beyond : is joyned to the Accusative Case : as, Virg. — Super Garamantas & Indos Proferet imperium : he will enlarge his Empire beyond the Garamantines and Indians. Super, for, de, of : and in, upon : to the Ablative case : as, Tacitus. Multis super ea re variisque sermo : much and diverse rumour of, or concerning the matter. Virg. Fronde super viridi : upon greene leaves.

Subter.

Subter, is with authors in one signification joyned to both cases : as, Livius. Pugnatum est super subterque terras : they fought upon and under the earth. Virg. omnes ferre liber subter densa testudine casus : it pleaseth me to beare all chances under a thick Target.

Tenus.

Tenus, delighteth with an Ablative case, both singular and plurall : as, Pube tenus : up to the wrist. Pectoribus tenus : up to the breast : but with a Genitive onely plurall : as, Crurum tenus : up to the legge. Genum tenus : up to the knees. Aurium tenus : up to the eares.

Prepositions
turned into
Adverbs.

When Prepositions are set alone without a case, or doe forme the degrees of comparison : they are changed into Adverbs : as, Virg. — Longo post tempore venit : he came long after.

Idem. Pone subit conjux, ferimur per opaca locorum : the
 we entereth after, we are led through darke places. Idem.
 coram quem queritis adsum, Troius Aeneas : I Aeneas the
 among whom ye seek, am present before you. Qui ante non
 erat, post dolebit : he that bewareth not afore, shall be sorry
 afterwards. Coram laudare, & clam vituperare inhonestum est :
 to praise to commend one, and behinde the back to dis-
 praise, is an unhoneest point.

The construction of the Interjection.

An Interjection

Interjections are often put absolutely, and without a Case :
 as, Virg. Spem gregis (ah!) silice in nuda connixa reliquit :
 the silice hath left the hope of the flocke in the bare travell.
 Ter. Quæ malum dementia ? what madnesse in the Devils
 mind ?

O, being an Interjection of exclaiming, is joynd to the
 Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases : as, O festus
 dies hominis ! O joyfull day of man ! Virg. O fortunatos ni-
 miam, bona si sua norint, Agricolas ! O husbandmen too
 fortunate, if they knew their goods. Idem. O formose puer,
 nimium ne crede colori : O beautifull childe, trust not too
 much to thy beauty.

Heu, and proh, have sometimes a Nominative, sometimes
 an Accusative, and sometimes a Vocative Case : as, Heu pi-
 um ; alas the godliness. Virg. Heu prisca fides : alas the an-
 cient fidelity. Idem. Heu stripem invisam : alas the odious
 spot. Ter. Pro Jupiter ! tu homo adigeme ad insaniam : O Ju-
 piter ! thou O man wilt drive me to madnesse. Idem. Pro
 delum atque hominum fidem ! ah the truth of God and man !
 Maut. Pro sancte Jupiter : O holy Jupiter.

Hei, and veh, have a Dative case : as, Ovid. Hei mihi,
 nullis amor est medicabilis herbis : ah me, that love is not
 curable by any herbs. Ter. Veh misero mihi, quanta de spe de-
 cessi ! woe is me miserable man, from how great hope have I
 lide ?

Heu, pro, or,
 proh.

Hei, and Veh.

Of the Figures.

A Figure is a forme of speaking by a certaine renewed art.
 Of which in this place, we will deliver onely two kinds :
 that is to say, of a word, and of construction.

What a Figure is

The Figures of a word.

Of a word, there are five Figures : Próthesis, Aphæresis,
 Epenthesis, Syncope, Paragoge, and Apocope.

Próthesis, is the apposition of a letter or syllable to the be-
 ginning of a word : as Gnatus, for natus, a sonne. Teruli, for
 ali, I have borne or suffered.

Aphæresis, is the taking away of a letter or syllable, from
 the beginning of a word : as, Ruit, for eruit, he hath plucked
 up by the roots ; Temere, for contemere, to despise.

Epenthesis, is the interposition of a letter or syllable in the
 midst

Próthesis.

Aphæresis.

Epenthesis.

middle of a word : as, *Reliquias*, the remaines : *Religio*, religion : the letter, *l*, being added. *Induperatorem*, for, *Imperator*, an Emperor.

Syncope.

Syncope, is the taking away of a letter, or syllable, from the middle of a word : as, *Abiit*, *Petit*, *Dixit*, *repositum*, &c. *Abiit*, he went away. *Petit*, he desired : *Dixisti*, thou saidst. *Repositum*, laid up.

Paragoge.

Paragoge, is the adding of a letter, or a syllable, to the end of a word : as, *dicier*, for *dici*, to be spoken.

Apécope.

Apécope, is the taking away of a letter, or syllable from the end of a word : as, *Peculi*, for *peculii*, of our own substance : *Dixtin*, for *dixistine*, hast thou said. *Ingeni*, for *ingenium*, of wit.

The Figures of construction.

The Figures of construction are eight. Apposition, Evocation, Syllepsis, Prolepsis, Zeugma, Synthesis, Aniptosis, and Synecdoche.

Apposition.

What Apposition is.

Apposition, is a continued or immediate conjunction of two Substantives of the same Case, by the one whereof, the other is declared : as, *Flumen Rhenus* : the floud Rhenus. And Apposition may be of many Substantives : as *Marcus Tullius Cicero*.

Sometimes Authors doe use these Substantives in diverse Cases, as if they did belong to diverse things : as, *Urbs Patavii*, the City of Patavium : with *Virgil* *Urbs Antiochiz*, the City of Antioch : with *Cicero*.

In Apposition the Substantives are not alwayes of the same Gender or Number. For, as often as one of the Substantives wanteth the singular Number : or is a Plour Collective, they may be of diverse Numbers : as, *Urbs Arhenæ* : the City of Athens. *Ovid*. In me turba ruunt luxuriosa proci : the woovers, a riotous company, doe flocke together unto me. *Virg*. Ignavam fucos pecus à præsepibus arcent : they drive away from the hives the drownes an idle cattell.

Apposition is three-fold.

Apposition is made for a three-fold consideration : for the restraining of a generality : as, *Urbs Roma* : the City Rome. *Animal equus* : a living creature, an horse. For the removing of equivocation : as, *Taurus mons Asiz* : *Taurus* an hill of Asia. *Lupus piscis* : *Lupus* a fish. And for the attribution of some property : as, *Erasmus vir exactissimo judicio* : *Erasmus* a man of a most exact judgement. *Nireus adolescens insigni formâ* : *Nireus* a stripling of an excellent beauty. *Timotheus homo incredibili fortuna* : *Timotheus* a man of an incredible fortune.

Evocation.

Evocation.

When as the first or second Person doth immediately call unto it selfe the third : they doe both become the first or second Person : as, *Ego pauper laboro* : I a poore man doe labour :

labour: Tu dives ludis, thou a rich man dost play.

Evocation therefore is an immediate reducing of the third Person, either to the first or second.

But it is to be noted, that the Verb doth alwayes agree with the Person calling: as, Ego pauper laboro. Tu dives ludis.

For, in Evocation foure things are to be noted: the Person calling, which is alwayes the first or second: the Person called, which is alwayes the third: the Verb, which is alwayes of the first, or second Person; and the absence of a conjunction.

In Evocation, the Person calling, and called, are sometimes of diverse Numbers: as when either the Person called wanteth the singular Number: as, Ego tuæ deliciae istuc veniam: I thy delight will come thither. Or, when as it is a foune Collective: as, Magna pars studiosorum amantates quimus: a great part of us Students doe seeke pleasures: where, nos we, is understood. Or lastly, when as it is a foune distributive: as, In magnis læsi rebus uterque sumus: In great matters we are both hurt.

And there is a double Evocation: explicite, when, as well the Person calling, as called, is expressed: and implicite, when the Person calling, is understood: as, Sum pius Aeneas: I am godly Aeneas: where, ego, I, is understood. Populus speramur ab uno: we people are overcome of one: where, nos we, is understood.

Evocation dis-
verse.

Syllepsis.

Syllepsis, or Conception, is a comprehension of the more unworthy, under the more worthy: of *ovr*, *con*, and *ἀντα*; *luno*.

Syllepsis.

And there is a double conception: namely, of the Persons; as oft as a Person is conceived with a Person: and of the Senders; as often as the more unworthy Sender is conceived with the more worthy. For the declaration whereof thou shalt note these things following.

A coupling by the Conjunction, & and, nec neither, ne-
que neither, and cum, for & and, is the plurall Number: and therefore requirerth a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plurall. Which Verb, Adjective, or Relative, shall agree in Gender and Person, with the more worthy Nominative Case, and Substantive: as, Quid tu & soror facitis? What doe thou and thy sister make? Ego & mater miseri perimus: I and my mother being miserable, doe perissh. Tu & uxor, qui adfuitis, testesthor: thou and thy wife were present, be ye witnesses.

Conception of Persons.

For the first Person is more worthy then the second or third, and the second more worthy then the third: as, Ego & pater sumus in tuto: I and my father are in safety. Tu atque frater es in periculo: thou and thy brother are in danger. Nos ego neque tu sapimus: neither I nor thou are wise. Virg. — divelli.

The more worthy
thy Person.

— divellimur inde Iphicus & Pelias mecum : We are pulled thence Iphicus and Pelias with me. Idem. — Rheus cum fratre Quirino iura dabant : Rheus with his brother Quirinus did minister justice. Notwithstanding, cum. Doth rather desire a Verb singular : as, Tu quid ego & populus mecum desideret, audi : heare thou what I, and the people with me doe desire.

Conception of Genders.

The more worthy Gender.

Also the Masculine Gender is more worthy then the Feminine or Neuter ; and the Feminine more worthy then the Neuter : as, Rex & Regina beati : the King and the Queene are blessed. Chalybs & aurum sunt in fornace probante stercle and gold are tryed in the fornace. Hinc per vim leges plebiscita coacti : herehence by violence lawes and statutes are forced.

An exception.

But when the Substantives doe signifie things without life, the Adjective or Relative is more usually put in the Neuter Gender : as, Virg. — cum Daphnidis arcum

Fregist & calamos, quæ tu perverse Menalca,
Et cum vidisti puero donata, dolebas :

seeing that thou, O perverse Menalca, hast broken the Bowe and Arrows of Daphnis, and which, when thou sawest given to a boy, thou didst reyne. Salust. Ira & agritudo permixta sunt : anger and sorrow are mixed together. Idem. Huic bella civilia, exdes, & discordia civilis, grata fuerunt : to this man, civill warrs, slaughters, and civill discord were acceptable. Virga tua & baculus tuus, ipsa me consolata sunt : thy rod and thy staffe, they have comforted me.

Conception double.

Moreover, Conception is either Direct : as, when the conceiving, that is, the more worthy, and the conceived, that is, the more unworthy, are coupled by &, atque, or que, and : or Indirect, when they are coupled by cum with : as, Ego cum fratre sumus candidi : I with my brother are white. Where both the Conceptions are indirect.

Syllepsis implicita.

There is also a certaine implicita conception of Genders : as namely, when neither the Gender conceiving, nor conceived are expressed : but we doe speake of the man and woman both, even as of the man onely : as if I should say : Quæque est formosus : both of them are faire : speaking of the husband and wife both. So Ovid. Impliciti laqueis nudus uterque jacet : they lie both naked fast tied together with coards : Speaking of Mars, and Venus, tied with a net together of Vulcanus.

Prolepsis.

Prolepsis.

Prolepsis, or Presumption, is a certaine summary pronunciation of things. And it is made, when the congregation of the whole doth aptly agree with the Verb or Adjective : and then the parts of the whole are reduced to the same Verb or Adjective : wherewith notwithstanding, for the most part, they agree not : as, Dux æquile volaverunt ; hæc ab oriente, illa ab occidente : two Eagles flew, this, from the East : that, from the West. Here, the congregation, of the whole, two Eagles,

Eagles.

agles, doe in all things agree with the Verb, *Volaverunt*, which with which the parts, *hæc* and *illa*, this and that, being referred to the same Verb, doe not agree in Number.

The congregation of the whole is a word of the plural Number : as, *Dæ aquilæ* : two Eagles : or equall thereunto : as, *Corydon*, and *Thyrsis*. For, a copulation is equivalent to a plural : as, *Virg.*

Compulerantque greges Corydon & Thyrsis in unum;

Thyrsis oves, *Corydon distentas lacte capellas* :

And *Corydon* and *Thyrsis* had driven the flocks into one : *Thyrsis*, the Sheepe : *Corydon*, the little Goates strouting with milke. Or the congregation is a *Proleptis* Collective : as, *Populus vivit*, *alii in penuria*, *alii in deliciis* : the people live, some in wants, some in delights.

Suspicius and *Aldis* affirme five things to be necessary in a *Proleptis*. The congregation, as in the former example : due apposition : the Verb, as, *Volaverunt* : the parts, as, *hæc* & *illa* : the determination of the parts ; as, *ab oriente*, *ab occidente* : and the order ; that is, that the whole goe before, and the parts follow.

Note.

Five things necessary, in a *Proleptis*.

And a *Proleptis* is double : *explicite*, where all things are explicated, which should be in a *Proleptis* : as, *Equi concurrunt* : *hæc dextra*, *ille à sinistra Hippodromi* : the horses runne : this from the right hand, that from the left hand of *Hippodromus* : *implicitè*, in which, something is hid : as, *Ovid* :

Alter in alterius jacentes lumina vultus,

Quærebant taciti noster ubi esset amor :

the one casting the lights in the face of the other, they secretly sought where our love should be. One of the parts is wanting with the determination : that is, & *alter in alterius*. And *alter alterius onera portate* : beare ye the one, the burdens of the other : where *vos* is wanting : and the other part with the determination ; that is, & *alter alterius*. *Ter. Curemus æquum uterque partem* : let us both regard the part alike : here the whole *nos* is understood, and the parts, *alter* & *alter*, are included in the distributive *uterque*.

A *Proleptis* double.

Diomedes affirmeth it to be a *Proleptis*, as often as we describe before, which was done after : as, *Virg.* *Lavinique venilitora* : and he came to the shores of *Lavinium*. For, *Lavinium* was not then, when *Aeneas* came into *Italy*.

And it is called *Proleptis*, of *pro*, that is, before, and of *leptis*, *sumo*.

Zeugma.

Zeugma is a reduction of one Verb or Adjective answering to the nearest, so divers Nominative Cases, or Substantives : to one, expressly, but to the other, by a supplement : as, *Cicero*. *Nihil te noxurnum præsidium palatii*, *nihil urbis vigilæ*, *nihil concursus bonorum omnium*, *nihil hic munus habendi senatus locus*, *nihil horum ora vultusque movebat* : hath the night garrison of the court, the watches of the city, the fears of the people, the concourse of all good men, the most fenced place of the Senate, the faces and countenances

Zeugma.

nances of these, nothing moved thee? The Verb is here introduced especially, to, ora, vultusque; but to the other Rominative Cases, by a Supplement. For, we must understand, praesidium movit; vigilae moverunt: timor populi movit: bonorum concursus movit: habendi senatus locus movit. But when there is a comparison, or similitude, the Verb or Adjective agrees with the further Rominative Case or Substantive: as, Ego melius quam tu scribo: I write better than thou. Ego sicut famulus arui: I have been dyed as hay. Hoc ille ita prudenter atque ego fecisset: he would have done this thing as wisely as I.

Likewise if there be nisi, but, or except: as, Ter. Talem filium nulla, nisi tu pareret: such a sonne none but thou couldst bring forth. Though Poets are sometimes wont to speak otherwise: as, Ovid. Qui nisi secretae lacerant Phillida silvae? Who but the solitary woods have hurt Phillida? Of which we have spoken before in the concordance of the Verb and Rominative case: as, Cicero. Quare ut arbitror, pridem hinc nos quam illuc tu nos videbis: wherefore, as I guess, we shall see thee here, before thou shalt see us there.

Zeugma is made three wayes. In person: as, Ego & tu stodes: I and thou dost study. In Gender: as, Maritus & uxor est irata: the husband and the wife is angry. In Number: as, —hic illius arma, Hic currus fuit: here his weapons, here his Charet was.

The Verb or Adjective is sometimes put in the beginning, and then it is called Protozeugma: as, Dormio egrot tu: I sleepe and thou. Sometimes in the midst, and it is called Mesozzeugma: as, Ego dormio & tu: I sleep and thou. Sometimes in the end, and it is called Hypozeugma: as, Ego & tu dormis: I and thou sleepest.

In a Zeugma there are foure things required: two Substantives: as, Rex & Regina: the King and the Queene. A Conjunction, which may be either Copulative, Disjunctive, or Expletive: as, & and, vel either, &c. A Verb, or Adjective: as, Irata est: she is angry. And that the Verb, or Adjective, doe answer the nearer Rominative Case or Substantive. There is a certaine kinde of Zeugma also, made by Adverbs: as, Cubas ubi ego: thou liest where I doe. Causa quando nos: thou suppest when we doe.

When a Verb is reduced to two Rominative Cases, and agreeth with both, it is as they say a Zeugma of locution, not of construction: as Joannes fuit Piscator & Petrus: John was a fisher and Peter. And it is called Zeugma, as it were, copulatum: a thing coupled: of the Greek, *σύνθεσις*, or, *σύνθεσις*, which is, copulo, I couple.

Synthesis.

Synthesis.

Synthesis, is a speech congruous in sense, not in voice: as, Virg. Pars in frustra secant: part doe cut in pieces. Gen. armati: a nation or people armed.

And Synthesis is made sometimes in Gender onely, and that either for discerning the sexe: as, Anser foeta: a Goose. Elephanta grvida: an Elephant great with young: or, for supplement

Supplement sake; as, Præneste sub ipsa: Præneste before same: where the word City is understood. Centauro in magna: Centaurus in that great: where the word ship is understood. Sometimes in Number onely: as, Turba ruunt: the multitude doe fall. Aperite aliquis ostium: open the doore some body. And sometimes in Gender and Number both: as, Pars peris tenuere ratem: part being drowned, held the oare. Virg. Nec manus ob patriam pugnando vulnere passi: this hand in fighting for my country indured wounds.

And it is called Synchesis of *or*, that is, *con*, and *9ine*, that is, *positio*: because it is a composition, that is, a construction made for signification sake.

Antiptôsis.

Antiptôsis.

Antiptosis, of *anti*, that is, *for*, and *ptôsis*, that is *Casus*, Case: is a position of one Case for another; and that sometimes with a very good grace: as, Virg. Urbem quam statuo, vestra est: the City which I meane, is yours. Ter. Populo ut placerent, quas fecisset tabulas: that the fables which he had made, might please the people. Sermonem quem audistis, non est meus: the talke which ye have heard, is not mine. Ejus non venit in mentem: *for*, *id*: that came not into my minde. Although here, venit, came, is rather used Impersonally: Aristotelis libri sunt omne genus elegantia referti: the brookes of Aristotle are stuffed with all kinde of elegancie: where is, omne genus, *for* omnis generis. Sed, *id* genus, quod genus, &c. *for*, *cujus* generis, of which kinde: ejus generis, of that kinde, &c. Idne estis authores mihi? *for*, ejus: are ye of that thing authours unto me? But sometimes is made an harder Antiptôsis: as, Salve primus omnium parens patriæ appellate: *for*, prime: God save thee O thou chiefe of all, the father called of countrry. Habet duos gladios, quibus altero te occisurum minatur; altero villicum: *for*, quorum altero: he had two swords, with the one whereof hee threatneth to slay thee; with the other, the Bailife.

Synecdoche.

Synecdoche.

Synecdoche, is when that which is part is attributed to the whole; as, Aethiops albus denres: an Ethiopian white in the teeth. Here, white agreeing to the teeth onely, is attributed to the whole Ethiopian.

By a Synecdoche, all *Proper* Adjectives signifying any property: also, Verbs Passives and Senters, signifying any passion: may governe an Accusative or Ablative Case; signifying the place, wherein the property or passion is: as, Aeger pedes, or, pedibus: diseased in the feet. Saucius frontem, or, fronte: wounded in the forehead. Doleo caput, or, capite: I am pained in my head. Redimitus tempora lauro: crowned on the head with Laurell. Truncatus membra bipenni: cut in the limmes with an axe, or twisill. Effusas laniata comas, contusaque pedus: rent in the scattered locks of haire, and banyed in the breast.

for

Note.

For these are Greeke phrases: *Excepto quod non similes* except that thou wast not together with them. *Cetera iuncta* glad of other things. *Cetera similes*, and differunt: like in other things, in one thing they differ.

And it is called *Synecdoche*, of *συ*, which is, *con*, and *ἵσχυρος*, *suscipio*, I take: because the whole is taken with his part.

If any desire to know perfectly the elegancies of figurative construction, let him read Thomas Linacer, Discour-
sing learnedly, plainly, and plentifully, of *Eclipsis*, *Pleonasmus*, *Enallage*, and other figures.



OF PROSODIA.

What Prosodia
is,



ROSODIA is that which teacheth the right pronounciation of words: called in La ine, *Accentus*: that is, a time, or the rising and falling of the voyce.

And Prosodia is divided into *Tonus*, that is, *tune*, *note*, or *accent*: *Spiritus*, that is, *breathe*: and *Tempus*, that is, *time*.

Tonus, is a rule or note, whereby a syllable in a word, is lifted up, or pressed downe. And it is threefold: *Acutus*, acute, or long: *Gravis*, heauie, or short: and *Circumflexus*, circumflect, or betwene both.

A long note.
A short note.

A circumflect
note.
An *Apstro-*
phus.

Spirit,

An acute or long note is a thwart line, ascending towards the right hand thus. An heauie or short note, is a thwart line descending towards the right hand thus. A circumflect note, is a certaine thing made of both, by this figure. Whereunto may be added an *Apostrophus*, which is a certaine piece of a Steele, put to the top of a letter: in this manner: which sheweth the want of the last vowel of a word: as, *Tanto me crimine dignum dixisti*: for *Tantone*.

There are two spirits, or breaths: *Sharpe* and *light*. *Sharpe*, whereby a syllable is pronounced sharpe: as, *Homo*, *Honor*. *Light*, whereby a syllable is pronounced without an aspiration: as, *Amo*, *onus*.

The first rule of tones, or notes.

Monosyllables.

A word of one syllable being short, or long by position, hath the long note: as, *Mel*, *sel*, *pars*, *pax*: being long by nature, it hath the circumflect note: as, *Spes*, *Flas*, *fol*, thus, *rūs*.

PROSODIA.

143

The second Rule.

IF a word of two syllables, if the former be long by nature, and the latter short; the former is circumflected: as, *Lūna, māsa*; otherwise it hath the long note: as, *Citus, lāctus, sōlers, sūtur.*

Disyllables.

The third Rule.

A Word of more than two syllables, if the last but one be long, it hath the long note: as, *Libertas, penātes*; but if it be short, the long note is put upon the last but two: as, *Dōminus, pōntifex.* Except the compounds of *Facio*: as, *Beneficis, malefācis, calefācit, trifefācit.* But if the last syllable but one be long by nature, and the last of all short, the last but one is circumflected: as, *Romānus, amātor.* The compounds *sis, sit*, have the long note in the last syllable: as, *Malefic, calefit, beneficit, satisfit.*

Poly syllables.

An Appendix.

BECAUSE that now through mens ignorance, the circumflect notes is scarcely by pronunciation discerned from the acute or long note; Grammarians doe confound the circumflect, with the acute.

Note. Confusion of accents.

The fourth Rule.

THERE are five things which doe trouble the rules of tones of notes.

What troubleth tones.

Difference.

1 **D**ifference transposeth the note: as, *Unā*, being an Adverbe hath the long note in the last syllable, lest it should seeme to be a *Pronome.* So, *ecō, aliō, aliqūō, continuō, sedulō, porrō, tortē, quā, siquā, aliquā, nequā, illō, falsō, citō, ferē, planē,* and other such like: *purā* for *scit*, *ponē* for *post*, *quorā, circum, aliās, palām, ergō*, being a Conjunction: but, *ergō* for *causā*, is circumflected: as, *Vicq. — illius ergō venimus.* All these therefore, even as the *Greeke* acutifones are in the end of sentences acuated, or marked with the long note: but in the consequent, gravated, or marked with the short note.

Difference.

So, for difference sake, the last syllable but two, hath the long note in these: *Dēinde, prōinde, pēinde, aliquando, siquādo, nequādo, hūjusque, ā longē, dē longē, dēinceps, dūtaxat, deorsum, quāpropter, quīnimo, enīvero, propēmodum, ānmodum, āffabrē, intereā loci, nihilōminus, paulōminus,* when they are not diverse words, as are *pube-tenus, crurum-tenus*: for they are not compounds, as *hactenus, quatenus*, and such like.

Trans.

Transposition.

Transposition.

2 **T**Ransposition inverteth the note, as it falleth ordinarily in Prepositions: which bring set after an aggravated, or marked with the short note: as, Virg. Trans tra per & remos: Te penes imperium.

Attraction.

Attraction.

3 **A**traction changeth the note, when as after any word followeth a conjunction inclitive: as, que, ne, ve. For these particles doe draw the accent to the syllable precedent, and doe acute it, or marke it with the long note: as, Luminâque, laurûsque Dei. Likewise, Dum, sis, nam, par elca. But where there is a manifest composition, the note is not varied: as, Dénique, útique, itaque, úndique, híc cine, and the like. Notwithstanding ubique doth keepe the note of his time, and ubivis.

Ubique, & ubi-
vis.

Concision.

Concision.

4 **C**oncision doth transſerre the note, when the words are curtailed by Syncope or Apocope. For then they retaine the note of the whole word: as, Virgili, Valeri, Mer- curi; for, Virgili. Valerii, Mercurii. So certaine Nounes and Pronounes syncopated, doe cūcūſſect the last ſyllable: as, Arpinâs, Ravennâs, noſtrâs, veſtrâs, cūjâs: of Arpinâris, Ra- vennâris, noſtrâs, &c. So, donec, of donecum. So, hûc, illûc, iſtûc, adhûc, &c. for hucce, illucce, &c. And the compounds of dic, duc, fac: as, benedic, reduc, caleſac.

Nounes and Pro-
nounes Synco-
pated.

Idioma.

Idioma.

5 **I**dioma, that is, the property of the tongue, varieth the note: so as that, if Greek words doe come whole unto us, they keepe their note: as, Simois, periphas, doe acute the last syllable but one, or affect it with the long note: but being made Latine words, they have the last but two long, because they doe shorten the last but one.

But they which doe become altogether Latine, doe also keepe the Latine note: as, Geórgica, Bucólica, the last but two having the long note: though with the Grecians, they have the note in the last syllable. So also cómcēpia, tragœdia, só- phia, symphónia, have the note in the last syllable but two, though in their own language they have it in the last but one.

Note.

Moreover, if the proper note of a strange word bee unknowne, it shall be the safest way to pronounce it after the Latine accent.

Common ſilla-
bles.

Common syllables are alwayes short in prose: as, Céle- bris, Cathedra, Mediocris.

Of the order of Verses.

Hitherto of notes and breaths: now we adde a few things concerning the time of syllables, and the manner of a verse
Time

Time is the measure of the pronouncing of a syllable.

A short syllable is of one time, and a long one of two. A short time is noted thus, \cup ; and a long one thus, $-$: as, \cup terra.

Time.
A syllable.

Of syllables in just order disposed, are made feet.

A foot.

And a foot is the constitution of two or more syllables, by a certaine observation of times.

Division of feet

Of feet, some are dissyllables; that is, consisting of two syllables: and some trissyllables: that is, standing of three syllables.

But concerning tetrasyllables; that is, words of foure syllables: it doth not much appertaine to our purpose, to discourse.

Dissyllables are, { Spondeeus } as { -- Virtus
Pyrrichius } $\cup\cup$ Deus
Trocheus } \cup Panis
Jambus } \cup Amans

Trissyllables are eight, { Molossus } as { -- Magnates
Tribrachius } $\cup\cup\cup$ Dominus
Dactylus } $\cup\cup$ Scribere
Anapestus } $\cup\cup$ Pietas
Bacchius } \cup Honestas
Antibacchius } \cup Audire
Amphimacer } \cup Charitas
Amphibrachius } $\cup\cup$ Venire

Moreover, feet in just number and order fitted, doe make a Verse. For a Verse is a speech consisting of a just and lawfull number of feet.

A verse.

He that will make a Verse, must first of all learne rightly to measure it by the feet, which is called Scanning.

Scanning.

And Scanning is a lawfull commensuration of a Verse upon every one of his feet.

What belongeth to scanning.

To scanning these things doe appertaine, Synalæpha, Eclipsis, Synæresis, and Cæsuræ. Synalæpha is a certaine elision of a vowell before another in diverse words: as, *Sera nimis vit' est crastina, viv' hodie.*

Synalæpha.

And it is made sometimes in these words: as, *Dii, diis, idem, iidem, deinde, deinceps, semianimis, semihomo, seminus, deest, deero, decrit,* and such like. But *heu*, and *ô*, bee never put out.

Eclipsis is as often as *m*, with his vowell is taken away; the next word beginning with a vowell: as, *Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum*: for *monstrum, horrendum, informe, &c.*

Eclipsis.

Synæresis, is the contraction of two syllables into one: as, *Virg. Seu lento fuerint alvaria vimine texta*: for *alvaria*.

Synæresis.

Dizæresis, is, when as of one syllable divided are made two: as, *Ovid.*

Dizæresis.

Cesura.

Debiērānt fūſos ēvolūiſſe ſūos. ſoꝝ evoluiſſe.
Cesura, is, when as after a 'perfect foote, a ſhoꝛt ſyllable
 is in the end of a word made long.

The kinds of *Cesura*.

Triemimeris.

Triemimeris, of a foote, and a ſyllable: as, Virg.

Pētoribūſ inhiāſ, ſpirāntiā cōſūlit extā

penthemimeris.

Penthemimeris, of two feet, and a ſyllable: as, Virg.

Omniā vincit āmōr, & nōs cēdāmūſ āmōrī.

Hepthemimeris

Hepthemimeris, of three feet, and a ſyllable: as, Idem.

Oſtēntāſ ārtē pāritēr ārcūmqūē ſōnāntēm.

Enneemimeris.

Enneemimeris, of foure feet, and a ſyllable: as, Idem.

Illē lācūſ nīvēū mōlli ſūlūſ hīācīnthō.

Of the kinds of Verses.

The kinds of Verses, whereof in this place we purpose
 chiefly to intreat: are Heroicum, Elegiacum, Asclepiadum,
 Sapphicum, Phalæcium, Jambicum.

The Verse Heroicum.

Hexametrum.

The Verse Heroicum, which is also called Hexametrum; hath
 in number six feet, being of two kinds: Dactylus and
 Spondeus. The fifth place challengeth to it selfe Dactylus pe-
 culiarily, the sixth Spondeus: the rest, either this, or that
 as we will: as, Virg.

Titirē tū pātūlā rēcūbāſ ſub rēgminē ſāgī. Sometimes Spon-
 deus is found also in the fifth place: as, Idem.

Note.

Chārā Dēūm ſōbōlēs, māgnūſ Jōvis incrēmētūm. The last
 syllable of every Verse is counted common.

The Verse Elegiacum.

Pentametrum.

The Verse Elegiacum, called also Pentametrum, consisteth
 of a double Penthemimeris: the first whereof comprehendeth
 two feet, Dactylicall, Spondaicall, or either, with a long ſyl-
 lable also; and the other also two feet, but altogether Dactyli-
 call with a long ſyllable: as, Ovid.

Rēs ēſt ſolliciti plēnā timōris āmōr.

The Verse Asclepiadum.

Asclepiadum.

The Verse Asclepiadum consisteth of a Penthemimeris, that
 is, of a Spondeus and Dactylus, and a long ſyllable, and then
 two Dactyluses: as, Horatius.

Mēcēnās ātāvīſ cōditē rēgibūſ.

The Sapphic Verse.

The verse Sapphicum.

The Verse Sapphicum consisteth of a Trocheus, Spondeus,
 Dactylus, and then two Trocheuses: as, Hor.

Jam satis ceteris nivis atque dirē. Notwithstanding, in this
kind of Verse, is added after three Verses, the Verse Ado-
næum : which standeth of a Dactylus, and Spondus : as,
Horat.

Adonicum.

Intēgēr vitæ, scēlērīsq̄e pūrīs,
Nōn ēgēt Māurī iacūlis nec arcū,
Nēc vēnēnātīs grāvīdā sīgittīs,
Fuscē, phārētrā.

The Verse Phaleucium, or, Endecasyllabum.

The Verse Phaleucium, or Endecasyllabum, consisteth of a
Spondus, Dactylus, and then three Trochæuses: as,

Phaleucium,

Quōquō diffāgiās pāvēns Mābīlī,
Nōstrum non poteris latere nāiūn.

The Verse Jambicum Archilochium.

A Right Jambicall Verse consisteth of Jambusses onely : as,
Suis et ipsa Rōmā viribūs ruit. Notwithstanding, some-
times in places unequal for an Jambus it receiveth a Tribra-
chus, Spondus, Dactylus, Anapæstus : and in places equall a
Tribrachus, a Spondus more seldome.

The verse Jam-
bicum.

This Verse is of two kinds, Dimetrum, and Trimetrum, or
Senarium.

The Verse Dimetrum.

The Verse Dimetrum hath four feet : as,

Dimetrum.

O cārmīnūm dūlcēs sōrēs,
Quās ōrē pūlchrā mellēō
Fūdis, lyzēquē succīnīs.

Trimetrum, or Senarium.

The Verse Trimetrum consisteth of five feet : as,

Trimetrum.

Qūi nōs dāmnānt, sūnt hīstrīonēs mākīmī.
Juvēnal. Nām Cūrīōs sīmūlānt, vīvūnt Bācchānālīā.

Of the quantity of the first Sillables.

The quantity of the first sillables is knowne eight wayes.
By Position, by a Vowel before a Vowel, by a Dip-
thong, by Derivation, Composition, Proposition, Rule,
Example, or Authority.

The quantity of
sillables.

Position. Rule. 1.

A Vowel before two Consonants, or before a double Con-
sonant in the same word, is every where by Position long:

1.

¶ 1

as.

Jim

2.

as, Ventus, axis, patrio.

If a Consonant end the former word, the word following beginning also with a Consonant: the Vowel going before is likewise by Position long: as, Major sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocere. The syllables, *for, sum, quam, and sit,* are by Position long.

But if the former word end in a short Vowel, the word following beginning with two Consonants, it is sometimes, though seldom, pronounced long: as, Virg.

Occultā spōsā, et plūres dē pacē trīumphās.

A short Vowel before a Mute, a Liquid following; is common: as, Patris, volucris. But a long Vowel is not changed: as, Aratrum, simulachrum.

A Vowel before a Vowel.

One Vowel before another.

1.

A Vowel before another in the same word, is always short: as, *Dēus, mēus, tuus, pius,* except the Genitive Cases in *ius*, having the second form of the Pronoun: as, *unius, illius,* &c. where *i*, is common: though in *alierius*, it be ever short: and in *alius*, ever long. Except also the Genitive and Dative Cases of the fifth Declension, where *e*, between a double *i*, is long: as, *faciēi*, otherwise not: as, *Rēi, spēi, fidēi.*

Fi, in Fio.

Fi, also in *fiō*, is long, except there doe follow an *e*, and an *r*, together: as, *Fierem, fieri*: as, Juvenal.

Sic fiunt 680 mārītī.

Idem. Quod fieri nōn possē pūtes. The Interjection, *ohē*, hath the first syllable doubtful.

The second Rule.

2.

A Vowel before another in Greek words is oftentimes long: as, *Dicite Pierides. Respice Lāerten;* and in the Possessives: as, *Aenēia nutrix. Rhodopēus. Ophēa.*

A Diphthong. Regula. 3.

A Diphthong.

Every Diphthong with the Latines is long: as, *Āgrum, nēter, mulz,* except a Vowel follow: as, *Præire, præstus, præamplus.*

Derivation. Rule. 4.

Derivation.

Derivatives have the same quantity with their Primitives: as, *amator, amicus, amabilis,* the first being short, of *āmo*. A few notwithstanding are excepted, which coming of short syllables, have their first syllable long: of which sort are these:

Vox, vécis, of vóco
Lex, légis, of légo
Rex, régis, of régo
Sédes, & fédile, of fēdeo
Jumentum, of júvo
Fómes, & fómentum, of fōveo

Júcnudus, of júvo
Júnior, of júvenis
Móbilis, of móveo
Húmanus, of hómo
Vómer, of vómo
Péder, of péde

And there are of the contrary side, which continuing of long syllables, are pronounced short; of which sort are these.

Dux, dúcis, of dúco
Dícar, maledícus
And many such of díco
Fides, of fín
árena } of áreo
árista }
Póful, of póno

Oéni, of gigno
Frágor } of frángo
Frágilis }
Nóto, as, of nótu
Náto, as, of nácu
Dísertus of díssero
Sópor, of sópio

And many others of both kinds, which are left to the Students, in reading to be observed.

Composition. Rule. 5.

The Compounds follow the quantity of their simples: as, Pórens, impórens, solor, consólor, légo, is, perlégo, légo, as, allégo. Except notwithstanding these short syllables, continuing of long ones: as,

Composition.

Ináuba } of nábo. Deíero } of júro
Pronáuba } Peíero }

Preposition. Rule. 6.

Of the Prepositions, these are alwayes long: à, de, prae, se, e: except a Cæwell doe follow: as, Virgill. Unda dehiscens. — Sudibúsve prækstis.

Preposition.

Pro, also is long, except in these: Præcella, præfugus, prætervus, prônepos, præpago, for a kindred, præfanus, præfiteor, præfundus, præfiscor, præfari, præpero, præfugio, præfecto. These, Procuro, profundo, propello, propulso, propago, as, have the first syllable doubtful. Præpheta, and Præpino, with a little o, are Greek, and therefore they have the first syllable short.

Pro,

Di, is also long, except in Dirimo, and dísertus.

The rest of the Prepositions, if Position will suffer it, are short: as, ad, ob, ab, sub, re, in, &c.

Rule. Canon. 1.

Every Imperfect Tense of two syllables, hath the former long: as, Légi, émi; except yet, Fidi, of fíndo, bíbi, dedí, scídí, stéti, víli.

Canon.

Canon. 2.

Such as double the first syllable of the Imperfect tense, have the first likewise short : as,

Pēpendi	}}	Pēpedi	}}	Pūpugi
Tērendi	}}	Tūpudi	}}	Didici
Tōtōndi	}}	Pēfelli	}}	Cēcidi, of Cado
Mōmordi	}}	Tētigi	}}	Cēcidi, of Cedo

Moreover, a Supine of two syllables, hath the former also long : as, Mōtum, lātum, lōtum, crētum : except, Quidam, situm, litum, itum, rētum, rātum, dātum, sātum : and citum, of cico, es ; for eītum, of cico, cis, being the fourth Conjugation, hath the first syllable long.

Example, or authority.

As the quantity of these syllables, which falleth not under the former instructions, is to be learned by use, example, and authority of Poets, as by the most certaine rule. Let children learne therefore out of Poets to observe the common quantities of first syllables : of which sort are these. Britannus, biethynus, cacus, colyra, crathis, pachians, palatium, pelion, criticus, curetes, Diana, fidene, gradivus, hynulus, pyrene, rubigo, rutilius, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, lycas, orion, rudo, Sychæus, Sycanius, and such like.

What words
have the first
syllable common

Of the middle syllables.

Middle syllables may be knowne, partly by the names, whereby the first are : and partly also by the increase of the Genitive Case : and by the analogie of the Conjugation. Of the increase of the Genitive Case of Nounes of more then two syllables, we have spoken abundantly before in the Sunders of Nounes: whether thou maiest resort, in all doubts touching this matter. The rest may easily be supplied by much reading, and observation of the best Poets.

The analogie of
the Conjugat.

The analogie of the Conjugation, children have learned, by learning the rudiments: that is, that a, the signe of the first Conjugation, is long by nature : except in do, and his Compounds, when they are of this Conjugation : as, Dāmus, circundāmus, dābis, circundābis, dāre, circundāre.

Furthermore, let them marke, that the syllables, rimus, and riis, in the Imperfect tense of the Subjunctive Mood, are alwayes short : but in the Future tense, in prosa, long : yet in verse indifferent, according to Aldus : as, Imperfect tense, Amaverimus, amaveritis ; Future tense, Amaverimus, amaveritis.

The variation of
the middle syl-
lables:
Adjectives in
inus.

Sometimes the middle syllables do varie with the Poets; as in these following : Connubium, Picedula, Malesa, Pharsalia, Batavus, Sidonius, and the like.

Latine Adjectives in inus, have the last syllable but one, long:

long : as, Clandestinus, mediastinus, parietinus, matutinus, ves-
 tertinus, repentinus : except these following : Diutinus, crasti-
 nus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, serotinus, oleaginus, fa-
 cinus, cedrinus, carbasinus. And other Adjectives materiall,
 as formed in inus, of the names of metals : as are very many
 coming of Greeke Letters in 1195 : as, Crystallinus, myr-
 rinus, hyacinthinus, adamantinus, &c.

The rest, use, with the observation of Poets will teach
 better then any Grammar rules : which without any measure
 at end, are prescribed of Grammarians, concerning the quan-
 tity of middle syllables. Therefore, passing over these, let
 us now come to the laying open of the quantities of the last
 syllables.

Of the last syllables.

Although the last syllables doe either equall, or even exceed
 the very number of letters : yet we will orderly cume
 through them also.

First, words ending in a, are long : as, Amā, contrā, er-
 gi : except, Parā, itā, quā. Likewise Nominatives, and all
 Cases in a, of what Gender, Number, or Declension soever
 they bee : except the Vocatives in a, coming of Greeke
 words in as : as, ō Aeneas, ō Thomā : and the Ablative Case of
 the first Declension : as, ab hac musā : Numerals Inginta,
 have the finall letter, a, common, but oftner, long : as, Tri-
 ginta, quadraginta.

Words ending in b, d, t, are short : as, ab, ad, caput.
 Such as end in c, are long : as, ac, sic, and hic, an Ad-
 verbe. But three in c, are ever short : Lac, nec, donec. Two
 are common : Fac, and the Pronome hic, and the Inter
 hoc, so that it be not the Ablative Case.

Words ending in e, are short : Mare, penē, legē, scribē. Ex-
 cept all words of the fifth Declension in e, : as, Diē, hiē,
 with the Adverbs coming thereof : as, Hodie, quotidie,
 pridie, postridie, quare, qua derē, and the like : and the second
 Persons singular also of the Imperative Mood Active, of
 the second Conjugation : as, Docē, movē, manē, cavē.

Words of no more then one syllable ending in e, are long :
 as, Mē, tē, sē : except quē, nē, vē. Conjunctions encliticall.
 Also, Adverbs in e, coming of Adjectives, have their e,
 long : as, Pulchrē, doctē, valdē, for valide : whertunto adde,
 Fernē, ferē. But benē and malē, are altogether short. Lastly,
 words written of the Greekes with α, are by nature long : of
 what Case, Gender, or Number soever they be : as, Leche,
 Anchise, cetē, tempē.

Words ending in i, are Long : as, Domini, magistri, ama-
 ri, doceri : except mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, which are common :
 but nisi, and quasi, are short. Of which sort are also the Va-
 tives and Vocatives of the Greekes, whose Scrutative singu-
 lar endeth in i, short : as,

Huic { Palladi } Vocat. & { Amarylli
 { Philhdi } { Alexi
 { Minoidi } { Daphni

The last sil-
 bles.

A.

B, d, t,
 C.

E.

Monosyllables
 in e.

Adverbs.

I.

Words

L.

Words ending in l, are short : as, Animā, Annibāl, mil-
pugil, sāl, consil : except Nil, contracted of nihil : and cer-
taine Hebrew words in l, as, Michaēl, Gabriēl, Raphaēl,
Daniēl.

N.

Words ending in n, are long : as, Prān, Hymēn, quā,
Xenophon, nōn, dēmōn : except forān, forsitān, ān, tamēn, a-
tamēn, veruntamēn.

In.

Also, in, with his Compounds is short : as, Exin, subin,
dein, proin. Adde hertunto those words which are curtailed
by Apocope : as, Mēn ? Vidēn ? Audin ? Nemōn ?

En.

Nounes also ending in en, whose Genitive hath inis, short,
as, Carmēn, crimēn, peccēn, tibicen, cinis.

On.

Also Greeke words in on, with the little o, of what Case
soever : as, Nominat. Iliōn, peliōn. Accusat. Caucasōn, py-
lōn. And certaine also in in, as, Alexin : in yn : as, Iryn. In
an, also, of Dominatives in a : as, Nominativo, Iphigenia,
Aegina, Accusativo, Iphigeniān, Aeginān. For Nounes in an,
of Dominatives in as, are long : as, Nominativo, Aentes,
Mariyas, Accusativo, Aencān, Mariyān.

O.

Words ending in o, are common : as, Amo, virgo, porrō,
docendo, legendo, cundo, and other voices of Secunds in do.
Except the oblique Cases in o, which are ever long : as, hunc
Dominō, servō, ab hoc templō, damno : and Adverbs derived
of Adjectives : as, Tantō, quantō, liquidō, falsō, primo, mani-
festō, &c. Except sedulō, mutō, crebrō, serō, which are com-
mon. But Modō, and quomodō, are alwayes short. Also, Ci-
tō, with Ambo, duo, ego, and homo, are scant read long.
Words notwithstanding of no more then one syllable in o, are
long : as, Dō, hō : as also, Ergo, for causē. In like manner
Greeke words in o, of what Case soever they be : as, Hae
Sapphō, Didō : huius Androgeo, Apollō : hunc Aihō, A pollo.

R.

Words ending in r, are short : as, Caesar, torcular, pēr, vir,
uxōr, turtūr. Cor, is once in Ovidius found long : as,
Mollē mēum levibus cor est vislabile telis.

Also, Fār, lār, vēr, sūr, cūr, are long : and Pār, with his
Compounds : as, Compar, impar, dispar. Also certaine Greeke
words in er, ending with them in r : as, Aēr, crater, chara-
cter, ether, soter : except patrēr, and matrēr, which with the
Latines have the last syllable short.

S.

Words ending in s, have terminations equall with the
number of the Vowels : as, As, es, is, os, us.

As.

First, such as end in as, are long : as, Amās, musās, ma-
jestās, bonitās : except the Greeke Nounes, whose Genitive
Case singular endeth in dos : as, Archās, Pallās, Genitivo,
Archadōs, Palladōs : and the Accusative Cases plurall of
Nounes increasing : as, Heros, Heroos, Phyllis, Phyllidos,
Accusativo plurali, Heroās, Phyllidās.

Es.

Such as end in es, are long : as, Anchisēs, sedēs, patrēs :
except Nounes in es, of the third Declension, which have the
last but one of the Genitive Case increasing, short : as, Milēs,
seges, divēs. But Ariēs, abies, paries, Cerēs, and Pēs, with his
Compounds, as, Prapēs, bipēs, tripēs, quadrupēs, are long. Also,
es, of sum, with his Compounds, is short : as, Porēs, adēs, pro-
dēs, obēs. To which may be added penēs : with Nounes of
the

PROSODIA.

15

the Nenter Gender, and the Nominative Cases plurall of the Greekes : as, Hyppomanes, Cacoethes, Cyclopes, Naiades.

Words ending in is, are short : as, Paris, panis, tristis, hilaris. Except the oblique Cases plurall in is, which are long : as, Mulus, mensis, of mensa, dominis, templis. Also quibus : with such as have the last syllable but one of the Genitive Case increasing long : as, Samnis, Salamis, Genitivo, Samnitis, Salaminis. Adde hereunto such as end in the Diphthong, eis, whether Greeke or Latine, of what Number or Case soever they be : as, Symoeis, partais, omoeis. And also all monosyllables : as, Vis, lis, except is, and quis, Nominatives, and bis, with Ovidius. Adhereunto adde the second Persons singular of Verbes in is, whose second Persons plurall end in isis, the last but one being long ; with the future Tenses of the Subjunctive Mood in ris : as, Audia, velis, dederis : Pluraliter, Auditis, velitis, dederitis.

154

Words ending in os, are long : as, Honos, nepos, dominos, servos : except, Compos, impo, and os, ossis : and Greeke Names with the little o : as, Delos, Chaos, Pallados, Philidos.

Os,

Words ending in us, are short : as, Famulus, regius, tem-
pus, amamus. Such as have the last syllable but one of the Genitive Case increasing long, are excepted : as, Salus, re-
lia, Genitivo, salutis, telluris. Also, all words of the fourth Declension in us, are long, except the Nominative and Co-
cative Cases singular : as, huius manus, ha manus, has manus, & manus. Adde hereunto also monosyllables : as, Crus, thūs, mūs, sus, &c. And in like manner Greeke Names ending in the Diphthong oue, of what Case soever they be : as, Hic Pan-
thūs, Melampus, huius Sapphus, Clius : and the name of Iesus, to be honored of all the godly :

Us,

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iesus.

Lastly, all words ending in u, are long : as, Manu, genu, amatu, diu.

U,

The end of Grammer.

To God be all glory for evermore.

V



THE SUMME OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE OUT OF NEWELL.



Ex divina decem explicata præceptis, perfectam mihi ante oculos pie vivendi regulam promit; ad quam vitam meam dirigere atque formare debeo, constituta, si usquam aberrem, æternæ in me damnationis pœna. Per legem igitur peccata mea, Deumque ob ea ira in me incensum, & sempiternam mortem divina mihi justitia debitam esse agnosco: quæ cogitatio horribili formidine u-

moreque, ex peccatorum conscientia animum meum percellit; undequum neque prudentia, neque viribus aut potestate mea, neque ulla humana Angelicave ope aut auxilio, neque ullo alio modo aut ratione, posse me omnino liberari intelligam; Evangelium me edocet, Christum Dei Filium, hominem sine peccato factum, morte sua meritas debitasque peccatis meis penas, perfolvisse, Dei Patris sui in me iram suo sanguine restinxisse, & me rursum in gratiam ipsius reconciliasse, suæque justitiæ fecisse participem, & æternæ secum vitæ (ô, amorem, imperjurabilem!) hæredem instituisse. Quæ omnia Christi beneficia, mihi per fidem communicantur; quam fidem, Spiritus sanctus in animo meo per prædicationem Evangelii, iniecit; eamque per sacra mysteria sua, asperatabilia, certissimaque indicia, & pignora divinæ erga me per Christum bonitatis, confirmavit. Quæ etiam fides, ut viva quædam atque ferax arbor, pietatis, justitiæ, aliorumque bonorum operum fructus in me per omnem vitam procreare deberet: ad gloriam Dei, qui tot, & tantis me beneficiis affecit, & ad utilitatem etiam, atque exemplum salutare proximi. Cujus fidei incrementum, facultatemque placendi Deo, & ista omnia præstandi, me, qui ex meipso maximè sum infirmus, atque imbecillus, continuis utque ardentissimis precibus, à Deo Patre bonorum omnium auctore, in nomine filii sui Jesu Christi servatoris nostri, efflagitare; gratiasque illi maximas, pro universis ab eo acceptis beneficiis assidue agere oportet. Quæ omnia necessaria sunt cognitu atque observatu, etiam ad salutem.

In turning Latine into English, or construing, the same order is to be observed, which the Grammar prescribeth for the turning English into Latine: as, to consider the Words, and their agreement: to seeke out in every sentence also, the principall Verbe, the Nominative Case, the word next

next following; and what Case it must be, and so forth: as shall appeare also afterwards in a like example to this; the English whereof is as followeth, according to this rule.

Gods Law declared in the ten Commandments, doth set forth unto me before mine eyes, a perfect rule of living godly; according to which, I ought to direct and frame my life; the punishment of eternall condemnation being appointed for me, if in any thing I doe swarve from it. By the Law therefore I know my sinnes, and God for the same inflamed with wrath against me, and everlasting death by Gods justice, to be due unto me. Which consideration doth strike my minde, from the conscience of my sins, with horrible feare and dread. From which, when as I understand my selfe to be able in any wise to be delivered, neither by my wisdom, nor strength, or power, neither by any humane, or angelicall help or aide, neither by any other way or meane; the Gospel doth teach me, Christ the Sonne of God made man, without sin, by his death to have paid the punishments deserved, and due to my sinnes: by his blood to have quenched the wrath of God his Father against me: and to have reconciled me againe into the favour of him, and to have made me partaker of his righteousness, and to have ordained me (O the love unsearchable!) an heire with himselfe of eternall life. All which benefits of Christ, are imparted unto mee by faith. Which faith the holy Ghost hath instilled in my minde, by the preaching of the Gospel: and hath confirmed the same by his holy Scriptures, the visible and most assured signes and pledges of Gods goodnesse towards me, through Christ. Which faith also, as a certaine lively and fruitfull tree, ought to bring forth in me, throughout my whole life, the fruits of godlinesse, righteousness, and other good works: to the glory of God, who hath affected me with so many, and so great benefits, and to the profit also, and wholesome example of my neighbour. The increase of which faith and ability also of pleasing God, and of performing all these things, it becometh me, who of my selfe am most weake and unable, to aske by continuall and most earnest prayers, of God the Father, the author of all good things, in the name of his Sonne Iesus Christ our Saviour: and daily to doe unto him the greatest thanks for all the benefits received from him. All which things are necessary to be knowne and observed, even unto salvation.

After Construing, followeth Parsing: the large way whereof being opened in every part of speech; all the rest shall be passed over most briefly. Every day one part of speech would be parsed at large: setting the large parsing of the some parts undeclined, at one dayes taske: and then for the rest of the Lecture, the shortest parsing may serve, as followeth.

What part of speech is *lex*, the law? A Noun. Why? A Noun is the name of a thing that may be seene, felt, heard, or understood. What kinde of Noun is it? A Noun Substantive. Why? A Noun Substantive is that which standeth by himselfe, and requirerh not another word to be joyned with

Lex.
A Noun Substantive, parsed at large.

him, to declare his signification. What kinde of Noun Substantive is it? A Noun Substantive common. Why? Because it is common to more. What Number is it? The singular. Why? The singular Number speaketh but of one. What Case is it? The Nominative Case. How know you? The Nominative Case cometh before the Verbe, and answereth to the question who, or what. What Verbe cometh this before? Before proponit, doth set forth. Aske the question. What doth set forth? Lex, the Law. Why is it the Nominative Case? When ye have found the Verbe, aske the question, who, or what, and the word that answereth the question, shall be the Nominative Case to the Verbe, except it be a Verbe Impersonall, which will have no Nominative Case. Why is it set before the Verbe? Because that neither any question is asked, neither is the Verbe of the imperative Mood, nor hath before his English, this signe, it, or there. What Article is it declined withall? With this Article hæc: as, hæc lex legis. What Gender then is it? The feminine. How know you? The feminine Gender is declined with this Article, hæc. Why is it the feminine Gender? Nomen crescentis, penultima si Genitivi syllaba acuta sonat, Genus est muliebre. What Declension of Nounes is it of? Of the third. Why? The third is when the Genitive Case singular endeth in *i*, the Dative in *i*, the Accusative most commonly in *em*, sometimes in *im*, and sometimes in both, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *e*, sometimes in *i*, and sometimes both in *e*, and *i*: the Nominative plural in *es*, the Genitive sometimes in *um*, and sometimes in *ium*, the Dative in *ibus*, the Accusative in *es*, the Vocative like the Nominative, and the Ablative in *ibus*. Doth this end so in every Case? Yea. Decline it. Singulariter Nominativo hæc lex, Genitivo hujus legis, Dativo huic legi, Accusativo hanc legem, Vocativo, ô lex, Ablativo ab hac lege: Pluraliter, Nominativo hæc leges, Genitivo harum legum, Dativo his legibus, Accusativo hæc leges, Vocativo ô leges, Ablativo ab his legibus. Now if it be a Noun of the Neuter Gender, the answer to this question; Doth it end so in every Case? is negative, that is, no: of what Declension soever the Noun be. Then aske; Why doth it not end so in every Case? The answer wherunto is by this rule: Note, that all Nounes of the Neuter Gender, of what Declension soever they be, have the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative like in both Numbers; and in the plural Number, they end all in *o*; except ambo, and duo, which have the Neuter Gender in *a*. And so for the parsing at large, of all Nounes Substantives. Wherein, the rules as they lie in order, doe minister both the question and answer: as also in the large parsing of all the other parts of Speech is to be seen in that which followeth. Which helpeth the memory of all such as have the rules without the booke, and doe understand them through diligent examination; with all questions that are necessary to be asked, and considered in any word: and furniseth the minde also, with answers therunto. Now to proceed.

What

Divina.

A Noone Adjective parsed at large.

What part of speech is divina, Gods, or divine? A Noun. Why? A Noun is the name of a thing that may be seen, felt, heard, or understood. What kinde of Noun is it? A Noun Adjective. Why? A Noun Adjective is that which cannot stand by himselfe, but requieth another word to be joyned with him to declare his signification. What Number is it? The singular. What Case? The Nominative. What Gender? The feminine. Why is it the singular Number, the Nominative Case, and the feminine Gender? Because his Substantive is so. Why? The Adjective agreeth with his Substantive, in Number, Case, and Gender. Which is his Substantive? Lex, the Law. Why? When ye have an Adjective aske the question, who, or what? and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the Substantive to it. Ask the question, Divine, what? Divine Law. Is it an Adjective of three terminations, or of three Articles? Of three terminations. Of what Gender are the terminations? The first is the Masculine, the second the Feminine, and the third the Neuter. Why? At tres variant voces, vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia Neutrum. Is it declined like bonus, or like unus? Like bonus. Why? A Noun Adjective of three terminations is thus declined. What Declension then doth it follow in declining? The first and the second. What Gender of it doth follow the first? The feminine. What Gender of it doth follow the second? The Masculine and the Neuter. Decline it then. Singulariter, Nominativo, divinus, a, m, Genitivo, divini, i, Dativo, divino, o, Accusativo, divinum, am, um, Vocativo, divine, a, m, Ablativo, divino, o; Pluraliter, Nominativo, divini, a, Genitivo, divinorum, arum, orum, Dativo, divinis, Accusativo, divinos, as, a, Vocativo, divini, a, a, Ablativo, divinis. Why doe you say divine, in the Vocative Case singular, and in the Masculine Gender? When the Nominative endeth in us, the Vocative shall end in e; except Deus, that maketh o Deus. For these Adjectives in the Masculine Gender, doe follow the second Declension. Why doe you make the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative alike in both Numbers, and in a, in the Plurall, in the Neuter Gender? Note that all Nounes of the Neuter Gender, of what Declension soever they bee, have the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative Cases alike in both Numbers, and in the plurall Number, they end all in o; except ambo, and duo, which make the Neuter Gender in o. For that rule concerneth the Neuter Gender also of Adjectives.

The questions and answers in all Adjectives of three terminations, are all one, untill you come to this question: Is it declined like bonus, or like unus? For then if it be not declined like bonus, the answer must be, it is declined like unus. And then goe on thus. How doth it differ in declining from bonus? It maketh the Genitive Case singular in ius, & the Dative in i. Why? There are besides these, certaine Nounes Adjectives of another manner of declining, which make the Genitive Case singular in ius, and the Dative in i: which be these that follow with their Compounds. If it be unus,

solus, ullus, alius, alter, uter, neuter, or any of these compounds, the next question is; Why is it declined like *unus*? Wherunto the answer is: In like manner be declined *totus, tota*, and also *ullus, alius, alter, uter*, and *neuter*; saving that these five last rehearsed doe lacke the Vocative Case. Then come to this question: What Declension doth it follow in declining? and so forth, as before in *divinus*, to the end.

The questions and answers in all Adjectives of three Articles, are all one also with the former, untill you come to this question: Is it an Adjective of three terminations, or of three Articles? For if it be not an Adjective of three terminations, the answer must be; that it is an adjective of three articles. And then goe on thus. Is it declined like *felix*, or like *tristis*? If like *felix*: then aske: What Gender is it? Wherunto answer: the common of three. Why? *Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem, retinent genus omne sub una*. If it be answered, that it is declined like *tristis*: then aske: What Gender is the first voice? Wherunto answer: the commune of two. What Gender is the other voice? The Neuter. Why? *Sub gemina si voce cadant, vox commune duum prior est, vox altera neutrum*. What Declension doth it follow in declining? The third. Then come to the declining of it. Afterwards aske: Why doe you make the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative alike, as before. After which you are to come to the comparisons, as now we will goe on with *divinus*.

Whether doth *divinus* forme the degrees of comparison, or no? It doth. Why? Adjectives whose signification may increase, or be diminished, may forme comparison. What degree of comparison is *divina, divine*? The Positive. Why? The Positive becometh the thing absolutely without excellence: as, *divinus, divine*. How doth the comparative exceed the Positive? Somewhat in signification. Give it me in English in this word. More divine. How doth the Superlative exceed the Positive? In the highest degree. Give it me in English, in this word. Most divine. Whether is this word compared according to the generall rules or no? It is. How is the comparative then formed? Of the first Case of the Positive, that endeth in *i*, How? By putting to. *or*, and *us*. Of what Gender is the termination in *us*? Of the Neuter. How is the comparative declined? Like *tristis*. Which is the first Case in this word, of the Positive, that endeth in *i*? The Genitive. Give it me. *Divini*. But *or*, and *us* to it: and so give me the comparative degree of this word in Latine. *Divinior, & divinius*. Decline it. Singulariter Nominativo *hic & hæc divinior, & hoc divinius*; Genitivo *hujus divinioris, &c.* How is the Superlative degree in this word formed? Of the first Case of the Positive that endeth in *i*. How? By putting thereto. *s*, and *simus*. How is it declined? Like *bonus*. But *s*, and *simus*; then to this word *divini*, and so give me the Superlative degree in Latine. *Divinissimus*. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, *divinissimus, a, m*, Genitivo, *divinissimi, z, i*: &c. Give me the accusative Case singular, and all the three Genders throughout every degree of this word.

divid. Divinum, diviniorem, diviniſſimum : divinam, diviniorem, diviſſimam : divinum, divinius, diviniſſimum. If the adjective be not compared, the first question touching comparisons, is answered negatively : for the reason rendered to the second question. If it be not compared according to the general rules, the reason must be from one of the exceptions. And so for the large parsing of all Nounes, both Substantives, and adjectives.

Decline Decem, in the ten. Hi, hæ, & hæc decem : undeclinæd. Why is it undeclinæd ? Omnes a tribus ad centum numeros, Aptota vocabis. Which is the Substantive to it ? Preceptis, commandements.

What part of Speech is, explicata, declared ? A Participle. Why ? A Participle is a part of Speech derived of a Verbe, and taketh part of a Noun, as Gender, Case, and Declension : and part of a Verbe, as Tense, and signification : and part of both, as Number and Figure. Of what Verbe is this derived ? Of explicor : as, explicor, aris, vel, are, atus sum vel fui, ari, atus, andus, to be declared. What Gender is explicata ? The Feminine. What Case is it ? The Nominative. How is it declined ? Like a Noun adjective of three diverse endings. Why ? Participles of other Genres, be declined like Nounes adjectives of three diverse endings. Like bonus, or unus ? Like bonus. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, explicatus, a, m ; Genitivo, explicati, a, i, Dativo, o, æ, o ; Accusativo, um, am, um : Vocativo, e, æ, um ; Ablativo, o, a, o : Pluraliter, Nominativo, explicati, æ, a, Genitivo, orum, arum, orum : Dativo, tis ; Accusativo, os, as, æ, Vocativo, ti, æ, ta : Ablativo, tis. Of what Tense is it a Participle ? Of the Pretertense. Why ? A Participle of the Pretertense, hath his English ending in d, t, or n, as, declared : and his Latine in tus, sus, xus, as, explicatus : and one tuus, as mortuus : and it is formed of the latter Supine, by putting to s, as explicatu, explicatus : except mortuus. What signification hath it ? The Passive. For it betokeneth suffering. What number is it ? The singular. Why is it the singular number, the nominative Case, and feminine Gender ? Because his Substantive is so. Why ? An adjective whether it be Noun, Pronome, or Participle, agreeth with his Substantive, in Case, Gender, and Number. Which is his Substantive ? Lex, the Law. Why ? When ye have an adjective, aske the question, who, or what ; and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the Substantive to it. Aske the question. What declared ? The Law. Whether is it here turned into a Noun, or no ? It is not. Why ? Because it is not construed with any other Case, then the Verbe that it cometh of, may be construed withall : nor compounded with any other Preposition, then the Verbe that it cometh of, may be compounded withall : neither doth forme the degrees of comparison : nor is without respect, or expresse difference of time. If a Participle doe forme comparison, the same questions are to be asked here, and so also answered, as before, in the comparisons of Nounes. Is explicata, a Participle simple, or compound ? Compound.

Decem.

Explicata.
A Participle
parsed at large.

Which

What? Which ex. What is the simple of it? Participles folded. And so of other Participles at large.

Præceptis.

Decline præceptis, commandments. Hoc præceptum, i. he. Why is it the ablative Case? Sometimes the Preposition, in, is not expressed, but understood, and the casuall word nevertheless put in the ablative Case. Why hoc præceptum? Neutram nomen e, si gignit is; & quot in on, vel in um, sunt.

Perfectam.

Decline perfectam, perfect. Perfectus, a, m, i, z, i. Why is it so declined? At hures variant voces, vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia neutrum. Which is the Substantive to it? Regulam, rule. Compare it. Perfectus, a, m, i, z, i; hic & hæc perfectior, & hoc, perfectius, tioris; perfectissimus, a, m, i, z, i.

Mihi.

A Pronoun
parsed at large.
I say a Pronoun
Substantive.

What part of Speech is mihi, to me? A Pronoun. Why? A Pronoun is a part of Speech, much like a Noun, which is used in shewing of in rehearsing. Wherein is this like a Noun? It hath number, Case, and Gender, as are in a Noun. Is it used in shewing, or in rehearsing? In shewing. Is it reckoned up amongst the fifteen Pronouns? Per. Rehearse them. There be fifteen Pronouns; Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras. Here is not mihi. It commeth of Ego. Whether hath it the Vocative Case or no? It hath not. Why? Whereof four have the Vocative Case, tu, meus, noster, & nostras, and all other want the Vocative Case: or, Quinto hæc (spe carent casu; & Pronomina præter quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus, & tu. What kinde of Pronoun is it? A Pronoun Primitive and Demonstrative. Why? These eight, Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, and is, be Primitives, so called, because they be not derived of others: and they be also called Demonstratives, because they shew a thing not spoken of before. What number is it? The singular. What Case? The Dative. Why? Verbes that betoken to command, or shew, will have a Dative Case. What Gender is it? It is referred to all the three Genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. What declension of Pronouns is it of? Of the first. Why? These three, Ego, tu, sui, be of the first Declension. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, ego, Genitivo, mihi, Dativo, mihi, Accusativo, me, Vocativo caret, Ablativo, à me: Pluraliter Nominativo, nos, Genitivo, nostrum vel nostri, Dativo, nobis, Accusativo, nos, Vocativo caret, Ablativo, à nobis. What Person is it? The first. Why? The first Person speaketh of himselfe: as, ego, I, nos, we. And so at large, of a Pronoun Substantive.

Ante.

A Preposition
parsed at large.

What part of Speech is ante, before? A Preposition. Why? A Preposition is a part of Speech, most commonly set before other parts, either in apposition or in composition. What part is ante, set before? Before oculos, eyes. Is it set in apposition or in composition? In apposition. Why? Because it remaineth still a word by it selfe. What kinde of Preposition is it? A Preposition serving to the accusative Case. Why? These Prepositions following serve to the accusative Case: Ad to, apud at, ante before, &c. Where

is it turned into an Adverbe or no? It is not. Why? Because it is neither set alone without a Case: nor doth forme the degrees of comparison. And so of other Prepositions at large.

What part of speech is oculus, eyes? A Noun. Decline it. Hic oculus, i. Why hic oculus? Mascula in er, cen venter, in os, vel us, ut logos, annus. Why is it the Accusative Case? Ante, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative Case.

Oculus.

What part of speech is, pie, goddily? An Adverbe. Why? An Adverbe is a part of speech joyned to the Verbes, to declare their signification. What Verbe is this joyned unto? To Vivendi, of living, which is a certaine voice of a Verbe. To what end is it joyned to it? To declare his signification: as, of living: how? Goddily. What kinde of Adverbe is it? Of quality: as, bene, male, docte, fortiter. Is it compared? Pea. Why? Certaine Adverbes be compared: as, pie, piissime. Whether is it changed into a Preposition or no? It is not. Why? Because it hath not a casuall word to serve unto. And so of other Adverbes at large.

Pie.

An Adverbe
parsed at large.

What part of speech is Vivendi, of living, or to live? A certaine voice of a Verbe. Of what Verbe? Of Vivo: as, Vivo, is, xi, ere, endi, do, dum, sum, su, vens, surus, to live. To what Woode doth it belong? To the Infinitive Woode. What is it called? A Gerund. What Gerund? A Gerund in di. Why is it used here? When the English of the Infinitive Woode cometh after any of these Nounes Substantives, studium, causa, tempus, gratia, &c. If the Verbe should be of the Active voice, it shall be made by the Gerund in di. And so at large of Gerunds.

Vivendi.

A Gerund
parsed at large.

Decline regulam, a rule. Hæc regula, æ. Why, hæc regula? Nomen non crescens Genitivo, Genus est muliebre. Why is it the Accusative Case? Verbes Transitives are all such as have after them an Accusative Case, of the doer or sufferer; whether they be Active, Commune, or Deponent. Which is the Verbe? Proponit, doth set forth.

Regulam.

What part of speech is Proponit, doth set forth? A Verbe. Why? A Verbe is a part of speech declined with Woode and Tense, and betokeneth doing, suffering, or being. Hath this Woode, and Tense? Pea. Whether doth it betoken doing, suffering, or being? Doing. What kinde of Verbe is it? A Verbe Personall. Why? Of Verbes, such as have Persons, be called Personals. What kinde of Verbe Personall is it? A Verbe Active. Why? A Verbe Active endeth in o, and betokeneth to doe; and by putting to r, it is made a Passive. Give me the Indicative Woode, the Present Tense, the singular Number, and the first and second Persons of it. Propono, is. Make it a Passive. Proponor. Give me the Indicative Woode, the Preterperfect Tense, the singular Number, and the first Person of it. Proposui. Why proposui? Præteritum dat idem simplex, & compositivum, Sed sillaba semper quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur, præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo; atq; a do, disco, sto, posco, rite creatis. Give me the Infinitive Woode, the Present Tense, and the Preterimperfect Tense of it. Proponere.

Proponit.

A Verbe perso-
nall parsed at
large.

nere. Is it a Verbe simple or compound? Compound. *What?* *What* pro. *What* is the simple Verbe? *Pono.* *What* *Hoode* is proposit, doth set forth? *The Indicative.* *Why?* *The Indicative* *Hoode* sheweth a reason true or false, or else asketh a question. Doth this shew a reason, or aske a question? It sheweth a reason. *What* be the Gerunds of it? *Proponendi, do, dum* *What* be the Suplines of it? *Propositum, tu* *Why?* *Propositum?* *Compositum* ut simplex formatur quodq; *Supinum, quamvis* non eadem *Res* semper *sillaba* utrique *What* be the Participles of it? *Proponens, propositurus.* *Why* hath it these two Participles? *Of a Verbe Active, and of a Verbe Passive,* which have the Suplines, come two Participles; one of the Present Tense, and another of the future in *ms.* *What* Tense is proposit, doth set forth? *The Present Tense.* *Why?* *The Present Tense* speaketh of the time that now is. *What* Number is it? *The singular.* *What* Person? *The third.* *Why* is it the singular Number, and the third Person? Because his Nominative Case is so. *Why?* A Verbe Personall agreeth with his Nominative Case, in Number and Person. *Which* is his Nominative Case? *Lex, the Law.* *Why?* *When* you have found the Verbe, aske the question *who, or what,* and the word that answereth the question, shall be the Nominative Case to the Verbe. Aske the question, *What* doth set forth? *The Law* doth set forth. *Of what* Conjugation of Verbes in *o,* is it? *Of the third.* *Why?* *The third Conjugation* hath *e,* short before *re,* and *ris:* as, *proponere, proponeris.* After what example of Verbes in *o,* is it declined? After *lego.* Decline it. *Propono, is, sui, ere, endi, do, dum, sum, tu, nens, siturus:* to set forth. *Clarke* it in the Indicative Hoode, and Present Tense. Indicative Hoode Present Tense singular, *Propono, is, it:* pluraliter, *proponimus, itis, nunt.* And so at large of all Verbes Personals.

Ad.

What part of speech is *ad, to, or according to.* A Preposition, serving to the Accusative Case.

Quam.

What part of speech is *quam,* which? A Pronounne. Is it used in shewing, or rehearsing? In rehearsing. Is it reckoned up amongst the sixteen Pronounnes? No. *Why* then doe you call it a Pronounne? To these may be added their Compounds: *Ego, me, tute, idem;* and also *qui, quz, quod.* *What* kinde of Pronounne is it? A Pronounne Relative. *Why?* These seven, *Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, idem,* and *qui,* be Relatives, because they rehearse a thing that was spoken of before. *What* number is it? *The singular.* *What* Case? *The accusative.* *Why?* Sometimes the Relative is governed of the Preposition set before him; as here of *ad, according to.* *What* Gender is it? *The feminine.* *What* declension of Pronounnes is it of? *Of the second.* *Why?* These five, *Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is,* and *qui,* be of the second Declension, and are thus declined. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, *Qui, x, d,* Genitivo, *cujus,* Dativo, *cui,* Accusativo, *quem, quam, quod,* Vocativo, *carer,* Ablativo, *quo, a, o, vel, i:* Pluraliter, Nominativo, *qui, x, x,* Genitivo, *quorum, arum, orum,* Dativo, *quibus, vel, quz,* Accusativo, *quos, as, z,* Vocativo, *carer,*

A Pronounne Relative parsed at large.

carer,

ret, Ablativo, quibus vel queis. What Person is it? The third. Why? The third person is spoken of, and therefore all nouns, pronouns, and participles, be of the third person. Why is it the singular number, the feminine Gender, and the third person? Because his antecedent is so. Why? The Relative agreeth with his antecedent, in gender, number, and person. Which is his antecedent? Regular, rule. Why? When ye have a Relative, aske the question, who, or what, and the word that answereth the question, shall be the antecedent to it. Aske the question. According to what? According to which rule. The questions and answers here omitted, may be supplied out of the word, mihi, before: and so also, concerning the word meus, following. And so at large of other Relatives.

Decline vitam, life. Hæc vita, &c. Why, hæc vita? Nomen non crescens, &c. Why is it the accusative case? Verbes transitives, &c. For it followeth formare, to frame.

What part of speech is meam, my? A pronoun. Hath it the vocative case? No. What kinde of pronoun is it? A pronoun derivative. Why? These seven, Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, be derivatives. For, they be derived of their primitives: mei, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri. Which is his primitive? Mei: the genitive case singular of Ego. What number is it? The singular. What case? The accusative. What gender? The feminine. Why is it the singular number, the accusative case, and the feminine gender? Because his substantive is so. Why? The adjective, whether it be noun, pronoun, or participle, agreeth with his substantive, in number, case, and gender, Which is his substantive? Vitam, life. Why? When ye have an adjective, aske the question, who, or what, and the word that answereth the question shall be the substantive to it. Aske the question. Why what? Why life. What declension of pronouns is it of? Of the third. Why? These five, meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester, be of the third declension, and be declined as nouns adjectives of three terminations. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, meus, a, m, Genitivo, mei, æ, i, Dativo, mei, æ, o, Accusativo, meum, am, um, Vocativo, mi, a, m, Ablativo, meo, a, o: Pluraliter, Nominativo, mei, æ, a, Genitivo, meorum, arum, orum, Dativo, meis, Accusativo, meos, as, a, Ablativo, meis. And so for any pronoun adjective at large.

Decline dirigere, to direct. Dirigo, is, exi, igere, endi, do, dnm, edum, tu, gens, edurus, to direct. Why direxi? Præteritum dat idem simplex, & compositivum, &c. Why dirigo, and not dirego? Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, &c. semper vocalem primam presentis in i, sibi mutant, præteriti nunquam. Why direxum? Compositum ut simplex, formatur quodque Supinum. Why is it the infinitive mood? When two Verbs come together without any nominative case between them, the latter shall be the infinitive mood: as, here debeo, & dirigere.

What part of speech is atque, and? A conjunction. Why? A conjunction is a part of speech that joyneth words and sentences together. Doth it here joyn words or sentences? Words, as dirigere and formare. What kinde of conjunction

Vitam.

Meam.

A Pronoun Adjective paried at large.

Dirigere.

Atque.

A Conjunction paried at large.

junction is it? A conjunction copulative: as, et, que, quæ, que, ac, atque, nec, neque. And so at large of a conjunction.

Formare.

Decline *formare*, to frame. *Formo*, as, *avi*, are, *ndi*, do, *dom*, *atum*, *tu*, *ans*, *aturus*, to frame. *Why* *formavi*? As, in *presenti*, perfectum *format* in *avi*. *Why* *formatum*? *Vi*, *fit*, *tum*. *Why* is it the infinitive mood, and present tense? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, most commonly joyned like moods and tenses together: as, *here* *dirigere* and *formare* are compled by *atque*.

Debeo.

Decline *Debeo*, I ought: *Debeo*, es, *ui*, ere, *ndi*, do, *dum*, *icum*, *ti*, *ens*, *iturus*, to owe, or ought. *Why*, *debui*? Es, in *presenti* perfectum *format*, *ui*, *dans*. *Why* *debitum*? *Quod* *dat* *ui*, *dat*, *icum*. Which is his nominative case? *Ego*, I, understood.

Constituta.

Decline *Constituta*, being appointed? *Constitutus*, a, m, i, z, i. *Why* is it so declined? Participles of other tenses be declined like nouns adjectives of three divers endings. Which is his substantive? *Pœna*, the punishment.

Si, uspiam.

Si is a conjunction conditional. *Uspiam*, in any thing, or any where, is an adverb of place.

Aberrem.

Decline *aberrem*, I do swarve from it. *Aberro*, as, *avi*, are, *andi*, do, *dum*, *atum*, *tu*, *an*, *aturus*, to swarve from. *Why* *aberravi*? *Præteritum* *dat* *idem* *simplex*, & *compositivum*. *Why* *aberratum*? *Compositum* ut *simplex* *formatur* quodque *Sopinum*. Which is his nominative case? *Ego*, understood. *Why* is it the subjunctive mood? *Si*, is joyned to both the moods, indicative and subjunctive.

Aternæ.

Decline *aternæ*, of eternall: *Aternus*, a, m, i, z, i. *Why* is it so declined? A noun adjective of three terminations is thus declined. *Why* are the terminations of such Genders? At *si* tres variant voces, *vox* prima est *mas*, altera *femina*, tertia *neutrum*. Which is the substantive to it? *Damnationis*, of damnation.

In.

In, for, or against; is a preposition, serving to the accusative case. *Why*? In, for *erga*, towards; for *contra*, against; for *ad*, to; hath an accusative case.

Me.

Decline *me*, *mec*: *Ego*, *mei*. *Why* is it the accusative case? In, is a preposition serving to the accusative case.

Damnationis.

Decline *damnationis*, of condemnation. *Hæc* *damnatio*, *onis*. *Why* *hæc* *damnatio*? *Nomen* *crecscens* *penultima* *si* *geniivi* *silaba* *acuta* *sonat*, *genus* est *muliebre*. *Why* is it the genitive case? *When* two substantives come together, and betoken divers things, the latter shall be the genitive case. Which is the other substantive here? *Pœna*.

Pœna.

Decline *pœna*, punishment. *Hæc* *pœna*, a. *Why* *hæc* *pœna*? *Nomen* *non* *crecscens* *genitivo*, *genus* est *muliebre*. *Why* is it the ablative case? A noun, or a pronoun substantive joyned with a participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word whereof it may be governed, it shall be put in the ablative case absolute. Which is the participle here? *Constituta*, being appointed.

**Per.
legem.**

Per, by, is a preposition serving to the accusative case. *Legem*, the Law; *hæc* *lex*, *legis*. *Why* *hæc* *lex*? *Nomen* *crecscens*

presentis, &c. Why is it the accusative case? Per, is a preposition serving to the accusative case.

Igitur, therefore, is a conjunction illative.

Decline peccata, sinners. Hoc peccatum, i. Why hoc peccatum? Neutrum nomen in e, si signis is: & quot in on, vel in um sunt. Why is it the accusative case? Verbes transitives, &c. Which is the verbe? Agnosco, I know.

Decline mea, my. Meus, a, m, i, x, i. Why is it so declined? These five, meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester, be of the third declension, and be declined like nouns adjectives of three terminations. Which is his substantive? Peccata, sinners.

Que, is a conjunction copulative. Decline, Deus, God. Hic Deus, i. Why hic Deus? Mascula in er, us, & us. Why is it the accusative case? Verbes of the Infinitive mood will have before them an accusative case for a nominative. Which is the Verbe? Incensum esse, to have beene inflamed. For esse, to be, is here understood.

Ob, for, is a preposition, serving to the accusative case.

Decline ea, the same. Is, ea, id, ejus. Why so? These five, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, and qui, be of the second declension, and be thus declined. Why is it the accusative case? Sometimes the relative is governed of the preposition set before him. Which is his antecedent? Peccata, sinners.

Decline ira, with wrath. Hac ira, x. Why? Nomen non cretens, &c. Why is it the ablative case? The other cases doe remaine in the passives, which were of the actives. Which is this passive verbe? Incensum esse, to have beene inflamed.

Io, against, is a preposition, serving here to the accusative case. Why? In, for erga, contra, or ad; hath an accusative case.

Me, meo, Ego, mei. Me, is the accusative case, because In, is a preposition serving to the accusative case.

Decline incensum, inflamed. Incensus, a, m, i, x, i. Why is it so declined? Participles of other tenses be declined like nouns adjectives of three divers endings. Which is his substantive? Deum.

Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Decline sempiternam, everlasting. Sempiternus, a, m, i, x, i. Why? Adjectives of three terminations are thus declined. Why are the terminations all three genders? At si tres variant voces, &c. Which is his substantive? Mortem, death: which is the accusative case. Verbes of the infinitive, &c. huc mors, tis.

Decline divina, divine, or Gods. Divinus, a, m, i, x, i. Why? Nouns adjectives of three terminations are thus declined. Why are the three terminations, the commune of three genders? At si tres, &c. Compare it. Divinus, a, m, i, x, i: hic & huc diviniior, & hoc divinius, oris, divinissimus, a, m, i, x, i. Which is his substantive? Justitia, by justice.

Mihi, to me; It is the dative case, because participles (as, debita, here) doe governe such cases, as the verbes that they come of.

Decline justitia, by justice. Hac justitia, x. Why? Nomen non cretens, &c. Why is it the ablative case? Participles govern, &c.

Igitur.
Peccata.

Mea.

Deumque.

Ob.
Ea.

Ira.

In.

Me.

Incensum.

Et, sempiternam.

Mortem.

Divina.

Mihi.

Justitia.

Debitam.]

Decline debitam, due. Debitus, s, m, i, z, i. Why? Participles of other tenses, &c. Which is his substantive? Mortem, death.

Esse.

Decline esse, to be. Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, to be. Why fui? Quadam præcitur verba accipiunt aliunde, & à suo fui. Why doth it want the supines? Hæc raro aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum; Lamba, &c. Et quæcumque in ui, tormentur nostra secundæ; exceptis oleo, &c. Why is it the infinitive mood? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives most commonly joyn like moods and tenses together. Which is the other infinitive mood? Esse understood (as before) to incensum.

Agnosco.

Decline agnosco, I know. Agnosco, cis, novi, scere, nosci, do, dum, agnium, tu, scens, agniturus, to know. Why agnovi? Præteritum dat idem simplex, & compositivum, &c. agnitum? A nosco tantum duo cognitum. & agnitum habentur, cætera dant notum, &c. Which is his nominative case? Ego I, understood.

Quæ.

Decline quæ, which. Qui, z, d, cujus? Why? These five ille, ipse, iste, &c. Which is it the nominative case? Sometime the relative is governed of the substantive, that he doth accord with: as here, of cogitatio, consideration.

Cogitatio.

Hæc cogitatio, onis. Why so? Nomen crescentis, &c. Why is it the nominative case? When you have found the verbe, aske the question, who, or what, and the word that answereth the question, shall be the nominative case to the verbe.

Horribili.

Decline horribili, with horrible. Hic & hæc horribilis, & hoc le: lis. Why? A noun adjective of three articles is thus declined. Why is the first voice the commune of two, and the other, the neuter gender? Sub gemina si voce cadant, vox commune dum prior est, vox altera neutrum. Which is his substantive? Formidine, fear. Hæc formido, dinis. Why is formidine the ablative case? All verbes require an ablative case of the instrument, put with this signe, with, before it, or of the cause, or of the manner of doing. Which is the verbe? Percellit, doth strike. Why hæc formido? Fæminæ generis sit hyperdissillabon in do, quod dinis; atque in go, quod dat ginis in genitivo. Que, and, is a conjunction copulative.

Timorque.

Decline timor, dread. Hic timor, oris. Why? Mascula in er, or, & os. Why is it the ablative case? Que is a conjunction coupling together, formidine, and timore. Why? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, and these foure, quam, nisi, præterquam, an, couple like cases. Ex, from, is a preposition, serving to the ablative case.

Ex.

Peccatorum.

Decline peccatorum, of sinnes. Hoc peccatum, i. Why? Neutrum nomen in e, si gignit is: & quot in on, vel in um, sunt. Why is it the genitive case? When two substantives come together, and broken divises things, &c. Which is the other? Conscientia, conscience.

Conscientia.

Hæc conscientia, z. Why? Nomen non crescens, &c. Why is it the ablative case? Ex, is a preposition serving to the ablative case.

Animum.

Why hic animus, i, minde? Mascula in er, os, and us. Why is animus, the accusative case? Verbes transitives are all such, &c.

Why

Why mens, a, m, i, z, i, my? These five mens, tuus, suus, alter, and vester, be of the third declension, &c. *Which* is his substantive? Animum.

Decline percellit both strike. Percello, is, culi, ere, endi, do, dam, culsum, u, cellens, culsurus. to strike, *Why* perculi? Præteritum dat idem, &c. *Why* perculsum? compositum ut simplex, &c. *Which* is his nominative case? Cogitatio. Unde, from which, is an adverb of place. Quum, when as, is an adverb of time. Neque, neither, is a conjunction copulative.

Why hæc prudentia, z, wisdom? Nomen non crescens, &c. *Why* is prudentia, the ablative case? All verbs require an ablative case, of the instrument, &c. Neque, nor, is a conjunction copulative.

Decline viribus, by strength: Hæc vis, vis, vim, ab hac vi: hæ, vires, ium, ibus. *Why*?

Iutegra vox vis est, nisi desit fortè Dativus:

Omnibus his mutilus numerus prior, integer aliter.

Why hæc vis? Nomen non crescens, &c. *Why* is it the ablative case? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, &c. as here, neque, couples prudentia, and viribus. Aut, or, is a conjunction disjunctive.

Potestate, by power: *Why* hæc potestas, atis? Nomen crescentis, &c. *Why* is it the ablative case? Aut couples it with viribus, by this rule: conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, &c. Mea, my, what is the substantive to it? Potestas. Neque, neither, is a conjunction copulative.

Decline ulla, by any, ullus, a, m, ius. *Why*? In like manner be declined, totus, solus, and also ullus, alius, alter, uter, and neuter: saving that these five last rehearsed, lack the vocative case. *Which* is his substantive? Ope, helpe. Humana, humane: which is his substantive? Ope. *Why* humanus, a, m, i, z, i? A noun adjective of three terminations is thus declined. *Why* are the three terminations the commune of three genders? At sitres variant voces, &c. Compare st. Humanus, a, m, i, z, i: hic & hæc humanior, & hoc, nius, oris, more humane: humanissimus, a, m, i, z, i, most humane. Ve, or, is a conjunction disjunctive. Angelicus, a, m, i, z, i; angelicall: which is his substantive? Ope.

Decline ope, helpe. Hujus opis, opem, ope: hæ opes, um, ibus. *Why*?

Tres quibus inflectis Casus Trypôtâ vocantur:

Omnibus his mutilus, &c.

Why is it the ablative case? Conjunctions copulatives, &c. as here, ve, couples ope, and potestate together. Aut, or, is a conjunction disjunctive.

Auxilio, by albe: *Why* hœc auxilium, ii? Neutrum nomen in e, &c. *Why* is it the ablative case? Conjunctions copulatives, &c. For it is coupled with ope, by aut, Neque neither, is a conjunction copulative.

How is ullo, by any, declined? Like Unus. *Why*? In like manner be declined totus, solus, and also ullus, &c. *Which* is his substantive? Modo. Alio, other: how is it declined? Like unus also. *Why*? In like manner be declined, &c. Decline

Meum.

Percellit.

Unde.

Quum.

Neque.

Prudentia.

Neque.

Viribus.

Aut.

Potestate.

Mea.

Neque.

Ulla.

Humana.

Angelicaye.

Ope.

Aut.

Auxilio.

Neque.

Ullo.

Alio.

Modo.

Aut.
Ratione.

Poffe.

Me.

Omnino.
Liberari.

Intelligam.

Evangelium.
Mc.
Edocet.

Christum.

Dei.

cline it. Alius, a, m, ius. Which is the substantive to it? Modo, by way. Modo, why hic modus, 1? Mascula, in er, os, and us. Why is it the ablative case? Neque is a conjunction coupling together modo, and auxilio. Conjunctions copulatives, &c. Aut, or, is a conjunction disjunctive. Ratione, by means: Hæc ratio, onis; Nomen crescentis, &c. It is the ablative case: because it is coupled with modo, by aut. Conjunctions copulatives, &c.

Decline poffe, to be able. Possum, potes, potui, poffe, potens, to be able. Why potui? Es, in præfenti, &c. Why wantest it the supines? Hæc ratio, &c. & quæcumque in ui, &c. Why is it the infinitive mood? When two verbs come together, &c. Which is the other? Intelligam, I understand.

Me, my selfe: Ego, mei; Why is me the accusative case? The infinitive mood will have before him an accusative case in stead of a nominative. Which is the infinitive mood? Poffe. Seeing we would say in English; when I understand, that I am not able, or that I cannot be delivered: Why doe you put away the word (that) and turne the nominative case into the accusative, and the verbe into the infinitive mood? When this English, that, may be turned into this English, which, it is a relative, otherwise it is a conjunction, which in Latine is called quod, or ut; and in Latine making, it may elegantly be put away, by turning the nominative case into the accusative, and the verbe into the infinitive mood. Whereas then it is said here: quidam neque prudentia, &c. poffe me liberari intelligam: how must it goe, if the word, that, be kept? This: quidam intelligam, quod neque prudentia, &c. liberari poffim. And this is often here used, and most frequent in Latine making. Omnino, in any wise, is an adverb.

Decline liberari, to be delivered. Liberor, aris, vel, are, a-tus sum vel fui, ari, atus, andus, to be delivered. Why libera-tus sum vel fui? Verba in or, admittunt ex posteriore Supino præteritum, verso, u, per, us, & sum consociato, vel fui. Why is it the infinitive mood? When two verbs come together, &c. Which is the other? Poffe.

Decline intelligam, I understand. Intelligo, is, exi, ere, ndi, do, dum, edum, u, gens, edurus, so understand. Why intellexi? A lego nata, re, se, per, præ, sub, trans, præterite, præfentis servant vocalem, in, i, cætera mutant: de quibus hæc intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum præteritum lexi faciunt, reliqua omnia legi. Why intellexum? Compositum ut simplex, formatur quodque Supinum. Which is the nominative case to it? Ego, I, understand.

Evangelium, the Gospel; hoc evangelium, ii; it is the nominative case to edocet. Ego, mei; me, meæ, is the accusative case, following edocet: verbes transitives, &c. Edoces, es cui, ere, cendi, do, dum, & cum, u, cens, & urus, to teach. Evangelium, is the nominative case to it. Why edocui? Præteritum dat, &c. Why edocum? Compositum ut simplex, &c.

Hic Christum, i; Proprieque maribus, &c. Christum, Christ, is the accusative, continuing before persolvissæ, to have paid: the infinitive mood will have before him an accusative, &c. Hic Deus, i; Mascula in er, os, & us. Dei, of God, is the genitive

genitive case. When two substantives, &c. the other is, Fili-
um. Hic filius, i: Mascula in er, os, us. Filium, the sonne, is
the accusative case. If they belong both to one thing, &c.
as here, Christum, and filium. Hic & hæc hominibus: Commu-
nis Generis, &c. Hominem, man, is the accusative case. Par-
ticiples governe such case, &c. as here, factum, made. Sine,
without, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. Hoc
peccatum, i: Neutrum nomen in e, &c. Peccato, sinne, is the
ablative case, governed of sine.

Factus, a, m, i, x, i: Participles of other tenses, &c. Vis
substantive is Christum. Hæc mors, tis: Nomen crescentis, &c.
Morte, by death, is the ablative case. All verbes require, &c.
as here, persolvisse, to have paid.

Suus, a, m, i, x, i: So is noster declined, &c. Sua, his: the
substantive to it, is morte, Meritus, a, m, i, x, i: Participles
of other tenses, &c. The substantive to meritis, deserved, is,
pœnas, punisments. Que, and, is a conjunction copulative.
D. bitus, a, m, i, x, i: participles of other, &c. The substantive
to debitas, due, is, pœnas. Peccatis, to finnes, is the dative case.
Participles (as here, debitas) governe such case, &c. Hoc
peccatum, i: Neutrum nomen in e, &c. Meus, a, m, i, x, i:
These five, meus, tuus, suus, &c. The substantive to meus, my,
is, peccatis. Hæc pœna, x: Nomen non crescentis, &c. Pœnas,
punisments, is the accusative case. Verbes transitives, &c.
as here, persolvisse, to have paid. Persolvo, is, vi, ere, endi, do,
dum, solutum, u, solvens, soluturus, to pay. Why Persolvi?
Præteritum dat idem, &c. Why persolutum? Compositum ut
simplex, &c. Why is it the infinitive moode? Why two
verbes, &c. as here, edocet, and persolvisse.

Hic Deus, i: Mascula in er, os, us. Dei of God, is the ge-
nitive case: When two substantives come together, and denote
divers, &c. as here, ita, and Dei. Hic pater, tris: mascula in er,
os, us. Patris, of the father: But if they belong both, &c. as
here, Dei, and Patris. Suus, a, m, i, x, i: So is noster declined,
&c. Sui, his, the substantive to it, is Patris. In, against, is a
preposition serving to both cases, but here, to the accusative:
In, for, erga, contra, & ad, hath an accusative case: as here,
me, mee. Ego, mei, me, is the accusative case, governed of in.
Hæc ira, x: Nomen non crescentis, &c. Iram, wrath: is the ac-
cusative case. Verbes transitives, &c. as here, restinxisse,
Suus, a, m, i, x, i: So is noster, &c. The substantive to, suo,
with his, is sanguine, blood. Hic sanguis, guinis: Nomen
crescentis, &c. Sanguine, is the ablative case: All verbes (as
here, restinxisse) require an ablative, &c. Restinguo, is, re-
stinxi, guere, guendi, do, dum, restinctum, u, guens, tincturus,
to quench. Why restinxi? Præteritum dat, &c. Why restin-
ctum? Compositum ut simplex, &c. Why is it the infinitive
moode? Conjunctions copulatives, &c. For, here, et under-
stood, couples, persolvisse, and restinxisse.

Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Ego, mei, me, mee:
is the accusative case. Verbes transitives, &c. as here, recon-
ciliasse. Rursum, againe, is an adverb. In, into: is a pre-
position, serving to both cases: but here, to the accusative:
because it is with this signe to. Hæc gratia, x: Nomen non
crescentis,

Filium.
Hominem.
Sine.
Peccato.

Factum,
Morte.

Sua.
Meritis.

Debitasque.
Peccatis.

Meis.

Pœnas,

Persolvisse.

Dei.

Patris.
Sui.
In.

Me.
Iram.

Suo.

Sanguine.
Restinxisse.

Et. Me.

Rursum. In.

Gratiam.
Iphius.

Reconciliasse.

Suzque.

Justitia.

Fecisse.

Participem.

Et, Eternz.

Secum.

Vitz.
(o.

An interjection
parsed at large.

Amorem.
Imperscruta-
bilem.)

Hæredem.

Instituisse.

erescens, &c. Gratiam, favour, is the accusative case, governed of in. Ipse, a, m, ius : Ille, is declined like iste, and also ipse, &c. Iphius, of him, is the genitive case. Sometimes the relative is put into the genitive case, by reason of a noun substantive coming next after him : as here, gratiam. His antecedent is, Dei, Reconcilio, as, avi (Præteritum dat idem, &c.) are, andi, do, dum, arum, (Compositum ut simplex) u, ans, a, turus, to reconcile. It is the infinitive mood, being coupled with restituisse, by et : Conjunctions copulatives, &c.

Que, is a conjunction copulative. Suis, a, m, i, x, i ; So is not declined, &c. Suz, of his : the substantive to it, is justitia, of justice. Hæc justitia, x : Nomen non crescens, &c. Justitia, is the genitive case. Adjectives that signify, desire, knowledge, &c. as here, participem. Facio, is, feci, (fit, cio, ci) ere, erendi, do, dum, factum (ci, fit, tum) u, ciens, æurus, to make. Fecisse, to have made, is the infinitive mood, being coupled with reconciliasse, by que : Conjunctions copulatives, &c. Hic, hæc, & hoc, participes, tipis : Adjectives of three articles, be thus declined. Adjectiva unam duntaxat, &c. where, by it is the commune of three genders. Me, me, is the substantive to it.

Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Eternus, a, m, i, x, i. A noun adjective of three terminations is thus declined. The three terminations are the commune of three genders. At si tres variant, &c. The substantive to æternz, of everlasting, is vitz. Sui, sibi. These three, ego, tu, sui, be of the first declension, and be thus declined. Se, himself, is the ablative case, governed of cum with. Cum, is a preposition, serving to the ablative case. Hæc vita, x : Nomen non crescens, &c. Vitz, of life, is the genitive case. When two substantives come together, &c. as here, hæredem, and vitz.

What part of speech is O, O ? An interjection. Why ? An interjection is a part of speech, which betokeneth a sudden passion of the mind, under an imperfect voice. What kind of interjection is it ? Of exclamation with marvelling, as Papæ, and Proh. Is it put here with a case, or without ? With a case. With what case ? With an accusative. Why ? O, being an interjection of exclamation, is joyned to the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases. And so at large, of other interjections.

Hic amoris : Masculine, in er, or, & os. Amorem, love is the accusative case, the interjection, o, requiring it. Hic & hæc, imperscrutabilis, & hoc se, is. An adjective of three articles, &c. The first voice is the commune of two, and the second, the neuter gender. Sub gemina si voce cadant, &c. The substantive to imperscrutabilem, unsearchable, is, amorem. Hic & hæc hæres, edis ; Sunt commune parens, &c. Hæredem, an heir, is the accusative case : Verbs transitive, &c. as here, instituisse, to have ordained or appointed. Instito, is, iui : (Præteritum dat idem, &c. ere, erendi, do, dum, tutum (Compositum ut simplex) u, ens, raturus, to appoint. It is not infra, but instituo. is, iui : Hæc habeo, laro, salio, statuo, &c. Instituisse, is the infinitive mood, the preterperfect tense, and the preterperfect tense being coupled with fecisse, by &. Conjunctions copulatives, &c.

Qui,

Qui, & od, cujus; These five, ille ipse, iste, &c. Quæ, which is the nominative case. Sometimes the relative is governed of the Substantive that he doth accord withall; which here is beneficia. Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis: An adjective of three articles is thus declined. The first voice is the commune of two, and the other, the neuter gender: Sub gemina si voce, &c. Omnia, all, the substantive to it, is beneficia. Hic Christus, i. Propria quæ maribus, &c. Christi of Christ, is the genitive case. When two substantives come together, &c. as here, Christi, and beneficia. Hoc beneficium, ii; Neutrum nomen in e, &c. Beneficia, benefits, is the nominative case. When ye have found the verbe, &c. which here is, communicantur. Ego, mei; These three, ego, tu, sui, &c. Mihi, to me, is the dative case. Verbes that betoken to give or restore, &c. as communicantur. Per, by, is a preposition, serving to the accusative case. Hæc fides, fidei. All nouns of the fifth declension are of the feminine gender, &c. and, Adice virgo, grando, fides, &c. It wanteth the plurall number: Istis multa solent muliebria necesse, &c. Fidem, faith, is the accusative case, being governed of per. Communicor, aris, vel are, atus sum vel fui (Verba in or, admitunt, &c.) ari, atus, andus, to impart. The nominative case to communicantur, are imparted, is beneficia.

Qui, & od, cujus; These five, &c. Quam, which is the accusative case: but when there cometh a nominative, &c. as Spiritus, betweene quam, and insecvit. Fidem, faith: See, next before communicantur. Hic Spiritus, us; Mascul. in er, os, us. It is the nominative case. When you have found the verbe, &c. which here is, insecvit. Sanctus, a, m, i, z, i. A noun adjective of three terminations, &c. The terminations are the commune of three genders: At fides, &c. It is thus compared. Sanctus, a, m, i, z, i, holy: hic & hæc sanctior, & hoc ius, or, holter: sanctissimus, a, m, i, z, i, holtest. The substantive to sanctus, holy, is Spiritus. In, in, is a preposition, serving to both cases; but to the ablative here: because it is without this signe, to. Hic animus, i; Mascula, in er, os, us. Animo, minde, is the ablative case; being governed of in. Meus, a, m, i, z, i; these five, meus, tuus, &c. The substantive to meus, my, is animo. Per, by, is a preposition, serving to the accusative case. Hæc prædicatio, onis; Nomen crescentis, &c. Prædicationem, preaching, is the accusative case: being governed of per. Hoc Evangelium, ii; Neutrum nomen, &c. Evangelii, of the Gospel, is the genitive case; when two substantives, &c. as here, prædicatione, and Evangelii. Infero, is, evi: (Præteritum dat, &c.) ere, endi, do, dum, inficam, (A sero quando factum, &c.) u, ens, siturus, to instill. The nominative case to insecvit, hath instilled, is Spiritus.

Que, is a conjunction copulative. Is, ea, id, ejus. These five, &c. Eam, the same, is the accusative case: when there cometh a nominative, &c. as here, ille, he, understood, betweene eam, and confirmavit. Per, by, is a preposition serving to the accusative case. Sacer, a, m, i, z, i. An adjective of three, &c. The terminations are all three genders: At fides, &c. It is thus compared: sacer, a, m, i, z, i, holy: hic & hæc

Quæ.

Omnia.

Christi.

Beneficia.

Mihi.

Per.

Fidem.

Communicantur.

Quam.

Fidem.

Spiritus.

Sanctus.

In.

Animo.

Meo.

Per.

Prædicationem.

Evangelii.

Insecvit.

Eamque.

Per.

Sacer.

- Myſteria.**
Sua. **Myſteria**, is the accuſative caſe, governed of per, ſuus, a, m, i, z, i : So is Noſter, &c. The ſubſtantive to ſua, his, is myſteria. Hic & hæc aſpectabilis, & hoc le, lis : An adjective of three articles, &c. The firſt voyce is the commune of two, and the other the neuter gender : Sub gemina ſi voce, &c. It is thus compared : Hic & hæc aſpectabilis, & hoc aſpectabile, lis, viſible ; hic & hæc aſpectabilior, & hoc lius, oris, more viſible : aſpectabiliſſimus, a, m, i, z, i, moſt viſible.
- Aſpectabilia.** The ſubſtantive to aſpectabilia, viſible, is, indicia, ſignes. Que, and, is a conjunction copulative. Certiſſimus, a, m, i, z, i : An adjective of three terminations, &c. The three terminations are the commune of three genders. At ſi tres, &c. It is thus compared. Certus, a, m, i, z, i ; aſſured : hic & hæc certior, & hoc certiſ, oris, more aſſured : certiſſimus, moſt aſſured.
- Certiſſimæque.** The ſubſtantive to certiſſima, moſt aſſured, is, indicia. Hoc iudicium, it ; Neutrũ nomen, &c. Indicia, ſignes, is the accuſative caſe. But if they belong both, &c. as, here, myſteria, and indicia, doc. Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Hoc pignus, oris, ſi, eris : Eſt neutrale genus, &c. It is the accuſative caſe : being coupled with indicia, by et. Conjunctions copulatives and diſjunctives, and theſe ſoure, &c. Divinus, a, m, i, z, i : Adjectives of three terminations, &c. The terminations are the commune of three genders : At ſi tres, &c. It is thus compared. Divinus, a, m, i, z, i, diſtine : hic & hæc diviniſ, & hoc diviniſ, oris, diſtiner : diviniſſimus, a, m, i, z, i, diſtineſt.
- Divinz.** The ſubſtantive to divinz, of Gods, is, bonitatis. Erga, towards, is a prepoſition ſerving to the accuſative caſe. Me, mee, is the accuſative caſe, being governed of erga. Ego, mei ; Theſe three, ego, tu, ſui, &c. Per, by, is a prepoſition ſerving to the accuſative caſe. Hic Chriſtus, i : Propria quæ, &c. Chriſtum, Chriſt, is the accuſative caſe : being governed of per. Hæc bonitas, atis ; Nomen crescentis, &c. Bonitatis, of goodneſſe, is the genitive caſe : When two ſubſtantives, &c. as here, pignora, and bonitatis. Confirma, as, avi, (Præteritum dat, &c.) are, audi, do, dum, atum, (Compoſitum ut ſimplex) u, ans, acurus, to confirm. The nominative caſe to confirmavit, hath confirmed, is, ille, hee, underſtood.
- Erga.**
Me.
Per.
Chriſtum.
- Bonitatis.**
- Confirmavit.**
- Quæ.** Quæ, which, is the nominative caſe : Sometimes the relative is governed of the ſubſtantive that hee doth accord withall : as here, of fides, faith. Fides is the nominative caſe to deberet. Etiam, alſo, is a conjunction copulative. Ut, as, is a conjunction cauſall. Vivus, a, m, i, z, i ; the ſubſtantive to viva, lively, is, arbor. Quidam, ædam, oddam, cujuſdam : the ſubſtantive to quædam, certaine, is arbor. Atque, and, is a conjunction copulative. Hic, hæc, & hoc, ferax, acis ; the ſubſtantive to ferax, fruitful, is, arbor, a tree. Hæc arbor, oris : it is the nominative caſe : But if they belong both, &c. as, arbor and fides. Hæc pietas, acis ; pietatis, is the genitive caſe : When two ſubſtantives, as, fructus, and pietatis, come together, &c. Juſtitiæ, of juſtice ; it is the genitive caſe, coupled by et, underſtood.
- Pietatis,**

derstood, with *pietatis* : *hæc iustitia*, &c. *Que*, is a conjunction copulative, *Aliorum*, of other, the substantive to it, is *operum* : *Alius*, a, m, ius : *Bonorum*, of goods, his substantive is *operum* : *bonus*, a, m, i, z, i. *Hoc opus*, *eris* : *Operum*, of works; it is the genitive case, coupled with *iustitia*, by *que*. *Hic fructus*, us : *fructus*, fruits, is the accusative case; verbes transitive, &c. for it follows *procreare*. *In*, in, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. *Me*, *mer*, is the ablative case, governed of *in*. *Per*, by, is a preposition serving to the accusative case. *Vitam*, life, is the accusative case, governed of *per*. *Omnem*, whole, it is governed of his substantive, *vitam*, life : *Hic & hæc omnis*, & *hoc ne*, nis. *Procreo*, as, avi, are, andi, do, dum, atum, u, ans, aturus, to bring forth : it is the infinitive mood; when two verbes come together, &c. as, *deberet*, ought, and *procreare*. *Debeo*, es, iiii, ere, endi, do, dum, ium, u, ens, iturus, to owe, or ought : the nominative case to it, is, *fides*, faith. *Ad*, to, is a preposition governing an accusative case. *Hæc gloria*, e, *gloriam*, glory, is the accusative case, governed of *ad*. *Hic Deus*, i : *Dei*, of God, is the genitive case; when two substantives, &c. as, *gloriam*, and *Dei*. *Qui*, z, od, *cujus*, *qui*, who, is the nominative case to affect : whose antecedent, is : *Dei*. *Hi*, hæ, & *hæc*, tot, underlined : tot, so many, is governed of his substantive, *beneficiis*. *Et*, and, is a conjunction copulative. *Tantus*, a, m, i, z, i : *tantis*, so great, is governed of his substantive, *beneficiis*. *Me*, *meæ*, is the accusative case, governed of affect. *Afficio*, cis, eci, ere, ciendi, do, dum, eci, a, ciens, eci, to affect : affect, hath affected, his nominative case is *qui*. *Et*, and, is a conjunction copulative. *Ad*, to, is a preposition, serving to the accusative case. *Hæc utilitas*, atis : *utilitatem*, profit, is the accusative case, governed of *ad*. *Etiā*, also, is a conjunction copulative. *Atque*, and, is a conjunction copulative. *Hoc exemplum*, i : *exemplum*, example, is the accusative case, coupled with *utilitatem* by *atque*. *Hic & hæc salutaris*, & *hoc re*, ris : *salutare*, wholesome, is governed of his substantive, *exemplum*. *Proximus*, a, m, i, z, i : *proximi*, of my nearest, that is, neighbour, is governed of his substantive, *hominis*, man, understood : *propè*, *hic & hæc propior*, & *hoc pius*, *pioris*, *proximus*.

Qui, z, od, *cujus*, of which, this relative is governed of *fidei*, the substantive that he doth accord with. *Hæc fides*, ei *fidei*, of faith, is the genitive case : when two substantives, &c. the other is incrementum. *Hoc incrementum*, i : *incrementum*, the increase, is the accusative case, governed of *effagitare*. *Hæc facultas*, atis : *facultatem*, ability, is the accusative case, coupled with *incrementum* by *que*, and, a conjunction copulative. *Placendi*, of pleasing, is a gerund in di, of *placeo* : When the English of the infinitive mood, cometh after any of these nouns substantives, &c. *Hic Deus*, i : *Deo*, God, is the dative case : Gerunds and supines will have such cases, &c. *Et*, and, is a conjunction copulative. *Iste*, a, d, *ius* : *ista*, these things, is the accusative case, governed of the gerund *præstandi* : the antecedent thereunto, is the clauses going before : But if the relative be referred to two clauses, or more, &c.

Iustitia.
Aliorumque.
Bonorum.
Operum.
Fructus.

In.
Me.
Per.
Vitam.
Omnem.
Procreare.

Deberet.

Ad.
Gloriam.
Dei.

Qui.

Tot.
Et. *Tantis*.

Me. *Beneficiis*.
Afficit. *Et*, *Ad*.

Utilitatem.
Etiā.
Atque.
Exemplum.
Salutare.

Proximi.

Cujus.

Fidei.
Incrementum.

Facultatemque.
Placendi.

Deo.

Et. *Ista*.

Omnia,	Et. Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis, omnia, all, is governed of his substantive ista : As the relative may be the nominative, &c. Præstandi, of performing, is a gerund in di, of præsto : As in the English, &c. for, facultatem, is understood before it. Ego, mei : me, mee, is the accusative case : governed of oportet : some impersonals will have an accusative case only, &c. Qui, z, od, cujus, qui, who, is the nominative case, governed of ego, the nominative case to sum, being the substantive that he doth accord withall : and is made the first person, by Evocation. Ex, of, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. Egoipse, meipsum, meipso, my self, is the ablative case, governed of ex, Maximè, most, is an adverb of comparison. Sum, es, tui, esse, futurus, to be : the nominative case to sum, am, is ego, I, understood : The nominative case of the first or second person is very seldom expressed, &c. Infirmus, a, m, i, z, i : Infirmus, weak, is governed of his substantive, ego, I : And generally, when the word that goeth before the verb, &c. Infirmus, weak : hic & hæc infirmior, & hoc infirmus, oris, weaker : infirmissimus, a, m, i, z, i, weakest. Atque, and, is a conjunction copulative. Imbecillus, a, m, i, z, i : imbecillus, unable, is governed also of ego. Continuus, a, m, i, z, i : continuus, with continuall, is governed of his substantive, precibus. Atque, and, is a conjunction copulative. Ardentissimus, a, m, i, z, i : ardentissimus, most earnest, his substantive is, precibus : Hic, hæc & hoc ardens, ntis, earnest : hic & hæc ardentior, & hoc ardentius, oris, earnestest : ardentissimus, a, m, i, z, i, most earnest : ardentissimis, most earnest, is governed of his substantive, precibus. Hujus precis, precem, ce, hæc preces, cum, cibis, ces, ces, cibis : precibus, with, or by prayers, is the ablative case : All verbs require an ablative, &c. as hert, effragitare. A, of, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. Hic Deus, i : Deo, God, is the ablative case, governed of a. Hic Pater tris : patre, is the ablative case : But if they belong both to one thing, &c. as Deo, and Patre. Bonus, a, m, i, z, i, good : hic & hæc melior, & hoc lius, ioris, better : optimus, a, m, i, z, i, best : bonorum, of goods, is put substantively. When ye have the English of this word res, &c. It is the genitive case : When two substantives come together, &c. as, auctore, and bonorum : for an adjective so put, standeth for a substantive, &c. Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis : omnium, of all, is governed of his substantive, bonorum : And being so put, it may be the substantive to the adjective, &c. Hic auctor, oris : auctore, the author, is the ablative case. But if they belong both, &c. as Patre and auctore. In, in, is a preposition serving to both cases, but to the ablative here, because it is without the signe to. Hoc nomen, inis : nomine, the name, is the ablative case, governed of in. Hic filius, ii : filii, of the sonne, is the genitive case : when two substantives, &c. as nomen, and filii. Suis, a, m, i, z, i : sui, his, is governed of his substantive, filii. Hic Jesus, u, u, nm, u, u : Jesu, is the genitive case : But if they belong both, &c. as filii, and Jesu. Hic Christus, i : Christi, Christ, is the genitive case : belonging to one thing with Jesu. Hic servator, oris : Servatoris, Saviour, is the genitive case : But if they belong both, &c.
Præstandi.	
Me.	
Qui.	
Ex.	
Meipso.	
Maximè. Sum.	
Infirmus.	
Atque.	
Imbecillus.	
Continuus.	
Atque. Ardentissimis.	
Precibus.	
A. Deo.	
Patre.	
Bonorum;	
Omnium.	
Auctore.	
In.	
Nomine.	
Filii.	
Sui;	
Jesu.	
Christi.	
Servatoris.	

et. as, Christi, and Servatoris. Noster, a, m, i, z, i: nostri, our, is governed of his substantive, Servatoris. Efflagito, as, avi, are, andi, do, dum, atum, tu, ans, aturus, to aske: efflagitare, to aske, is the infinitive moode: when two verbes, et. as oportet, and flagitare.

Que, and, is a conjunction copulattve. Hæ gratia, arum: gratias, thanks, is the accusative case: Verbs transittives, et. as agere. Ille, a, ud, ius: illi, to him, is the dative case; all manner of verbes put acqussittively, et. as agere. Magnus, a, m, i, z, i, great: hic & hæc major, & hoc major, oris, greater: maximus, a, m, i, z, i, greater: maximas, is governed of his substantive, gratias. Pro, for, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. Universus, a, m, i, z, i: universis, is governed of his substantive, beneficiis. Ab, from, is a preposition requiting an ablative case. Is, ea, id, ejus: eo, him, is governed of ab: his antecedent is Servatore. Acceptus, a, m, i, z, i: acceptis, received, is governed of his substantive beneficiis. Hoc beneficium, ii: beneficiis, benefits, is governed of pro. Assidue, daily, is an adverb of time. Ago, is, egi, ere, endi, do, dum, actum, u, ens, acturus, to doe: agere, to doe, is the infinitive moode, coupled with efflagitare by que: Conjunctions copulattives, et.

What part of speech is oportet, it behooveth? A verb. Why? A verbe is a part of speech declined with moode and tense. What kinde of verbe is it? A verbe impersonall. Why? Of verbes, such as have no persons, be called impersonals. How know you that it is an impersonall? A verbe impersonall hath no nominative case before him, and this word it, or there, is commonly his signe. Is it impersonall of the active, or of the passive voice? Of the active. What moode is it? The indicative. Why? The indicattive moode sheweth a reason true or false: or else asketh a question. Doth this shew a reason, or aske a question? It sheweth a reason. What tense is it? The present tense. Why? The present tense speaketh of the time that now is. After what conjugation is it declined? After the second. How is it declined? Throughout all moodes and tenses, in the voice of the third person singular onely. Decline it. Indicattive moode: Oportet, oportebat, oportuit, oportuerat, oportebit. Imperattive moode: Oporteat, oporteto. Optattive moode: Utinam oporteat, utinam oporteret, utinam oportuerit, utinam oportuisset, utinam oportuerit. Potentiall moode: Copteat, oporteret, oportuerit, oportuisset, oportuerit. Subjunctive moode: Cum oporteat, cum oporteret, cum oportuerit, cum oportuisset, cum oportuerit. Infinitive moode: oportere, oportuisse. And so of all other impersonals at large.

Qui, z, od, cuius: Quæ, which, is the nominattive case to sunt: when there cometh no nominattive, et. the antecedent to it, is the clauses afore going: sometimes the relative is referred to two clauses, or more, et. Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis: Omnia, all, is governed of the substantive quæ: as the relative may be the nominattive case to the verbe, so it may be the substanttve, et. Necessarius, a, m, i, z, i: necessaria, necessary, is governed of quæ, as of his substanttve: as the

Nostri.

Efflagitare.

Gratiasque.

Illi.

Maximas.

Pro.

Universis.

Ab.

Eo.

Acceptis.

Beneficiis.

Assidue.

Agere.

Oportet.

A Verbe impersonall parselarge.

Quæ.

Omnia.

Necessaria.

Sunt.

the relative, &c. Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, to be: the nominative case to sunt, are, is quæ.

Cognita.

What part of speech is cognita, to bee knowne? It is a certaine voice of a verbe. Of what verbe? Of Cognosco: as, cognosco, cis, novi, scere, scendi, do, dum, cognitum, u, scens, cogniturus, to know. Unto what moode doth it belong? To the infinitive. What is it called? A supine. What supine is it? The latter which endeth in u. Why is it called the latter supine? Because it hath for the most part the signification passive. Why is it put after necessaria? The latter supine is put after nomines adiectives. And so of a supine at large.

Atque. Obser-

vatu.

Etiam.

Ad.

Salutem.

Atque, and, is a conjunction copulative. Observatu, to bee observed, is the latter supine, of observo. Etiam, even, is a conjunction copulative. Ad, unto, is a preposition, requiring an accusative case. Hæc salus, utis; salutem, salvation, is the accusative case governed of ad.

What is now further to be considered in this example? The Epithets, Adjuncts, Synonymas, Contraries, the Grammaticall, and Rhetoricall figures, and the phrases with the varying thereof: What is an Epithet? A substantive and an adjective joyned together. What is an Adjunct? An adverb, and a verbe joyned together. What is a Synonyma? Words of one signification. What is a Contrary? Words of contrary signification. What is a Grammaticall figure? A forme of speaking by a renewed art; consisting, either in word, or construction. What is a Rhetoricall figure? The fineness of speech differing from the proper, plain, and simple kinde of speaking. What is a phrase? A kinde of speech proper to any language; as, the Latine phrase, to the Latine tongue: wher of especially we doe here speake.

What Epithets then be there here? These following. Lex, justitia, bonitas, divina. Regula perfecta. Pœna æterna. Semperiterna mors. Formido, timor horribilis. Humanum, Angelicum auxilium. Amor imperferutabilis. Mysterium sacrum. Indicium, pignus, aspeçabile, certissimum. Arbor, viva, ferax. Exemplum salutare. Homo infirmus, imbecillus. Preces continuæ, ardentes. Gratia maxima.

What Adjuncts be there here? These following. Pie vivere. Gratias assidue agere.

What Synonymas be here? These. Aeternus, sempiternus. Formido, timor. Opi, auxilium. Vis, potestas. Omnis, universus. Infirmus, imbecillus.

What Contraries be here? These. Vita, mors.

What Grammaticall figures be here? These. Syncope, in reconciliasse, for reconciliavisse. Apposition, in, Fili, Jesu, Christi, Servatoris.

What Rhetoricall figures be here? These. A Metaphor, in these words: Dei iram suo sanguine restinxisse. Also in these words: fides, ut viva quædam atque ferax arbor, pieratis, justitia, &c. fructus, procreare deberet. An exclamation, in these words; O amorom imperferutabilem.

What phrases be here? These. Aliquid alieni ante oculos proponere. Formidine aliquem timoreque percellere. Alicuius iram

tranſſingdere. Gracis alicui maximas agere. Ad legem Dei viam dirigere atque formare. Ira in aliquem incendi. Aliquem in alicujus gratiam reconciliare. Fidem in alicujus animo inferre. Beneficiis alicquem afficere. Continuis atque ardentissimis precibus, à Deo aliquid efflagitare. Now these, or any other phrases may be many wayes varied: as, for example, in one of two of these. We ought alwayes to have the feare of God before our eyes: which according to the first phrase may be thus uttered in Latine. Timor Dei semper nobis ante oculos proponi debet. Again: Legis minas promissaque Evangelii, continue mihi ante oculos propono: the threatnings of the Law, and the promises of the Gospel, are alwayes in my sight. Now, for the second phrase. Hæc tebris magnus me cruciatu percellit: this ague doth torment me exceedingly. Homines ab injustitia maxima percelluntur infamia: unrighteous dealing maketh men most infamous. And of the rest, or of any other phrases whatsoever. Wee also may be noted the sentences, which are many: as, lex perfectâ piæ vivendi regulâ proponit, &c.

An English to be turned into Latine, may thus be given, and examined according to the direction in the Concordes, before it be made.

By per, the divine, divinus, a, m, i, z, i, law, hæc lex, gis, or by Gods law) containing hic hæc & hoc continens, eis, perfect, perfectus, a, m, i, z, i, rule, hæc regulâ, z of righteousness, hæc justitia, z, we doe know, agnisco, eis, novi, scere, scendi, agnitem, noscens, niturus, our sinne, hoc peccatum, is, and que, our noster, a, m, i, z, i, misery, hæc miseria, z, from thence inde, (or thereby:) but verò, by per, the Gospel, hoc Evangelium, i, our noster, a, m, i, z, i, deliverance, hæc liberatio, onis, through per, the merits hoc meritum, i, of Christ, hic Christus, i, God hic Deus, i, and ex, man hic & homo, inis. By per, faith hæc fides, ei, which qui, z, od, cujus, the holy sanctus, a, m, i, z, i, Ghost hic Spiritus, us, worketh operor, aris, atus, ari, in in, our noster, a, m, i, z, i, hearts hoc cor, dis, by per, the preaching, hæc prædicatio, onis, of the Gospel hoc Evangelium, ii, and ex, confirmeth confirmo, as, avi, are, atum, by per, the same idem, eadem, idem, ejusdem, and que, by per, the Sacraments hoc Sacramentum, i, we doe apprehend apprehendo, dis, di, ere, sum, in in, Christ hic Christus, i, remission hæc remissio onis, of sinnes hoc peccatum, i, righteousness hæc justitia, z, and atque, life hæc vita, z, everlasting sempiternus, a, m, i, z, i. Which qui, z, od, cujus, faith hæc fides, ei, doth bring forth procreo, as, avi, are, atum, in in, us ego mei, the fruits hic fructus ur, of godliness hæc pietas, aris, and que, righteousness hæc justitia, z, to ad, the glory hæc gloria, z, of God hic Deus, i, our noster, a, m, i, z, i, comfort hæc consolatio, onis, of our selves ipse, a, m, ius, (or, our owne comfort) and que, the edification hæc edificatio, onis, of others, alius, a, m, ius.

Now many Concordes bee there in the best of these three sentences, ending at these words, By faith? Two, which?

One betwene the Nominative case and the Verbe, and the other betwene the Substantive and the Adjective. How many Verbes be there herein? Divers. Which is the principall Verbe? The first. Why? because it is not the Indicative Goodde, neither hath before it a Relative, or a Conjunction. Which is it? Doe know. Which is the Nominative case to it? Me. Why? Because it answereth the question, who, or what, made by the Verbe. Aske the question, Who doe know? Me. Is this Nominative Case to be expressed? No. Why? The Nominative Case of the first or second Person is very seldome expressed; except it be for distinction sake, or for emphasis. Where is it to be set, if it should be expressed? Before the Verbe. Why? because a question is not asked, neither is it the Imperative Goodde, neither is this signe it or there, before the English of the Verbe. What Number and person is the Nominative Case? The Plurall Number and the first Person. Why? Because it speaketh of more then one, and of himselfe. What Number and Person then must the Verbe be? The Plurall Number, and the first Person. Why? A Verbe personall agreeth with his Nominative Case, in Number and Person. What Goodde is the Verbe? The Indicative. Why? The Indicative Goodde sheweth a reason true or false, or else asketh a question. Doth this shew a reason, or aske a question? It sheweth a reason. What Tense is it? The Present Tense. Why? The Present Tense speaketh of the time that now is. The Nominative Case then is the Plurall Number, and the first Person: the Verbe is the Indicative Goodde, the Present Tense, the Plurall Number, and the first Person. Pea. Make this then in Latine, aright, by ego, and agnosco; Me know. Nos agnosimus.

Hath this Verbe any casuall word after it, to be construed withall, answering the question whom or what, made by the Verbe? Pea. Which is it? Sinne. Aske the question, whom, or what? Me doe know; what? Our sinne. What Case must the word sinne be? The Accusative: because the Verbe doth not properly governe any other Case after him to be construed withall. Why must it be the Accusative Case? Verbes Transitives are all such as will have after them an Accusative of the doer or sufferer, whether they bee Active, Commune, or deponent. Put this word sinne, or peccatum, then into the Accusative Case, and adde it to the former aright. Nos agnosimus peccatum.

Which is the next Verbe in this first sentence? Do know; which is understood, before the word deliberance, in the second part of this sentence. Which is the Nominative Case to it? Wee, &c. as before. What Number and Person is it? The Plurall Number, and the first Person. What Number and Person then must the Verbe be? The Plurall Number, and the first Person. What Goodde and Tense is the Verbe? The Indicative Goodde, and the present Tense. Give me this then in Latine; we know. Nos agnosimus; as before. Must it be twice expressed in this sentence? Once will serve. Where? In the end, after the Rhetoricall or-

derſt placing. Hath this Verbe any caſuall word after it to be conſtrued withall? *Pea.* Which is it? Deliverance. What Caſe muſt it be? The Accuſative, becauſe the Verbe doth nor properly governe any other. Why? Verbes Transitives, &c. But this word then into the Accuſative Caſe, and adde it to the former, aright. Nos agnoſcimus liberationem.

Now, for the ſecond Concord: How many times is it here? Many times. Which is the firſt Adjective? Divine. Which is the Subſtantive to it? Law. Why? When ye have an Adjective, aſke the queſtion, who, or what; and the word that answereth the queſtion ſhall be the Subſtantive to it. Aſks the queſtion here. Divine, what? Divine Law. What Number, Caſe, and Gender, is the Subſtantive? The Singular Number, the Accuſative caſe, and the Feminine Gender. What Number, Caſe, and Gender then muſt the Adjective be? The ſame Caſe, Gender, and Number. Why? The Adjective, whether it be Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, agreeth with his Subſtantive, in Caſe, Gender, and Number. Joyn then this Subſtantive and Adjective rightly together, in the Accuſative Caſe. Legem divinam, the divine law. Why muſt the Subſtantive be the Accuſative Caſe? Per, by, is a Prepoſition ſerving to the Accuſative Caſe. Which is the next Adjective? Containing, a Participle. Which is the Subſtantive to it? The Law, Legem. Set them rightly then together. Legem continentem, the Law containing. Give me the next Adjective. A perfect, which is the Subſtantive to it? Rule. What Number, Caſe, and Gender is Rule here? The ſingular Number, the Accuſative, and the Feminine Gender. What Number, Caſe, and Gender then muſt the Adjective be? The ſame Number, Caſe, and Gender. Set them then rightly together in the Accuſative Caſe. Perfectam regulam, a perfect rule. Why muſt Rule be the Accuſative Caſe? It is governed of continentem: Participles governe ſuch Caſes, as the Verbes that they come of. What Caſe is, of rightcouſneſſe? The Genitive. Why? When two Subſtantives come together, and betoken divers things, the latter ſhall be the Genitive Caſe. Which is the other Subſtantive here? Rule, regulam. Set theſe two Subſtantives then rightly together. Regulam juſtitiæ, a Rule of rightcouſneſſe. Which is the next Adjective? Our. Which is the Subſtantive to it? Miſery. What Number, Caſe, and Gender is miſery? The Singular Number, the Accuſative Caſe, and the Feminine Gender. What Number, Caſe, and Gender then muſt the Adjective be? The ſame. Set them then rightly together in the Accuſative Caſe. Noſtram miſeriam, our miſery. Why muſt miſery be the Accuſative Caſe? It is couled by que, and which ſinne, or peccatum: Conjunctions Copulatives and Diſjunctives, and theſe four, quàm, niſi, præterquam, an, couple like Caſes. What Caſe muſt ſoſpel be? The Accuſative. Why? Per, by, is a Prepoſition ſerving to the Accuſative Caſe. Which is the next Adjective? Our. Which is the Subſtantive to it? Deliverance, or liberationem.

enom. Put them rightly together. *Nostram liberationem, ut delivrance.* Be there any more Objectives in this sentence? No. What Case must merits be? The Accusative. Why? Per, by, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative Case. Make this then in Latine, by the merits: *per merita.* What Case must of Christ, be? The Genitive. Why? When two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? Merita, merits. Make this then in Latine, merits of Christ. *Merita Christi.* What Case must God be? The Genitive. Why? But if they belong both to one thing, they shall be put both in one Case: as here, Christ and God. But these two so Christi Dei: of Christ God. What Case must Man be here? The Genitive. Why? Et, and, is a Conjunction coupling it with Dei: Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives, &c. Make this then in Latine, God and man. *Dei & hominis.* And this, for the first sentence.

How many Concoords be there in the second sentence: ending with these words: and life everlasting? Three. Which? Betwene the Nominative Case and the Verbe; the Substantive and the Adjective: and the Antecedent and Relatives. Which is the principall Verbe here? Doe apprehend. Why is not the first, that is, worketh, the principall Verbe? Because it ha's before it a Relative, as, which. What is the Nominative Case to this principall Verbe, do apprehend? We. What Moode, Tense, Number, and Person is the Verbe? The Indicative Moode, Present Tense, Plurall Number, and first Person. Make this then in true Latine: *Ue doe apprehend.* Nos apprehendimus. Which is the casuall word following it? Remission. What Case must it be? The Accusative. Why? Verbes Transitives, &c. Adde it rightly to the Verbe. *Nos apprehendimus remissionem:* we doe apprehend remission. The other questions and answers may be supplied out of the former examination; both for this Verbe, and the rest following, both in this, and the third sentence: and so likewise concerning the second Concord. Which is the next Verbe? Worketh. Which is his Nominative Case? Ghost. What Moode, Tense, Number, and Person, is the Verbe? The Indicative Moode, Present tense, Singular Number, and the third Person. Make this then in true Latine: the Ghost, or Spirit worketh. *Spiritus operatur.* What casuall word doth follow it? None. Which is the next Verbe? Confirmeth. Which is the Nominative Case to it? Ghost also, or Spirit. What Moode, Tense, Number, and Person is it? The same with the former. Make this then in true Latine: the Ghost, or Spirit confirmeth. *Spiritus confirmat.* Why must this Verbe be the same Moode and Tense with the former? They are coupled together by, and. Why? Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives most commonly come like Moodes and tenses together. Hath it any casuall word following it? No. Is there any other Verbe here? No.

Now then, to the second Concord: How many times is it here? Divers times. Which is the first Adjective? Holy. Which is his Substantive? Ghost, or Spirit. What Num-

ber, Case, and Gender is Ghost? The singular Number, the Nominative case, and the Masculine Gender. Make the Adjective agree with it in all these. *Spiritus Sanctus*, the holy Ghost. Which is the next Adjective? Our. Which is his Substantive? Hearts. What Number, case, and Gender is it? The Plurall Number, the Ablative case, and the Feminine Gender. Make the Adjective then agree with it in all these. *Cordibus nostris*, in our hearts. Why must the Substantive be the Ablative case? In, without this signe to, to the Ablative case. Which is the next Adjective? Everlasting. Which is the Substantive to it? Life. What case, Gender, and Number, must life here be? The singular Number, the Accusative case, and the Feminine Gender. Set the Adjective and it rightly together in these three. *Vitam Sempiternam*, life everlasting. Why must the Substantive be the Accusative case? It is coupled with *righteousnesse*, by and. Why? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, and these four, &c. Set them then together. *Iustitiam aequè vitam*, righteousness and life. But why must *righteousnesse* be the Accusative case? It is coupled also by, and understood, with remission. Set them then together in Latine. *Remissionem iustitiam*. But what case is, of finnes? The Genitive. Why must it be so? When two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? *Remissionem*. Set these two then rightly together in Latine. *Remissionem peccatorum*, remission of finnes. What case must Christ be here: in Christ? The Ablative. Why? In, without this signe to, to the Ablative case. Make it in Latine. In Christo. By the preaching of the Gospel: what case must preaching be here? The Accusative. Why? Per, by, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative case. What case must, of the Gospel be? The Genitive. Why? When two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? Preaching. Make it in Latine. *Per prædicationem Evangelii*. By faith: what case must faith be here? The Accusative. Why? Per, by, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative case. Make it then in Latine. *Per fidem*.

Now of the third Concord: How oft is it here? Twice. Which is the first Relative? Which, which is the Antecedent to it? Faith. Why? When ye have a Relative, ask the question who, or what, and the word that answereth the question shall bee the Antecedent to it. Aske the question. Which, what? Which faith. What Number, Gender, and Person is the Antecedent? The singular Number, the Feminine Gender, and the third Person. What Number, Gender, and Person then must the Relative be? The same, that the Antecedent is. Why? The Relative agreeth with his Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person. Make this Relative then agree in Latine, with his Antecedent, faith, or *fidem*, Quoniam, which. But why doe you put it into the Accusative case seeing the Relative and Antecedent agree not alwayes in case; but in Gender, Number and Person only? When there cometh a Nominative case betwene the Relative and the Verbe; the Relative shall be such case as the Verbe will have after him. Which is the Verbe here, that hath a Nominative

Of giving and making Vulgars.

minative case betwene himselfe. and this Relative? *Ope-
ratur, worketh.* Which is the Nominative case coming be-
twene them? *Spiritus, the Spirit.* Will this Verbe then
have an Accusative case after him? *Pea.* Why? Verbes
transitives, &c. Which is the other Relative here? *By the
same.* Which is his Antecedent? *Preaching, or prædicationem.*
Make this Relative agree with it, in Gender, Num-
ber, and Person. *Banem.* But why must it be the Accu-
sative case? Sometimes the Relative is governed of the Pre-
position set before him. Which is that here? *Per, by.* The
other questions and answers both here, and in the next sen-
tence touching the third Concord, may be supplied out of the
former examination of the first Relative. What case must
Sacraments be here? The Accusative. Why? *Per, by,* is
a Preposition serving to the Accusative case. Make these
words then in Latine; *by the Sacraments. Per Sacramenta.*

Now, to the third sentence. How many Concorde be in
it? All the three. Which is the principall Verbe here?
There is but one. Which is it? Doth bring forth. Which
is his Nominative case? *Faith.* What Goodde and tense is
the Verbe? The Indicative Goodde, and the Present tense.
Make the Verbe and the Nominative case agree in Num-
ber and Person, in the Indicative Goodde and Present tense.
Fides procreat; Faith doth bring forth. Concerning the se-
cond concord. Which is the first Adjective here? *Dur.*
Which is his Substantive? *Comfort.* Make them agree
in Number, case, and Gender. *Nostram consolationem, our
comfort.* Why doe you say *consolationem*, in the Accusative
case? It is coupled with *glory by, and understood.* Why?
Conjunctions copulatives, &c. What case must, of our selves
be? The Genitive. Why? These Possessives, *meus, tuus,
suis, noster, and vester,* doe receive after them these Geni-
tives, *ipſius, solius, unius, &c.* Put this Genitive then to this
Possessive. *Nostram consolationem ipſorum; our comfort of
our selves, that is, our owne comfort.* Which is the next
Adjective? *Of others.* Which is his Substantive? *Men,
understood.* Make them agree in Number, case, and Gen-
der. *Aliorum hominum, of other men. that is, of others.* Why
must the Substantive be the Genitive case? When two
Substantives, &c. Which is the other? The edification.
What case must that be? The Accusative. Why? It is coupled
with *comfort, by, and.* Why? Conjunctions copulatives,
&c. Make this then in Latine; and the edification of others;
understanding, hominum of men. Que edificacionem aliorum.
To the glory of God: What case must *glory* be? The Accu-
sative. Why? *Ad, to,* is a Preposition serving to the Accu-
sative case. Make this then in Latine; to the glory. *Ad glori-
am.* What case must, of God, be? The Genitive. Why?
When two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? *Glory.*
Set them together. *Ad gloriam Dei; to the glory of God.*
What case must, of holiness, be? The Genitive. Why? When
two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? The fruits. Set
them together. *Fructus pietatis; the fruits of holiness.* What
case must, of righteousness, be? The Genitive. Why? It

Is coupled with holiness, by and. *Why?* Conjunctions copulatives, &c. Couple them. *Pietatis que iustitiae*: of holiness and righteousness. In us, what case must us be? The Ablative. *Why?* In. without this sign to, to the Ablative case. Give it me in Latine. In nobis, in us. Place this following touching fructus, fruits; next the examination of procreat, where it should have come in: and then goe on as there followeth to this place. What casuall word followeth this Verbe? Fruits. What case must it be? The Accusative. *Why?* Verbes transitives, &c. Adde it to the Verbe. and the Nominative case. *Fides procreat fructus*; faith doth bring forth the fruits. Concerning the third Concord here: which is the Relative? Which. Which is his Antecedent? Faith, here expressed. Make them agree, *Quae fides*; which faith. What case is the Relative here? The Nominative. *Why?* Sometimes the Relative is governed of the Substantive, that he doth accord withall. Which is that here? *Fides*, faith.

Give me this whole English now in Latine, placed after the Grammaticall, and naturall order.

Per divinam legem continentem perfectam regulam iustitiae, agnoscimus peccatum que nostram miseriam inde: vero per Evangelium, nostram liberationem, per merita Christi, Dei & hominis. Per fidem, quam sanctus Spiritus operatur in nostris cordibus, per praedicationem Evangelii, & confirmat per eandem, que per Sacramenta, apprehendimus in Christo, remissionem peccatorum, iustitiam, atque vitam sempiternam. Quae fides procreat in nobis, fructus pietatis, que iustitiae, ad gloriam Dei, nostram consolationem ipsorum, que edificationem aliorum.

Give it now, placed after the artificall, and rhetoricall order.

Per legem divinam, perfectam iustitiae regulam continentem, peccatum nostramque inde miseriam: per Evangelium vero, nostram per Christi Dei & hominis merita liberationem, agnoscimus. Per fidem, quam Spiritus sanctus in cordibus nostris, per Evangelii praedicationem operatur, & per eandem, perque Sacramenta confirmat, peccatorum remissionem, iustitiam, atque vitam in Christo sempiternam, apprehendimus. Quae fides pietatis, iustitiaeque fructus in nobis, ad Dei gloriam, nostram ipsorum consolationem, aliorumque edificationem, procreat.

This order may be observed in any English.

FINIS.

Imprimatur.

Thomas Wykes.



We whose names are subscribed, doe signifie
that this Translation of Grammer, is a very ea-
sie, usefull, and profitable direction for young
schollers and others, that are desirous to learne
the Latine Tongue, and is worthy to be printed.

Alexander Gil.

R. Brooke, S.S.M.

*Thomas Walters, Master
of the Free-Schoole
in CHRIST S
Hospitall.*

William Rowland,



life
ea-
ng
ne
ed.